



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

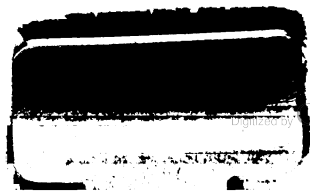
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



87962

A

NEW AND IMPROVED

SPANISH GRAMMAR,

DESIGNED FOR

EVERY CLASS OF LEARNERS,

BUT ESPECIALLY

FOR SUCH AS ARE THEIR OWN INSTRUCTORS.

In Two Parts:

PART I.—AN EASY INTRODUCTION TO THE ELEMENTS OF THE
SPANISH LANGUAGE.

PART II.—THE RULES OF ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX FULLY
EXEMPLIFIED; WITH OCCASIONAL NOTES AND OB-
SERVATIONS.

WITH AN APPENDIX,

CONTAINING A USEFUL VOCABULARY—DIALOGUES WITH NUMERICAL
REFERENCES TO THE RULES IN THE GRAMMAR—A FEW SPECIMENS
OF COMMERCIAL DOCUMENTS—AN EXPLANATION OF THE RULES
AND PRINCIPLES OF SPANISH POETRY—AND SOME RULES FOR
DERIVATION.

By L. J. A. M^CHENRY, A NATIVE OF SPAIN.

New Edition,
CORRECTED AND IMPROVED.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR SHERWOOD, GILBERT, AND PIPER,
PATERNOSTER-ROW;

SOLD ALSO BY J. WACEY, OLD BROAD-STREET; AND DULAU AND CO.,
SOHO-SQUARE.

1841.

Lately Published, price 4s.,

**A KEY to the EXERCISES on the ETYMOLOGY and SYNTAX
of the SPANISH LANGUAGE, adapted to this GRAMMAR.**

London : Printed by WILLIAM CLOWES and Sons, Stamford Street.

PC4109
M2
1841

TO HIS EXCELLENCY

SIR RALPH JAMES WOODFORD, BART.

GOVERNOR OF THE ISLAND OF TRINIDAD,

ETC. ETC. ETC.

SIR,

GRATITUDE being sometimes allowed to occupy that situation in literary productions, which is, not seldom, usurped by adulation, I am encouraged to hope I may, without censure, gratify my feelings by prefixing your name to a work which introduced me to the honour of your friendly regard.

The liberal approbation which you were pleased to bestow on the first edition of these pages, and the favourable manner in which they have been received by the public, naturally incline me to consider them not altogether unworthy of being thus offered as a small testimony of my grateful sense of your numerous civilities and kind attentions.

But great as is the honour which I confer on myself, by presuming to inscribe this humble volume to so respectable a name, permit me to assure you, that it is at least equalled by the deference and sincerity with which I have the pleasure of declaring myself,

Sir,

Your Excellency's faithful

and obliged Servant,

LUIS JOSEF ANTONIO M^cHENRY

LONDON.

JUST PUBLISHED.

EXERCISES on the ETYMOLOGY, SYNTAX IDIOMS, and SYNONYMS of the SPANISH LANGUAGE, adapted to any Spanish Grammar, but more especially to that of the Author. 4s. bound.

"Mr. McHenry is advantageously known to the public as author of one of the most complete, and unquestionably the most modern, Spanish grammars extant; and the present small but instructive volume is admirably adapted to the Grammar, and cannot fail of being peculiarly useful to those persons who direct their inquiries to the accurate distinction of words apparently, but not really synonymous."—*Literary Panorama*, March 1814.

"The author has produced unquestionably the best book of Spanish Exercises which has hitherto been published; and his addition of the Synonyms is a very valuable and very necessary appendage."—*Gent. Mag. Sup.* 1814.

"This is an accompaniment to a Spanish Grammar by the same author, and does credit to his methodizing powers. The exercises are well chosen, and the grammatical rules both accurate and clear. We can recommend it to any one who is desirous of attaining with ease an acquaintance with the idioms and syntax of the Spanish language."—*British Critic*.

"In our 17th Volume we noticed Mr. McHenry's Grammar of the Spanish Language, and we cannot give a better character of the present work than to say, that it is excellently adapted to accompany the former one in facilitating the acquisition of the Spanish Language."—*Universal Magazine*, March 1814.

SYNONYMS of the SPANISH LANGUAGE explained, and elucidated by copious Extracts from the most approved SPANISH POETS. Intended as an Appendix to English-Spanish Dictionaries. 12mo. 5s. 6d. boards, or 8vo., 7s. 6d. boards.

"The author of this work gives proof of much ability, many fine distinctions are here pointed out, and the examples are so tastefully selected, from excellent authors, that the book forms a very pleasant medley of Spanish Literature."—*Literary Gazette*, Oct. 1826.

"The perspicuous brevity and talent apparent in the Grammar and Exercises of the author are not forgotten in this work, nor is the more abstruse part of the treatise deficient in interest. The various Synonyms are alphabetically arranged, their meaning clearly made known, and the distinctness of each pleasingly developed."—*Literary Chronicle*, Oct. 1826.

"To facilitate the attainment of a critical as well as grammatical knowledge of the Spanish language is the object of the present work, and whoever knows the difficulty of accurately distinguishing the various shades of difference which prevail in words, which, by common minds, are often esteemed as entirely and perfectly synonymous, will, we are persuaded, accept Mr. McHenry's work as a valuable aid in this department of learning. The high character gained by his former works cannot be injured by that, which the value and merit of the present volume must confer on him."—*Ladies' Museum*, Oct. 1826.

"This is a most useful little work not only to beginners, but to those who have made the Spanish language for some time their study, and deem themselves its masters. No student of the Spanish language should be without this work."—*New Monthly Magazine*, Dec. 1826.

"Mr. McHenry appears to be fully competent to the task which he has here undertaken. The student will not only learn from his book how to distinguish between expressions, which are translated into nearly the same words in English; but he will also gain from it an acquaintance with many well-chosen specimens of the best poetry which the Peninsula has produced."—*Monthly Review*, Dec. 1826.

P R E F A C E.

IN introducing the present work to the notice of the public, some reasons will naturally be expected for the appearance of another Spanish Grammar, especially at a time when the number has recently been so much augmented by new editions as well as fresh productions.

It has been a matter of frequent complaint, that there is no English-Spanish Grammar capable of affording the necessary assistance to those persons who are obliged to be their own instructors; for although several of the Grammars in circulation possess great merit, yet most of them are written under the disadvantages which inevitably arise from an author's attempting to explain in a language with which he is but very imperfectly acquainted.

The present work, therefore, is respectfully submitted to the candid notice of the public, with the humble hope, that it will be found less exceptionable in several particulars than some of its predecessors; its author being a native of Spain, in which country he had the advantage of a liberal education, and having, by a residence of several years in England, acquired a considerable knowledge of the pronunciation, genius, idiom, and general structure of the English language.

Anxious as the author has been to render this Grammar peculiarly useful to those persons who cannot conveniently have access to a master, he has devoted particular attention to the subject of pronunciation. Not contenting himself with minutely describing and elucidating the different powers of the letters, he has also

exemplified, by a reference to English words, not only the simple sounds which they represent, but almost every variety of sound resulting from position and combination; a novelty which, he would hope, may prove of very considerable utility to all classes of learners.

The total ignorance of the common principles of language, and even of the import of the usual grammatical terms, manifested by many persons desirous of acquiring a grammatical knowledge of the Spanish language, has induced the writer to attempt to remedy the evil, as concisely, and with as little of deterring or repulsive parade and formality, as was possible, in his elementary introduction to the language. This circumstance, however, has compelled him by developing several of the properties or accidents of words, as they result from mutual relation and connexion, rather than according to a dry, mechanical analogy, to imitate the example of some modern grammarians of deserved repute, and occasionally to intermix, among the rules of Syntax, remarks and observations, which, he is fully aware, belong, in strict propriety, to the province of Etymology. But this deviation from the more common mode of arrangement, he trusts will be compensated on the score of utility or expediency, by a diminution of the interruptions usually occasioned by tedious preliminary definitions and explanations.

The author has attempted to introduce some clearness and simplicity in the declension of nouns, and the conjugation of irregular verbs; he has paid considerable attention to an elucidation of the respective imports and uses of the Spanish substantive verbs *ser* and *estar*, and has endeavoured to remove some of the obscurity in which the nature and use of the Spanish subjunctive mood, especially in its imperfect tense, have hitherto

been more or less involved. But these and similar particulars are not, perhaps, sufficiently important to be entitled to special enumeration.

Throughout the whole work it has been the author's particular aim to lay down the rules of Spanish Grammar as concisely as possible ; and he trusts that they will, at the same time, be found to be stated by him with not less precision and perspicuity than they have generally been in works of a similar description. The prejudicial and perplexing practice adopted by some writers, *apparently* to diminish the number of their rules, of blending into one, two or more in their nature perfectly distinct from each other, he has been so careful to avoid, that he is not without some apprehension of having fallen into the other extreme ; a circumstance, however, which he presumes will be found far less injurious to the learner's clear conception of the various shades and modifications of one general principle.

The Appendix to the Grammar contains a brief explanation of the principles of Spanish Prosody, and of the rules, nature, and different kinds of Spanish Verse ;—Dialogues with numerical references to the Rules in the Grammar ;—a few specimens of Letters and other Commercial Documents ; and a summary account of the more common analogies by which several classes of Spanish words are regulated in their derivation from the Latin ; with a short abstract exhibiting the intimate relationship and resemblance subsisting between the Latin and the Spanish, as well as several other modern languages.

However great the respect of the author for the Spanish Academy may be, yet conscious that a strict adherence to the system of that enlightened body would have proved inimical to the peculiar purpose of this

Grammar, he has occasionally ventured on a few inconsiderable deviations from their decisions ; which it is presumed will not be ascribed to any other motive than a wish to add to that simplicity and facility in self-instruction, which it has been his particular aim uniformly to promote.

In a word, a perusal of the table of contents will, it is hoped, evince that the author has some little claim on the notice of the public. He trusts that the inaccuracies or misconceptions of a foreigner will be treated with some degree of lenity ; and that, as he has exerted his best efforts to elucidate the principles and rules of the language,—not, he would hope, without some success,—his failures will not excite illiberal animadversion, but that the sincerity of the *will* may in some respects tend to compensate for occasional blemishes in the *deed*.

The rapid sale of the former editions of this Grammar affords evidence highly gratifying to the author, that his humble endeavours have received a liberal portion of the public approbation. For such encouragement, and particularly for the flattering reception with which the work has been favoured by our most enlightened critics, he feels duly grateful ; and begs leave to assure the public, that no pains have been spared to render the present edition as correct as possible, and still more worthy of an extended patronage.

LONDON.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART I.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
CHARACTERS of the Spanish alphabet, with their names	1
Of the different <i>sounds</i> of the letters	3
Power of the Spanish consonants in their various combinations with the vowels, exemplified by similar sounds in English words.	7
Of monosyllables, polysyllables, and diphthongs	10
Of the sound of final consonants.	12
Modern orthography	<i>ib.</i>
Remarks on spelling	13
A list of words which resemble in sound but differ in spelling. .	<i>ib.</i>
Observations on syllabification.	14
On some of the marks used in punctuation, with rules for the position of the accent	15
A list of the common abbreviations	18

PROSODY	23
Observations on the acute or emphatic syllable in verbs	25

ETYMOLOGY.

<i>Of the Noun</i>	28
Of augmentative and diminutive nouns	29
Of collective nouns.	30
Of gender, number, and case	<i>ib.</i>
Observations on the impropriety of allotting more than two cases to Spanish nouns.	32
<i>Of the Article</i>	33

	Page.
<i>Of the Adjective</i>	34
Of comparatives and superlatives	36
Of cardinal numbers	37
Of ordinal numbers	38
<i>Of Pronouns</i>	40
Observation on possessive and demonstrative pronominal adjectives	42
<i>Of the Verb</i>	43
Of number, person, tense, and mood	45
Of conjugations	47
Conjugation of the auxiliaries and regular verbs, with the emphatic syllable of each person accented, pointing out at the same time when the accent is to be written or not	48
Of verbs used interrogatively and negatively	73
<i>Of Participles</i>	ib.
<i>Of Adverbs</i>	74
<i>Of Prepositions</i>	78
<i>Of Conjunctions</i>	77
<i>Of Interjections</i>	78
SYNTAX ..	80

PART II.

Agreement of the Article	83
Rules to form the plural of nouns	ib.
List of nouns which do not augment in the plural	84
List of nouns wanting the singular	ib.
Rules for ascertaining the gender of nouns	85
List of exceptions	86
Application of the article	92
Syntax of nouns	95
Rules to form the feminine termination of adjectives	96
Rules to form the plural of adjectives	97
Place of adjectives	ib.
Agreement of adjectives	ib.
Observation on the manner in which adjectives agree sometimes with a noun plural	99
Adjectives which become defective before their nouns	ib.

	Page.
Observations on the use of the numeral adjective <i>uno</i> as a substitute for the English indefinite article	100
Syntax of comparatives and superlatives.....	102
Government of adjectives.....	105
Syntax of personal pronouns	111
Syntax of possessive pronouns	116
Observations on the cases wherein the definite article is used instead of the possessive pronoun	118
Syntax of relative pronouns	120
Syntax of interrogative pronouns.....	124
Syntax of demonstrative pronouns	125
Observation on the different import of <i>esse</i> and <i>aquel</i> to express the demonstrative pronoun <i>that</i> in English.....	126
Syntax of indefinite pronouns.....	128
Of the manner of addressing persons in Spanish.....	133
Of the different import of the verbs <i>ser</i> and <i>estar</i>	135
Of the difference between <i>haber</i> and <i>tener</i>	140
Observation on the peculiar manner of construing <i>to be</i> by <i>tener</i>	141
A view of the inflections of the regular verbs.....	142
Observations on such of the regular verbs as require a change in the root.....	144
Of the formation of the passive voice	145
Of the three classes into which irregular verbs are divided.....	ib.
Paradigms of the irregular verbs.....	147
An alphabetical list of all the irregular verbs numbered according to the paradigm to which they refer.....	177
An alphabetical list of verbs having an irregular participle.....	186
View of the conjugation of impersonal verbs.....	188
Observation on such of the personal verbs as are sometimes conjugated impersonally.....	193
Of defective verbs	194
Of the use of the tenses of the indicative	195
----- subjunctive	204
Observations on the imperfect and pluperfect of the subjunctive	207
On the different import of the preterimperfect and the imperfect future of the subjunctive in denoting a future action.....	212
Of the use of the tenses of the infinitive.....	214
Agreement of verbs.....	215
Government of verbs	217

	Page.
Observation on the necessity of placing the preposition <i>a</i> before the objective case of a verb.....	218
Of verbal regimen	231
Observation on the different import of <i>por</i> and <i>para</i> before a verb governed in the infinitive	234
Directions for placing the verbal regimen in the subjunctive ...	238
Syntax of the gerund	239
Of the participle.....	241
A list of passive participles having likewise an active signification	242
Syntax of adverbs	243
Observation on <i>jamas</i> , <i>nunca</i> , <i>no</i> , and <i>muy</i>	244
A list of prepositions which are always used in conjunction with other prepositions	245
A list of English prepositions with a corresponding one in Spanish	247
Syntax of prepositions.....	250
——— conjunctions	251
——— interjections	254
Of the figures of Syntax	255

APPENDIX.

A practical vocabulary	258
Familiar dialogues	270
Commercial documents	295
Of Spanish versification	309
On derivation	316

PART THE FIRST:

AN

INTRODUCTION

TO

SPANISH GRAMMAR.

SPANISH GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and of writing the Spanish Language according to certain established rules. It is divided into **ORTHOGRAPHY, PROSODY,* ETYMOLOGY, and SYNTAX.**

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ORTHOGRAPHY treats on letters, and shows their sound, power, and proper combination, in order to form syllables or words.

A letter is the least division of a word.

The Spanish alphabet is composed of the following characters :

A, B, C, CH, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, LL, M, N, Ñ, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

* This is generally reckoned the fourth division of grammar ; but as what will be observed concerning it will materially assist beginners, it has been thought expedient to introduce it before Etymology.

Letters are divided into vowels and consonants.

Vowels are those letters which contain a perfect sound in themselves.

Consonants are those letters whose sound cannot be uttered without the assistance of the vowels.

The Spanish vowels are A, E, I, O, U ; and the rest are consonants.*

Consonants are divided into Mutes and Semivowels.

The Mutes are those the sound of which begins with themselves, that is to say, when their sound is exhibited in writing, the vowel is placed last. They are B, C, CH, D, G, J, K, P, Q, T, V, Z.—See names of the letters.

The Semivowels are those consonants, whose sound begins with the vowel ; or, in other words, those letters, the sound of which cannot be shown in writing without placing the vowel before. They are F, H, L, LL, M, N, Ñ, R, S, X.—See names of the letters.

A Key to sound the Names of the Letters.

ārt, ācre, even, idiom, obey, oozy, charm, ham,
thank.

Characters.	Names.	Characters.	Names.
A,	ā.	I,	e.
B,	bā.	J,	hotā.
C,	thā.	K,	kā.
CH,	chā.	L,	ālā.
D,	dā.	LL,	ālliā.
E,	ā.	M,	āmā.
F,	āfā.	N,	ānā.
G,	hā.	Ñ,	ānniā.
H,	āchā.	O,	o.

* The letter Y is sometimes a vowel and at others a consonant. In general it is a vowel when it follows another vowel, and a consonant when it precedes it.

Characters.	Names.	Characters.	Names.
P,	pă.	U,	oo.
Q,	koo.	V,	vă.
R,	ără or ărră.	X,	ăkis.
S,	ăssă.	Y,	e.
T,	tă.	Z,	thătă.

Explanation of the Key.

The Italic characters of the key comprise the sound of the vowels, as well as the power of the consonants, which are employed to utter the names of the Spanish letters; therefore, by a correct reference to the key, the letters may be easily named. Example: suppose the name of *h* is required; by comparing the letters *acha*, descriptive of its name, with the same letters in the key, it will be found that the first *a* sounds as in *art*, that *ch* has the same power as in the word *charm*, and that the last *a* has the sound which is heard in *acre*. Again, by comparing *hota*, the name of *J*, in the same manner, it will be perceived that the *h* is aspirated as in *ham*, the *o* long as in *obey*, and the last *a* as heard in *art*. Those consonants which are not in Italics in the column of names are to be sounded as in English.

On the Sound of the Letters.

A.

A, as before observed, sounds as in the word *art*; as *ama*, *nata*.

B.

B always preserves the same sound that it has in English; as *bata*, *bala*. In sounding this letter the Spaniards do not press the lips hard, but only join them close; see also V.

C.

C (1.) sounds as *k* where it does so in English; as *cabo*, *cola*, *cutis*, *clara*, *craso*.

(2.) When in English it has the sound of *s*, it sounds in Spanish like *th* in *thanks*; as *cebo*, *cinco*.

CH.

CH has the sound which it has in English in the words *charity*, *cherub*, *chilly*, *choke*; as *chalan*, *cherná*, *china*, *choque*. See Modern Orthography, page 12.

D.

D preserves the same unvaried sound which it has in English; as *dado*, *dedico*.

E.

E, as has been mentioned, has the sound of *a* in *acre*; as *edecan*, *elemento*.

F.

F keeps the same sound as in English; as *fardo*, *forma*.

G.

G (1.) before *a*, *o*, *u*, or a consonant, has the same sound as in *gap*, *gone*, *grace*, &c. in English; as *gana*, *gota*, *grado*.

(2.) Before *e*, *i*, *y*, it sounds like the English *h* when aspirated; as *gente*, *giro*. N.B. G is silent in the words *gnomonica* and *gnomonico*. See letter U.

H.

H is never heard except when it precedes the diphthong *ue*, and sometimes when placed between two vowels: in the first instance its sound resembles the hard sound of the English *g*, and in the second that of an English *h* aspirated; but in both cases the aspiration is exceedingly weak.

I.

I was noticed in the alphabet as sounding like the *e* in *even*; as *ida*, *indivisible*.

J.

J always sounds like an aspirated *h* in English; as *jamon*, *jardin*.

K.

K always sounds as it does in English. See Modern Orthography, page 12.

L.

L always retains the English sound ; as *lomo*, *libro*.

LL.

LL is sounded by placing the tip of the tongue to the palate, and dropping the tongue whilst emitting the breath. No sound, in English, resembles it exactly ; a slight resemblance of its sound may be heard in the word *million* ; but the French *ll* in the word *fille*, the *gl* of the Italians, and the *lh* of the Portuguese, are the best examples which can be given of the sound of this letter ; as *llama*, *lleno*, *lloro*, *lluvia*.

M.

M has always the same unvaried sound which it has in English ; as *madre*, *medio*.

N.

N retains always the sound which it has in English in the word *net* or *ten* ; as *nada*, *don*.

Ñ.

Ñ has a peculiar nasal sound, like the French *gn* : the English have no sound like it, except in the last four letters of the word *minion*, which bear some resemblance to the last three of the word *riñon* in Spanish : as *niño*, *piña*.

O.

O preserves always the sound which it has in *obey* ; as *oda*, *olor*.

P.

P sounds always as it does in English ; as *pan*, *pino*. N.B. It is silent before *n*, *s*, or *t* ; and when followed by *h* it has the sound of *f*. See Modern Orthography, page 12.

Q.

Q, which is uniformly followed by *u*, always sounds as in English ; as *quatro*, *quota*. See Modern Orthography, page 12.

R.

R has a rough sound, as in *Rome*, *rage* : example, *Roma*, *rubia* ; and a smooth sound, as in

Arabia, cart : example, *arado, carta*. Double *r* has always the same sound as in English ; as *perro*.

R has a rough sound only in the following instances :

1. At the beginning of a word ; as *Roma, rabia*.

2. After *l, n, s* : as *malrotar, honra, desreglado*.

3. After *b*, in words composed of the prepositions *ab, ob, sub* : as *abrogar, obrepcion, subrepcion* ; but if *ab, ob, or sub*, be not prepositions, the *r* becomes liquid, as *abrazo, obra, &c.*

4. In the second part of words composed either of two nouns, or with the prepositions *pre* or *pro* : as *maniroto, cariredondo, prerogativa, prorogar*. Sometimes these words are divided by a hyphen : as *mani-roto, cari-redondo, &c.*

S.

S sounds like *ss* in English ; as *sala, dos*.

T.

T always retains the sound it has in English in the words *take, ten, &c.* ; as *taba, tema*.

U.

U sounds like the English *oo* in *oozy* ; as *unido, uncion*. It is silent in the syllables *gue, gui, que, qui*, unless it is dotted thus *ü*. [See Modern Orthography, page 12.] Observe, that although in the syllables *gue, gui*, the *u* is silent, the *g* retains the hard sound it has in *guess* and *guilt* ; as *guerra, guia, and agüero, argüir*.

V.

V has the uniform sound heard in English in the word *vain* ; as *vano, vivo*. In pronouncing this letter the Spaniards join the lower lip to the upper teeth as the English do ; but the pressure is very slight ; hence arises the erroneous opinion, that the Spaniards pronounce *b* and *v* alike, because as the pressure in both instances is but slight, the distinction which exists between the

two sounds cannot be easily perceived. See Modern Orthography, page 12.

X.

X (1.) It has the guttural sound of an English *h* aspirated, when the following vowel is not marked with the circumflex accent ; as *xabon*, *xergon*.

(2.) It is sounded as in *exit*, *exercise*, *experience*, whenever it precedes a consonant, or a vowel marked with the circumflex accent ; as *exdcto*, *expresso*. N.B. The circumflex is sometimes omitted if the nature of the word require the acute accent, in order to mark its pronunciation ; as in *hexámetro*, *exámen*, &c. See Modern Orthography, page 12.

Y.

Y, as a vowel, sounds like the English *e* in *even*. As a consonant, it has, before all the vowels, a sound rather stronger than that which it has in English before the word *year* : example, *yerro*, *yugo*, &c.

Z.

Z always sounds like *th* in *thanks*, *thick*, &c. ; as *zalea*, *zona*.

Power of the Consonants, in their various Combinations with the Vowels: exemplified by nearly similar sounds, heard in English words.

ba	sounds like	ba	as heard in	barbarian.
be		ba		bacon.
bi		bee		beetle.
bo		bo		boreal.
bu		boo		booby.
ca		ca		calm.
ce		tha		thalia.
ci		thie		thievish.
co		co		cocoa.
cu		coo		cooper.
cha		cha		charm.
che		cha		chasing.
chi		chee		cheese.

cho	sounds like	<i>cho</i>	as heard in	<i>choke.</i>
chu		<i>choo</i>		<i>choosing.</i>
da		<i>da</i>		<i>darling.</i>
de		<i>da</i>		<i>daring.</i>
di		<i>dee</i>		<i>deedless.</i>
do		<i>do</i>		<i>doleful.</i>
du		<i>doo</i>		<i>doom.</i>
fa		<i>fa</i>		<i>father.</i>
fe		<i>fa</i>		<i>famous.</i>
fi		<i>fee</i>		<i>feeble.</i>
fo		<i>fo</i>		<i>folio.</i>
fu		<i>foo</i>		<i>foolery.</i>
ga		<i>ga</i>		<i>garb.</i>
ge		<i>ha</i>		<i>hating.</i>
gi		<i>hee</i>		<i>heedless.</i>
go		<i>go</i>		<i>going.</i>
gu		<i>goo</i>		<i>goose.</i>
ja		<i>ha</i>		<i>hardy.</i>
je		<i>ha</i>		<i>hating.</i>
ji		<i>hee</i>		<i>heedless.</i>
jo		<i>ho</i>		<i>holy.</i>
ju		<i>hoo</i>		<i>hooting.</i>
ka		<i>ca</i>		<i>calm.</i>
ke		<i>ca</i>		<i>cadence.</i>
ki		<i>kee</i>		<i>keeper.</i>
ko		<i>co</i>		<i>cocoa.</i>
ku		<i>coo</i>		<i>cooper.</i>
la		<i>la</i>		<i>larder.</i>
le		<i>la</i>		<i>lady.</i>
li		<i>lee</i>		<i>leering.</i>
lo		<i>lo</i>		<i>lotion.</i>
lu		<i>loo</i>		<i>loosen.</i>
ma		<i>ma</i>		<i>margin.</i>
me		<i>ma</i>		<i>making.</i>
mi		<i>me</i>		<i>meteor.</i>
mo		<i>mo</i>		<i>motive.</i>
mu		<i>moo</i>		<i>moony.</i>
na		<i>na</i>		<i>narcotic.</i>

ne sounds like	na as heard in	name.
ni	ne	negro.
no	no	noted.
nu	noo	noon.
pa	pa	party.
pe	pa	patience.
pi	pe	period.
po	po	poker.
pu	poo	pool.
qua	qua	qualmish.
quē	qua	quaver.
que	ca	cadence.
qūi	quee	queerly.
qui	kee	keeper.
quo	quo	quotation.
ra	ra	rasp.
re	ra	radiance.
ri	re	regent.
ro	ro	robe.
ru	roo	roomy.
sa	sa	sarcastic,
se	sa	sapient.
si	se	secret.
so	so	sober.
su	soo	soon.
ta	ta	tardy.
te	ta	taper.
ti	te	tedious.
to	to	toper.
tu	too	tooth.
va	va	varnish.
ve	va	vagrant.
vi	ve	vehement.
vo	vo	vote.
vu* sounds	voo; the ooto be sounded as in pool.	
xa sounds like	ha as heard in	hardy.
xe	ha	hatred.
xi	hee	heedless.

xo sounds like	ho as heard in	holy.
xu	hoo	hooting.
xâ	xa	examination.
xê	xe	exemption.
xî	xi	exiguous.
xô	xo	exonerate.
xû* sounds	xoo; the oo to be sounded as in	pool
za*	tha; the a to be sounded as in	art.
ze sounds like	tha as heard in	thalía.
zi	thie	thievish.
zo	tho	thorax.
zu* sounds	thoo; the oo to sound as in	pool.

Sounds marked thus (*) are not heard in any English word.

N. B. For the different pronunciation of *gue* and *güe*, or of *gui* and *güi*; and also for that of the sounds formed with the consonants *ll*, *ñ*, and *y*; I refer the learner to the Observations which have been already made concerning these Letters.

On Monosyllables, Polysyllables, Diphthongs, &c.

Words are often named according to the number of syllables † which they contain: thus, a word of one syllable is called a *monosyllable*; of two syllables, a *dissyllable*; of three syllables, a *trisyllable*; and a word containing more than three syllables is named a *polysyllable*, which last expression is generally used also to describe any word of more than two syllables.

If two vowels come together in the same syllable, they are called a *diphthong*; and if the combination consists of three vowels, it is termed a *triphthong*. The following are the diphthongs and triphthongs which the Spanish Academy have decided shall be so called.

† A syllable is a complete sound, sometimes represented with only one vowel; but generally consisting of more than one letter.

Diphthongs.

<i>ai</i> , as in	<i>dabais</i> , ye gave.
<i>ay</i> ,	<i>bayle</i> , (a) dance.
<i>au</i> ,	<i>pausa</i> , (a) pause.
<i>ei</i> ,	<i>veis</i> , ye see.
<i>ey</i> ,	<i>peyne</i> , (a) comb.
<i>ea</i> ,	<i>linea</i> , (a) line.
<i>eo</i> ,	<i>virgineo</i> , virginal.
<i>eu</i> ,	<i>deuda</i> , debt.
<i>ia</i> ,	<i>gracia</i> , grace.
<i>ie</i> ,	<i>cielo</i> , heaven.
<i>io</i> ,	<i>precio</i> , price.
<i>iu</i> ,	<i>ciudad</i> , city.
<i>oe</i> ,	<i>heroe</i> , hero.
<i>oi</i> ,	<i>sois</i> , ye are.
<i>oy</i> ,	<i>voy</i> , I go.
<i>ua</i> ,	<i>fragua</i> , (a) forge.
<i>ue</i> ,	<i>dueño</i> , owner.
<i>ui</i> ,	<i>ruido</i> , noise.
<i>uy</i> ,	<i>buytre</i> , vulture.
<i>uo</i> ,	<i>árduo</i> , arduous.

Triphthongs.

<i>iai</i> , as in	<i>preciais</i> , ye value.
<i>iei</i> ,	<i>vacieis</i> , ye may empty.
<i>uai</i> ,	<i>santiguais</i> , ye bless.
<i>uei</i> ,	<i>averigüeis</i> , ye may investigate.
<i>uey</i> ,	<i>buey</i> , ox.

Diphthongs have been also divided into proper and improper; calling the first those combinations wherein the sound of each vowel is distinctly heard; and applying the second term to the combinations in which the two vowels form one sound only between them, or wherein one of the vowels is not at all heard. In Spanish we have no improper diphthongs, unless we rank under that name the *ue*

and *ui* in those instances wherein the *u* is silent after *g* or *q*. See letter U.

In regard to diphthongs it must be further observed, that whenever one of the vowels is accented, there is no diphthong, because each vowel belongs then to a separate syllable, and therefore must be divided and pronounced accordingly; as *leí*, *brío*, *varía*, *efectúa*, *temið*, &c. that is, *le-í*, *bri-o*, *va-ri-a*, &c.

Of the Sound of final Consonants.

The only consonants which can terminate a Spanish word are *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *x*, *z*, they are all sounded at the end of words; but *d*, *r*, and *x* must be particularly noticed.

d final has the sound of *th* in the word *than*.

r at the end of words has the smooth sound.

x sounds like *ss* in English.

Modern Orthography.

The Spanish Academy have in a late Treatise introduced the following alterations:

C: see Q.

CH has no longer the power of K, its place being supplied by *qu* before *e* or *i*; and by *c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, or a consonant; as *carácter*, *coro*, *Cristiano*, *querubín*, *quilo*, character, choir, Christian, cherub, chyle. It is still preserved in some few names derived from the Hebrew; but they may be always known, because the vowel following the *ch* is uniformly marked with the circumflex accent.

K is dismissed from the alphabet, but its use is allowed in the spelling of proper names.

P is never to be followed by *h*, an *f* being substituted; as *falange*, *farmacia*, phalanx, pharmacy.

Q. Only the syllables *que*, *qui*, are to be spelt with *q*; as *quemo*, *quicio*: *qua*, *qüe*, *qüi*, *quo*, are to be written with *c*; as *cual*, *cuatro*, *cuestion*, *cuota*.

X. The guttural sound of this letter is discontinued,

its place being supplied by *j* before *a*, *o*, *u*, and generally by *g* before *e* or *i*; as *jubon*, *gebeque*, *gí-cara*, *jorgolin*, *jugo*. When *x* precedes a consonant, its place may be supplied by *s*; as *estremo*, *estraño*, *estrangero*. N.B. The vowel following *x* is no longer to be marked with the circumflex accent.

V. The striking distinction which ought to be observed betwixt this letter and B, and which has been so long neglected, is strongly inculcated in pages 24 and 51 of the said Treatise.

Remarks on Spelling.

Words are to be written as they are pronounced.

Every letter in a word is to be sounded; *u*, however, is sometimes, and *h*, generally, silent.

When pronunciation is insufficient to fix the spelling, regard must be had to Etymology; as *género*, *generacion*, *gimnástico*, *Jesuita*, *zelo*, *zi-zaña*, *ceniza*, *ciego*.

When the Etymology is uncertain, J is to be preferred to G, and C to Z.

A List of Words which resemble in Sound but differ in Spelling.

<i>Acerbo</i> ,	harsh	<i>Hala</i> !	hallo!
<i>Acervo</i> ,	a heap	<i>Ala</i> ,	a wing
<i>Ahí</i> ,	there	<i>Halon</i> ,	a halo
<i>Ay</i> !	alas!	<i>Alon</i> ,	a pinion
<i>Hay</i> ,	there is	<i>Hasta</i> ,	until
<i>Corbela</i> ,	a sloop	<i>Asta</i> ,	a haft
<i>Corveta</i> ,	a curvet	<i>Hatajo</i> ,	a herd
<i>Deshojar</i> ,	to deprive of leaves	<i>Atajo</i> ,	a cross-path
<i>Desojar</i> ,	to deprive of eyes	<i>Haya</i> ,	a beech-tree
<i>Envestir</i> ,	to invest	<i>Aya</i> ,	a governess
<i>Embestir</i> ,	to attack	<i>He</i> ,	I have
<i>Envestidura</i> ,	an investment	<i>E</i> ,	and
<i>Embestidura</i> ,	an attack	<i>Herrar</i> ,	to shoe horses
<i>Grabar</i> ,	to engrave	<i>Errar</i> ,	to err
<i>Gravar</i> ,	to oppress	<i>Hética</i> ,	a phthisis
<i>Ha</i> ,	he has	<i>Etica</i> ,	ethics
<i>A</i> ,	to		

<i>Hierro,</i>	iron	<i>Valon,</i>	a Walloon
<i>Yerro,</i>	error	<i>Balon,</i>	a large bale
<i>Hita,</i>	a brad-nail	<i>Vaqueta,</i>	sole leather
<i>Ita,</i>	eta	<i>Baqueta,</i>	a ram-rod
<i>Hojear,</i>	to turn over the leaves of a book	<i>Varon,</i>	a male human be- ing
<i>Ojea,</i>	to glance at	<i>Baron,</i>	a baron
<i>Ogear,</i>	to start game	<i>Varonia,</i>	descent by male issue
<i>Hola !</i>	hallo !		
<i>Ola,</i>	a wave	<i>Baronia,</i>	a barony
<i>Hondas,</i>	slings	<i>Vasto,</i>	extensive
<i>Ondas,</i>	billows	<i>Basto,</i>	coarse
<i>Huso,</i>	a spindle	<i>Vendicion,</i>	a sale
<i>Uso,</i>	usage	<i>Bendicion,</i>	a blessing
<i>Rebelarse,</i>	to rebel	<i>Veneficar,</i>	to envenom
<i>Revelarse,</i>	to reveal	<i>Beneficar,</i>	to benefit
<i>Ribera,</i>	a shore	<i>Venéfico,</i>	venomous
<i>Rivera,</i>	a rivulet	<i>Benéfico,</i>	beneficent
<i>Sujeto,</i>	subjected	<i>Veta,</i>	a mineral vein
<i>Sugeto,</i>	a person	<i>Beta,</i>	a rope's-end
<i>Valar,</i>	to hedge round	<i>Volada,</i>	the flight of birds
<i>Balar,</i>	to bleat	<i>Bolada,</i>	the act of bowling

Observations on the manner in which Words that cannot be contained in one line are to be divided.

Compound words are to be divided into their two component parts : as *ab-negacion*, *con-cavidad*, *pre-ámbulo*, *mal-rotar*.

When the second component part of a word begins with *s* followed by another consonant, the *s* belongs to the first part; as *cons-truir*, *ins-pirar*, *pers-picaz*.

Two vowels coming together must be parted; as *Sa-avedra*, *le-er*, *pi-ísimo*, *co-operar*.

A consonant coming between two vowels belongs to the vowel by which it is followed; as *a-mor*, *pe-na*, *le-che*,* *ga-llo*,* *flu-xton*.

* *Ch* and *ll* are deemed only single consonants

Two consonants coming between two vowels are divided : as *al-zar*, *cas-tor*, *már-tir*.

But should the first consonant be the semivowel *f*, or any of the mutes, and the second *l* or *r*, both the consonants are then joined to the vowel by which they are followed : as *azu-fre*, *ta-bla*, *co-bre*, *la-cre*, *an-drajo*. Except *at-leta*, and *at-lante*.

When *s* is preceded by *b*, *l*, *m*, *n*, or *r*, and followed by another consonant at the same time, *s* must be joined to the consonant by which it is preceded : as *Ams-terdam*.

Four consonants coming between two vowels are equally divided between them : as *trans-cribir*.

Of some of the Marks used in Punctuation.

Note of interrogation (?).

This mark is not only used at the conclusion of an interrogatory; but also placed, inverted, at the beginning, in order to warn the reader, unless the preceding words convey a sufficient warning; as *¿Qué es lo que vm. acostumbra comer? preguntó al enfermo.*—Gil Blas, b. ii. c. 2.

Ahora bien me preguntó friamente el chalan, quanto pide vm. por su mula?—Ibid. b. i. c. 1.

Note of admiration (!).

This note is also inverted at the beginning of ejaculations, when the preceding words are not sufficient to prepare the reader: as, *Mirandome con ternura exclamaba, O qué gracioso eres y que lindo!* (Ibid. b. i. c. 5.) ; *Pastas dulces y viandas suculentas! exclamó suspenso y admirado el doctor.*—Ibid. b. ii. c. 2.

Diæresis (..).

This is used only over the *u* of *ue* and *ui*, when

the *u* is to be sounded, after *g* or *q* : as *argüir*, *qüestion*.

Circumflex (^).

The only use made of this mark is to denote the soft sound of *x*, and the harsh sound of *ch*, by placing it over the following vowel ; as *fluxton*, *exdctitud*, *Melchisedech*.

The Accent (').

Accent, in orthography, is the mark which is set over some letters to denote the manner of their pronunciation. In Spanish it is commonly placed over that vowel on which the stress is laid in pronouncing a word, if it cannot be ascertained without it.

(1.) Monosyllables having only one signification are never accented ; as *cal*, *pan*, *coz*, *mal*.

(2.) Monosyllables having more than one signification should be accented when they are more slowly pronounced : as *mí*, me ; *mi*, my ; *tú*, thou ; *tu*, thy ; *él*, he ; *el*, the, &c.

(3.) The vowels *á*, *é*, *ó*, *ú*, when used either as prepositions or conjunctions, should always be accented : as *voy á Londres*, *padre ó hijo*, *cruel é ingrato*.

(4.) Dissyllables and polysyllables ending in a vowel, may be accented on any vowel (the penultima excepted) whereon the stress is laid ; as *cántico*, *espíritu*, *santísimo*, *Bercebú*, *allá*.

(5.) But if to some person of a verb ending in an accented vowel the case of a pronoun should be added, the accent must be continued although it fall on the penultima : as *temí*, *temíle*, *enseñó*, *enseñóla*, *miró*, *miróme*.

(6.) Dissyllables ending in a diphthong are never accented ; as *indio*, *Julio*, *agua*, *gloria*, *mutuo*, *fragüe*.

All words which end in *y* must not be accented ; as *Paraguay*, *Rey*, *Comboy*.

(7.) Trisyllables and polysyllables ending in two vowels must be accented on whichever of the two vowels the stress happens to be laid ; as *alegría*, *puntapié*, *ganzúa*, *continué* : see No. 9.

Except the first and third persons singular of the imperfect of the indicative, and of the subjunctive ending in *ia*, which are never accented ; as *temia*, *amaria*, *sufria*, &c.

(8.) Trisyllables and polysyllables ending in any of these diphthongs, *ia*, *ie*, *io*, *ua*, *ue*, *uo*, must be accented on any vowel (the penultima excepted) whereon the stress is laid.

(9.) Words ending in *ae*, *ao*, *au*, *ea*, *eo*, *oa*, *oe*, *oo*, (not being diphthongs,) must not be accented ; as *pelea*, *Sarao*, *albacea* : see Prosody, No. 7.

But should these two vowels form a diphthong, the word must be accented on whatever vowel the stress is laid ; as *héroe*, *línea*, *etérea*.

(10.) Words ending in a consonant may be accented on any of the vowels (except the last) whereon the stress is laid ; as *árbol*, *virgen*, *metamorfosis*, *alférez*.

Except the second person singular and third plural of the future indicative, which are always accented on the last vowel ; as *amarás*, *vendrán*, and surnames ending in *ez*, which never are accented ; as *Sanchez*, *Fernandez*, *Martinez*.

(11.) Verbs or nouns which require to be accented in the singular generally retain the accent, on the same syllable, in the plural ; as *vendré*, *vendrémos*, *salió*, *saliéron*, *árbol*, *árboles*.

Except *carácter*, which changes into *caractéres* in the plural number.

(12.) If to an unaccented person of a verb, consisting only of two syllables, we affix one or more pronominal cases, the first vowel must be then accented ; as *oye*, *óyeme*, *compra*, *cómpramelo* ; but if the person of the verb consist of more than two

syllables, its penultima should be then accented; as *entrega*, *entrégalo*, *entrégaselo*, *comuniquemos*, *comuniquémoslo*.

(13.) If an adverb ending in *mente* be formed from an unaccented adjective, the adverb remains unaccented; as *feliz*, *felizmente*, *humilde*, *humildemente*; but should the adjective be accented, the accent continues on the same vowel in the adverb; as *fácil*, *fácilmente*, *difícil*, *difícilmente*, *inútil*, *inútilmente*.

(14.) If a dissyllabic word ending in two vowels be increased by the prefixing of a monosyllable, the penultima is then generally accented; as *via*, *desvía*, *lia*, *deslí*.

The other marks used in punctuation are employed in the same manner as they are in English.

List of the Abbreviations used in Writing.

A. C.	<i>Año Christiano</i>	Christian year
a ^s .	<i>arrobas</i>	25 pounds weight
A. A.	<i>autores</i>	authors
Adm ^{or} .	<i>administrador</i>	administrator
Ag ^{to} .	<i>Agosto</i>	August
Am ^o .	<i>amigo</i>	friend
Ant ^o .	<i>Antonio</i>	Anthony
App ^{co} .	<i>apostólico</i>	apostolic
Art ^o .	<i>artículo</i>	article
Arzbp ^o .	<i>arzobispo</i>	archbishop
B.	<i>beato</i>	blessed
b.	<i>vuelta</i>	turn over
Br.	<i>bachiller</i>	bachelor of arts
B. L. M.	<i>beso las manos</i>	kiss the hands
B. L. P.	<i>beso los pies</i>	kiss the feet
B ^{mo} . P ^e .	<i>beatísimo Padre</i>	most blessed Father
C. M. B.	<i>cuyas manos beso</i>	whose hands I kiss
C. P. B.	<i>cuyos pies beso</i>	whose feet I kiss
Cám ^{ra} .	<i>cámara</i>	chamber

Cap.	<i>capítulo</i>	chapter
Cap ⁿ .	<i>capitan</i>	captain
Capp ⁿ .	<i>capellan</i>	chaplain
Col.	<i>columna</i>	column
Comis ^o .	<i>comisario</i>	commissary
Comp ^a .	<i>compañía</i>	company
Corr ^{te} .	<i>corriente</i>	current
Cons ^o .	<i>consejo</i>	council
D ⁿ .	<i>don</i>	Mr.
D ^a .	<i>doña</i>	Mrs.
D ^r .	<i>doctor</i>	doctor
D. D.	<i>doctores</i>	doctors
Dho.	<i>dicho</i>	ditto or said
Drō.	<i>derecho</i>	right or duty
Diz ^{re} .	<i>Diciembre</i>	December
Dom ^o .	<i>Domingo</i>	Sunday
Ecc ^o .	<i>eclesiástico</i>	ecclesiastic
En ^o .	<i>Enero</i>	January
Ex ^{mo} .	<i>excelentísimo</i>	most excellent
Ex ^{cia} .	<i>excelencia</i>	excellency
Fho, fha.	<i>fecha, fecha</i>	dated
Feb ^o .	<i>Febrero</i>	February
Fol ^o .	<i>folio</i>	folio
Fr.	<i>fray</i>	brother of religious orders
Fran ^{co}	<i>Francisco</i>	Francis
Frnz.	<i>Fernandez</i>	a Spanish surname
G ^{de} or g ^{ue} .	<i>garde</i>	preserve
Q. D. G.	<i>que Dios garde</i>	whom God preserve
Grā.	<i>gracia</i>	grace
Gen ^l .	<i>general</i>	general
Ill ^e .	<i>ilustre</i>	illustrious
Ill ^{mo} .	<i>ilustrísimo</i>	most illustrious
Inq ^{or} .	<i>inquisidor</i>	inquisitor
Jhs.	<i>Jesus</i>	Jesus
Jph.	<i>Joseph</i>	Joseph
Jn ^o .	<i>Juan</i>	John
J ⁿ .	<i>Juan</i>	John

Lib.	<i>libro</i>	book
Lib ^s .	<i>libras</i>	pounds
Lin.	<i>línea</i>	line
Liz ^o .	<i>licenciado</i>	licentiate
M. P. S.	<i>muy poderoso señor</i>	most powerful lord
M ^e .	<i>madre</i>	mother
M ^r .	<i>monsieur</i>	monsieur
M ^{or} .	<i>mayor</i>	eldest
M ^s . A ^s .	<i>muchos años</i>	many years
Mag ^d .	<i>magestad</i>	majesty
Man ^l .	<i>Manuel</i>	Emanuel
May ^{mo} .	<i>mayordomo</i>	steward
Mig ^l .	<i>Miguel</i>	Michael
Miñro.	<i>ministro</i>	minister
Mrd.	<i>merced</i>	grace
Mrñ.	<i>Martin</i>	Martin
Mrñz.	<i>Martinez</i>	a Spanish surname
Mrõ.	<i>maestro</i>	master
Mrs.	<i>maravedis</i>	maravedis
M. S.	<i>manuscrito</i>	manuscript
M. S. S.	<i>manuscritos</i>	manuscripts
N. S.	<i>nuestro Señor</i>	our Lord
N. S ^{ra} .	<i>nuestra Señora</i>	our Lady
Nro.	<i>nuestro</i>	our
Nov ^{re} . 9 ^{re} .	<i>Noviembre</i>	November
Obpo.	<i>obispo</i>	bishop
Oct ^{re} . 8 ^{re} .	<i>Octubre</i>	October
On ^s .	<i>onzas</i>	ounces
Orñ.	<i>orden</i>	order
P. D.	<i>posdata</i>	postscript
P ^a .	<i>para</i>	for
Pe.	<i>padre</i>	father
P ^o .	<i>Pedro</i>	Peter
Pr.	<i>por</i>	for or by
P ^{ta} .	<i>plata</i>	silver or plate
P ^{te} .	<i>parte</i>	part
P ^{to} .	<i>puerto</i>	port
Pág.	<i>página</i>	page

Pl.	<i>plana</i>	page
Pp ^{co} .	<i>público</i>	public
Prál.	<i>principal</i>	principal
Prór.	<i>procurador</i>	solicitor or proctor
Prov.	<i>provisor</i>	vicar-general
Q ^e .	<i>que</i>	that
Q ^{do} .	<i>quando</i>	when
Q ⁿ .	<i>quien</i>	who
Q ^{to} .	<i>quanto</i>	how much
R ^l . R ^{les} .	<i>real, reales</i>	royal
R ^s .	<i>reales</i>	rials
Rev ^{mo} .	<i>reverendísimo</i>	most reverend
R ^{do} .	<i>reverendo</i>	reverend
R ^{vi} .	<i>recibí</i>	I received
S.	<i>san or santo</i>	saint
S ⁿ .	<i>san</i>	saint
S ^{to} .	<i>santo</i>	saint
S. M.	<i>su majestad</i>	his majesty
S. S ^d .	<i>su santidad</i>	his holiness
S ^r . or S ^{or} .	<i>señor</i>	sir
Seb ⁿ .	<i>Sebastian</i>	Sebastian
S ^{ria}	} <i>secretaria</i>	secretaryship
Secret ^a .		
Secret ^{ria} .		
Secret ^o .	} <i>secretaria</i>	secretary
S ^{rio} .		
Secret ^{rio} .		
Se ^{re} . 7 ^{re} .	<i>Setiembre</i>	September
S ^{mo} .	<i>serenísimo</i>	most serene
Serv ^o .	<i>servicio</i>	service
Serv ^{or} .	<i>servidor</i>	servant
Sig ^{te} .	<i>siguiente</i>	following
SS ^{mo} . Pe.	<i>santísimo padre</i>	most holy father
SS ^{no} .	<i>escribano</i>	notary
S. S. S.	<i>su seguro servidor</i>	your faithful servant
Sup ^{ca} .	<i>súplica</i>	entreaty or petition
Sup ^{te} .	<i>suplicante</i>	petitioner
Super ^{te} .	<i>superintendente</i>	superintendent

Ten ^{te} .	<i>teniente</i>	lieutenant
Tom.	<i>tomo</i>	volume
Tpo.	<i>tiempo</i>	time
V.V ^e . Ven ^e .	<i>venerable</i>	venerable
V. A.	<i>vuestra alteza</i>	your highness
V. B ^d .	<i>vuestra beatitud</i>	your blessedness
V. E.	<i>vuecelencia</i>	your excellency
V. G.	<i>verbigracia</i>	for example
Vm. Vind.	<i>vuesamerced or us- ted</i>	a title similar to wor- ship in English
Vms.	<i>ustedes</i>	your worships
V. P.	<i>vuestra paternidad</i>	your paternity
V. S.	<i>vueseñoria or usia</i>	your lordship
V. S.	<i>vuestra santidad</i>	your holiness
V. S. S.	<i>vueseñorias</i>	your lordships
V. S. I.	<i>vueseñoria ilustrísi- ma</i>	your grace
V ⁿ .	<i>vellon</i>	bullion
Vol.	<i>volúmen</i>	volume
Vr ^o .	<i>vuestro</i>	your
X ^{mo} .	<i>diezmo</i>	tithe
Xptiano.	<i>Cristiano</i>	Christian
Xpto.	<i>Cristo</i>	Christ
Xptobal.	<i>Cristóbal</i>	Christopher

PROSODY.

PROSODY treats on syllables ; determines their quantity, accent, and emphasis ; and establishes the laws of versification.

In modern language the term accent is employed to denote the stress which is laid on one syllable in every word, in order to distinguish it from the rest ; and the accented or emphatic syllable is generally acute and long.

Every Spanish word contains one acute syllable only, the vowel of which sometimes is marked with the acute accent, but oftener it is not : when the vowel is so marked, the word can offer no difficulty as to its pronunciation ; but in order to assist learners in discovering where the stress should be laid when there is no visible mark to direct them, the following rules may be attentively considered.*

1. Monosyllables are long : as *pān*, *māl*.

2. Dissyllables and polysyllables ending in a vowel have commonly the penultima long ; as *pāñō*, *hōrtēlānō*, *Cōnstāntīnōplă*, *dīnērō*. N.B. In the termination *ísimo* the antepenult is long ; as *ămăbīlīsīmō*, *cōnstāntīsīmō*.

* The Spanish Academy not having yet fixed the rules of Spanish Prosody, this division of grammar can be but very imperfectly discussed here.

3. Dissyllables ending in a diphthong have generally the first syllable long ; as *sērĭō*, *fērĭă*, *mūtŭō*.

4. Dissyllables ending in two vowels generally have the first syllable long ; as *năō*, *vĕō*, *rĭō*, *mĭō*.

5. Words ending in *y* always have the penultima long : as *rĕy*, *cōmbōy*.

6. Trisyllables and polysyllables ending in any of these diphthongs, *ia*, *ie*, *io*, *ua*, *ue*, *uo*, have generally the penultima long ; as *cōncōrdĭă*, *ĭmpĕrĭō*, *dĕsăgŭō*.

7. Words ending in *ae*, *ao*, *au*, *ea*, *eo*, *ia*, *ie*, *io*, *oa*, *oe*, *oo*, (these letters not being diphthongs,) have the penultima long ; as *dĕcăē*, *băcălăō*, *ărcăbŭcĕō*, *filōsōfiă*, *dĕsăfiō*.

8. Words ending in a consonant have generally their last syllable long ; as *căřĭdăd*, *ălmăcĕn*, *ălbăml*, *bōrrădōr*. N.B. Among the exceptions to this rule may be noticed those days of the week which end in *s*, as they have the penultimate long ; as *Mărtĕs*, *Vĭĕrnĕs* ; and all surnames in *ez*, which have also the penultima long ; as *Pĕrĕz*, *Săncĕz*, *Mărtĭnĕz*, *Fĕrnăndĕz*.

9. Adverbs ending in *mente* have the same syllable long* that the adjectives, from which they are formed, have ; as *făcĭl*, *făcĭlmĕntĕ*, *ĭnŭtĭl*, *ĭnŭtĭlmĕntĕ*, *săntĭsimă*, *săntĭsimămĕntĕ*.*

10. Nouns in the plural have generally the same syllable long* that was long in their singular number ; as *ărbōl*, *ărbōlĕs*, *ălmăcĕn*, *ălmăcĕnĕs*, *ălbălă*, *ălbălăĕs*, *ĕrōĕ*, *ĕrōĕs*. Except *căřăctĕr*, which changes into *căřăctĕrĕs*.

N.B. Most of the foregoing observations seem but a repetition of what was said when treating on the accent : they will, notwithstanding, be found particularly useful ; for by consulting what is said

* Reckoned from the first syllable of the word.

on prosody learners will discover on what syllable to lay the stress ; and by referring then to accent, they will find whether the said syllable should be accented or not.

For the branch of Prosody which refers to versification see the Appendix.

*Observations on the Long or Acute Syllable
in Verbs.**

1. If the termination of a verb is an *a*, *e*, or *o*, either alone or followed by *n* or *s*, the last syllable in the root is long ; as *cönsidēr-ō*, *cönsidēr-ās*, *cönsidēr-ën*.

Except the first and third persons singular of the perfect indicative, which always have the accent on the termination ; as *cönsidēr-ē*, *cönsidēr-ō*.

2. Verbs have the accent on the first vowel of the termination if it consists of more than one vowel ; as *cönsidēr-ābā*, *cönsidēr-ābāmōs*, *cönsidēr-ārāmōs*, *cönsidēr-āsēmōs*, *ām-ārān*.

Except the future indicative, which always has the accent on the second vowel of the termination ; as *cönsidēr-ārē*, *cörrēspönd-ērēmōs*, *süprīm-irēis*, *mültklic-ārān*, *āmārān*.

3. If the termination of a verb contains an *i*, either alone or immediately followed by an *a* or an *s*, the accent is on the *i* ; as *cörrēspönd-ī*, *cörrēspönd-īān*, *přšēvēr-ārīāmōs*, *ātörměnt-ārīāis*, *süfr-īs* ; but if the *i* precede an *e* or an *o*, the accent falls on the following vowel ; as *cörrēspönd-iō*, *cörrēspönd-iēsēs*.

4. Terminations of verbs ending in *d* or *r* are

* These observations are applicable to all the regular verbs, to the irregulars of the first class, and to many belonging to the third class.

always long; as *cōnsīdēr-ād*, *cōrrēspond-ēd*, *sūprīm-īd*, *cōnsīdēr-ār*, *cōrrēspond-ēr*, *sūprīm-īr*.

5. When one or more pronominal cases are affixed to a verb, the accent falls on the same syllable that it did before; as *ěnrĕgǎ*, *ěnrĕgǎlž*, *ěnrĕgō*, *ěnrĕgōmělō*.

ETYMOLOGY.

ETYMOLOGY treats on words and their derivation ; enumerates their different species ; and shows their various modifications.

Words are distinct, articulate, significant sounds.

Words are either primitive, or derivative. A primitive word is that which is formed from no other word in the same language ; thus in Spanish, *cielo*, heaven ; *ciudad*, city ; *viento*, wind ; are primitive words.

A derivative is derived from some other word ; as *celeste*, heavenly ; *ciudadano*, citizen ; *ventoso*, windy.

The Spanish language is composed of ten different species of words, commonly called parts of speech : namely, Noun, Article, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

A Noun expresses the name of an individual, as *rey*, king ; *hombre*, man.

An Article is a word prefixed to a noun to determine the extent of its signification ; as *el rey*, the king ; *el hombre*, the man.

An Adjective is a word which is joined to nouns to describe their qualities ; as *rey sabio*, wise king ; *hombre humilde*, humble man.

A Pronoun is a word often substituted for a noun, as *vi al rey*, pero mi hermano no le vió, I saw the king, but my brother did not see him.

A Verb is that part of speech which serves to affirm something concerning the noun ; as *el rey viene*, the king *comes*.

A Participle is a part of speech derived from the verb, and which resembles the adjective in some of its properties , as *la reyna viene coronada*, the queen comes *crowned* ; *la han coronado*, they have *crowned* her.

An Adverb is a word, which, being joined to a verb, serves to qualify the affirmation ; as *el rey gobierna sabiamente*, the king governs *wisely*.

A Preposition is a word generally prefixed to nouns, to denote their various relations ; as *la corona de la reyna*, the crown of the queen.

A Conjunction serves to connect words and sentences ; as *el rey y los vasallos*, the king *and* the subjects ; *la reyna ó la princesa*, the queen *or* the princess ; *yo iba y tu venias*, I was going *and* thou wast coming.

Interjections are words which express some emotion ; as *ay ! alas !*

The parts of speech are divided into Declinable and Indeclinable.

Declinable are those parts which can vary the manner of their signification.

Indeclinable are those which admit no variation.

Of the ten parts of speech, the following only are declinable : namely, *noun*, *article*, *adjective*, *pronoun*, *verb*, and *participle*. N. B. The declension of a verb is usually termed *conjugation*.

OF THE NOUN.

A Noun, or as it is commonly called a Substantive, is the name of any thing whatever that can be made the subject of discourse ; as *casa*, *ángel*, *honra*, house, angel, honour.

There are two kinds of nouns, proper, and appellative or common.

A proper noun is a particular name exclusively applied to a particular individual; as *Londres*, *Pedro*, *luna*, London, Peter, moon.

An appellative is a name descriptive of a class, and applicable to every individual of it; as *ciudad*, *hombre*, *planeta*, city, man, planet.

Of Augmentative and Diminutive Nouns.

There are in Spanish some derivative nouns, called as above from their expressing a large or a small one of the kind denoted by their primitive; as *hombro*, which signifies a large man; and *hombrecito*, a little man. They are formed by adding various terminations to the primitive noun, dropping generally the vowel if it end with one. The terminations which are used are very numerous; but those which are most frequently adopted are, *azo*, *on*, and *ote*, to express increase; and *ico*, *illo*, *ito*, and *uelo*, to denote decrease. The manner of applying these terminations admits of so much variety that practice seems the only means of acquiring the proper use of them: for some nouns will admit one termination without undergoing any alteration, and will require perhaps additional letters when another termination is applied to them; as *caxon*, a drawer; *caxonazo*, a large drawer; *caxoncito*, a small drawer; and others will have sometimes two terminations joined to them; as *hombre*, a man; *hombrazo*, or *hombron*, or *hombronazo*, a large man; *muger*, a woman; *mugeraza*, *mugerona*, *mugeronaza*, a large woman, &c.

The terminations *azo*, *on*, or *ote*, are indiscriminately used to denote increase; but although decrease may be equally expressed by *ico*, *illo*, *ito*, or *uelo*, it is to be observed, that *ico* and *ito* are endearing expressions; but that *illo* sometimes, and *uelo* always, denote contempt and disgust.

The foregoing terminations do not always denote increase or decrease ; thus *abanico*, though ending in *ico*, signifies a fan only ; and the termination *azo* is not unfrequently added to a weapon in order to express the injury which it is capable of inflicting ; as *pistoletazo*, a pistol-shot ; *zapatazo*, a blow with a shoe ; *martillazo*, a knock with a hammer, &c.

I shall conclude this article with observing, in regard to the gender of nouns ending in any of the terminations which have been mentioned, that augmentative or diminutive nouns are of the gender of their primitives ; and that the nouns ending in *azo* in the last-mentioned signification follow the rule of their termination : therefore *porrazo*, a blow with a club, is masculine, although its primitive *porra*, a club, is feminine.

Of Collective Nouns.

Nouns which in the singular signify many are called collectives. They are divided into definite and indefinite.

Definite collective nouns are those which define the individuals of which they are composed ; as *regimiento*, many soldiers ; *arboleda*, many trees.

Indefinite ones denote a multitude of indeterminate individuals ; as *turba*, a crowd ; *infinidad*, infinity ; *muchedumbre*, multitude.

Of Gender, Number, and Case.

Gender is that accident or property of a noun by which we are enabled to distinguish the sex.

There are two genders, the masculine and the feminine ; as *rey*, *reyna*, *hombre*, *muger*, king, queen, man, woman.

In Spanish, all nouns are deemed either male or female, and consequently belong to one of these gen-

ders : thus *tintero* is masculine and *pluma* feminine, although they denote an inkstand and a pen only ; whilst in English they are both neuter.

N.B. This last-mentioned term is applied in Spanish to those things only which are so indefinitely used, that their gender cannot possibly be discovered.

Number is that property of a noun by which we point out one or more of the same class.

There are two numbers : the singular which signifies only one ; as *ciudad*, *rio*, city, river ; and the plural, which denotes more than one ; as *ciudades*, *rios*, cities, rivers.

Case is that property of nouns by means of which they can be exhibited in different relations.

In Spanish, nouns have two cases ; the nominative or subject, and the accusative or objective case of the verb.

The nominative is the case wherein nouns are used when we simply name them, and when we affirm any thing concerning them ; as *O hijo ! O child ! el rey escribió*, the king wrote.

The objective is the case in which nouns are placed when they have a preposition prefixed, or when nothing concerning them is affirmed ; as *con la pluma escribió el rey la carta*, with the pen did the king write the letter. In this last sentence the nouns *pluma* and *carta* are both in the objective case ; *pluma*, because it has the preposition *con* prefixed ; and *carta*, because it is not the subject of the affirmation, but the object, to which passes the energy of the verb. It may be nevertheless changed to the nominative, and become the subject by varying the mode of the affirmation ; as *la carta fué escrita por el rey con la pluma*, the letter was written by the king with the pen ; and here both *rey* and *pluma* are in the objective case, on account of the prepositions *con* and *por*.

Examples of proper Names declined.

Sing.	Nom.	<i>Pedro,</i>	Peter.
	Object.	<i>á Pedro,</i>	Peter.
Sing.	Nom.	<i>Juan,</i>	John.
	Object.	<i>á Juan,</i>	John.
Sing.	Nom.	<i>Maria,</i>	Mary.
	Object.	<i>á Maria,</i>	Mary.
Sing.	Nom.	<i>Ana,</i>	Ann.
	Object.	<i>á Ana,</i>	Ann.
Sing.	Nom.	<i>Londres,</i>	London.
	Object.	<i>Londres,</i>	London.
Sing.	Nom.	<i>Madrid,</i>	Madrid.
	Object.	<i>Madrid,</i>	Madrid.

Observations on the Cases.

In allotting here but two cases to Spanish nouns I have deviated from the arrangement of the Academy, which has given them six cases ; and, in conformity to the Latin language, has declined the nouns as follows :

Nom.	<i>Pedro,</i>	Peter.
Gen.	<i>de Pedro,</i>	Peter's.
Dat.	<i>á</i> or <i>para Pedro,</i>	to or for Peter.
Acc.	<i>á Pedro,</i>	Peter.
Voc.	<i>O Pedro !</i>	<i>O Peter !</i>
Abl.	<i>de, por, &c. Pedro,</i>	from, by, &c. Peter.

The Spanish Academicians have no doubt considered this arrangement the best calculated to instruct Spaniards, for whom only their grammar is intended : but as these cases are not affected by any variation in the termination, as in Latin, but formed, as in English, by the prefixing of certain prepositions, I have thought it expedient to follow the example of late writers on English grammar ; conscious that the more the Spanish language can, without altering any essential arrangement, be

made to resemble the English in structure, the greater will be the facility with which Englishmen will acquire it. Were we to consider inflection an indispensable requisite in the formation of a case, it would be difficult to prove that the Spanish substantives have more than one case ; but as the very language which the Academy has imitated, proves that there may be a difference of case without any change of termination, it cannot be deemed inconsistent to say, that our nouns have two cases, called a nominative and an objective case ; the former to denote when the noun is the subject of a verb, and the latter when it is not. The personal pronouns, however, are an exception, their objective case being formed by inflection. See Pronouns.

OF THE ARTICLE.

An Article is a word prefixed to nouns to determine the extent of their signification.

Articles have, like nouns, the variation of gender, number, and case.

The masculine article in the singular is *el*, and in the plural *los* ; the feminine is *la* in the singular, and *las* in the plural ; and the neuter article is *lo*, and has not a plural.

Examples of Nouns declined with the Article.

Masculine Nouns.

Sing.	Nom.	<i>el rey,</i>	the king.
	Object.	<i>*al rey,</i>	the king.
Plur.	Nom.	<i>los reyes,</i>	the kings.
	Object.	<i>á los reyes,</i>	the kings.

* To account for the omission of the *e* belonging to the article, see note *b* to Rule 1, in Part II.

Sing.	Nom.	<i>el autor,</i>	the author.
	Object.	<i>al autor,</i>	the author.
Plur.	Nom.	<i>los autores,</i>	the authors.
	Object.	<i>á los autores,</i>	the authors.
Sing.	Nom.	<i>el palacio,</i>	the palace.
	Object.	<i>el palacio,</i>	the palace.
Plur.	Nom.	<i>los palacios,</i>	the palaces.
	Object.	<i>los palacios,</i>	the palaces.
Sing.	Nom.	<i>el libro,</i>	the book.
	Object.	<i>el libro,</i>	the book.
Plur.	Nom.	<i>los libros,</i>	the books.
	Object.	<i>los libros,</i>	the books.

Feminine Nouns.

Sing.	Nom.	<i>la reyna,</i>	the queen.
	Object.	<i>á la reyna,</i>	the queen.
Plur.	Nom.	<i>las reynas,</i>	the queens.
	Object.	<i>á las reynas,</i>	the queens.
Sing.	Nom.	<i>la monja,</i>	the nun.
	Object.	<i>á la monja,</i>	the nun.
Plur.	Nom.	<i>las monjas,</i>	the nuns.
	Object.	<i>á las monjas,</i>	the nuns.
Sing.	Nom.	<i>la casa,</i>	the house.
	Object.	<i>la casa,</i>	the house.
Plur.	Nom.	<i>las casas,</i>	the houses.
	Object.	<i>las casas,</i>	the houses.
Sing.	Nom.	<i>la carta,</i>	the letter.
	Object.	<i>la carta,</i>	the letter.
Plur.	Nom.	<i>las cartas,</i>	the letters.
	Object.	<i>las cartas,</i>	the letters.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

An Adjective is a part of speech, which being applied to nouns points out their qualities; therefore the name of the quality ascribed to the sub-

stantive is always implied in the adjective; and from the name of this quality the adjective is generally derived. Grammarians technically call the name of the quality the *abstract*, that is, the quality by itself; and the adjective the *concrete*, that is to say, the quality conjoined to some thing; thus *valor*, valour, is the abstract; and *valeroso*, valiant, the concrete; and, when joined to a noun, invests it with the possession of the quality implied; as *un gefe valeroso*, a valiant chief, or a chief possessed of valour.

Adjectives, like substantives, have the variation of gender, number, and case.

Examples of Nouns declined with Adjectives.

- Sing. Nom. *el hombre hábil*, the clever man.
 Object. *al hombre hábil*, the clever man.
- Plur. Nom. *los hombres hábiles*, the clever men.
 Object. *á los hombres hábiles*, the clever men.
- Sing. Nom. *la muger virtuosa*, the virtuous woman.
 Object. *á la muger virtuosa*, the virtuous woman.
- Plur. Nom. *las mugeres virtuosas*, the virtuous women.
 Object. *á las mugeres virtuosas*, the virtuous women.
- Sing. Nom. *la ley severa*, the severe law.
 Object. *la ley severa*, the severe law.
- Plur. Nom. *las leyes severas*, the severe laws.
 Object. *las leyes severas*, the severe laws.
- Sing. Nom. *el prado fértil*, the fruitful meadow.
 Object. *el prado fértil*, the fruitful meadow.
- Plur. Nom. *los prados fértiles*, the fruitful meadows.
 Object. *los prados fértiles*, the fruitful meadows.

From the definition of the adjective which has been already given, it is evident that it never can be used in a sentence without having a substantive, either expressed or understood, to which the qua-

lity implied in the adjective is applicable. If the gender of the noun understood can be defined, the adjective is preceded by the article that the noun would require ; as *el sabio ama la virtud*, a wise man loves virtue ; but if the adjective qualifies some thing to which we cannot ascribe a gender, the adjective in that case is preceded by the neuter article ; as *el médico le dixo que no comiera carne, pero ella hizo lo contrario*, the physician told her not to eat meat, but she did *the* contrary.

On Comparatives and Superlatives.

Adjectives admit a variation in the manner of their signification almost peculiar to themselves ; for by the addition of certain words the adjective may be made to express its quality, as possessed in a greater or less degree by the noun which it qualifies ; and this variation is called a degree of comparison.

There are two degrees of comparison, termed the *comparative* and the *superlative*.

The simple form of the adjective is called the *positive*.

The comparative is used to compare one part of a class with another part of the same class : as The sun is brighter than the moon, *El sol es mas brillante que la luna* ; or one portion of a class with a portion of a different class ; as The moon is brighter than diamonds, *La luna es mas brillante que los diamantes* ; or a portion of a class with the whole of a different class ; as The sun is brighter than precious stones, *El sol es mas brillante que las piedras preciosas*.

The superlative is used to compare a certain portion of a class with the whole of the same class ; as The sun is the brightest of all the planets, *El sol es el mas brillante de todos los planetas* ; Dia-

inonds are the brightest jewels, *Los diamantes son las joyas mas brillantes.*†

Sometimes the adjective is raised to its superlative degree without forming any comparison; as The sun is a very bright planet, *El sol es un planeta muy brillante*; Diamonds are very bright jewels, *Los diamantes son piedras muy brillantes*; in this case the superlative means no more than that the quality of brilliancy is possessed by the sun and diamonds in an eminent degree.

Some adjectives are named according to their signification; as *ordinal*, or adjectives denoting order, such as first, second, third, &c., *primero, segundo, tercero, &c.*; and cardinal or numeral, that is adjectives expressing numbers; as one, two, three, &c., *uno, dos, tres, &c.*

Cardinal Numbers.

<i>Uno*</i>	one	<i>quince</i>	fifteen
<i>dos</i>	two	<i>diez y seis</i>	sixteen
<i>tres</i>	three	<i>diez y siete</i>	seventeen
<i>quatro</i>	four	<i>diez y ocho</i>	eighteen
<i>cinco</i>	five	<i>diez y nueve</i>	nineteen
<i>seis</i>	six	<i>veinte</i>	twenty
<i>siete</i>	seven	<i>veinte y uno*</i>	twenty-one
<i>ocho</i>	eight	<i>veinte y dos, &c.</i>	twenty-two, &c.
<i>nueve</i>	nine	<i>treinta</i>	thirty
<i>diez</i>	ten	<i>treinta y uno*</i>	thirty-one
<i>once</i>	eleven	<i>treinta y dos</i>	thirty-two
<i>doce</i>	twelve	<i>quarenta</i>	forty
<i>trece</i>	thirteen	<i>quarenta y uno*</i>	forty-one
<i>catorce</i>	fourteen	<i>cincuenta</i>	fifty

† We may also use the comparative to compare a part with the whole of the same class; but then some words must be introduced to denote that the whole of the class is taken into the comparison; as The sun is brighter than any other planet, *El sol es mas brillante que ningun otro planeta*; Diamonds are brighter than all other precious stones, *Los diamantes son mas brillantes que todas las otras piedras preciosas.*

<i>cincuenta y uno*</i>	fifty-one
<i>sesenta</i>	sixty
<i>sesenta y uno*</i>	sixty-one
<i>setenta</i>	seventy
<i>setenta y uno*</i>	seventy-one
<i>ochenta</i>	eighty
<i>ochenta y uno*</i>	eighty-one
<i>noventa</i>	ninety
<i>noventa y uno*</i>	ninety-one
<i>ciento</i>	a hundred
<i>ciento y uno*</i>	a hundred and one
<i>docientos*</i>	two hundred
<i>trecentos*</i>	three hundred
<i>cuatrocientos*</i>	four hundred
<i>quinientos*</i>	five hundred
<i>seiscientos*</i>	six hundred
<i>setecientos*</i>	seven hundred
<i>ochocientos*</i>	eight hundred
<i>novecientos*</i>	nine hundred
<i>mil</i>	a thousand
<i>dos mil</i>	two thousand
<i>veinte mil</i>	twenty thousand
<i>cien mil</i>	a hundred thousand
<i>docientos* mil</i>	two hundred thousand
<i>un millon or cuento</i>	a million
<i>dos millones or cuentos</i>	two millions
<i>tres millones or cuentos</i>	three millions
<i>un cuento de cuentos</i>	a billion
<i>dos cuentos de cuentos, &c.</i>	two billions.

Numeration.

<i>Unidad</i>	units
<i>decena</i>	tens
<i>centena</i>	hundreds
<i>millar</i>	thousands
<i>decena de millar</i>	tens of thousands
<i>centena de millar</i>	hundreds of thousands
<i>cuento</i>	million
<i>decena de cuento, &c.</i>	tens of millions.

Ordinal Numbers.

<i>Primero*</i>	first
<i>segundo*</i>	second

<i>tercero*</i>	third
<i>quarto*</i>	fourth
<i>quinto*</i>	fifth
<i>sexto*</i>	sixth
<i>séptimo*</i>	seventh
<i>octavo*</i>	eighth
<i>nono*</i> or <i>noveno*</i>	ninth
<i>décimo*</i>	tenth
<i>undécimo*</i>	eleventh
<i>duodécimo*</i>	twelfth
<i>décimo* tercio*</i>	thirteenth
<i>décimo* quarto*</i>	fourteenth
<i>décimo* quinto*</i>	fifteenth
<i>décimo* sexto*</i>	sixteenth
<i>décimo* séptimo*</i>	seventeenth
<i>décimo* octavo*</i>	eighteenth
<i>décimo* nono*</i>	nineteenth
<i>vigésimo*</i>	twentieth
<i>vigésimo* primo*</i>	twenty-first
<i>vigésimo* segundo*</i>	twenty-second
<i>vigésimo* tercio*, &c.</i>	twenty-third, &c.
<i>trigésimo*</i>	thirtieth
<i>quadragésimo*</i>	fortieth
<i>quinquagésimo*</i>	fiftieth
<i>sexagésimo*</i>	sixtieth
<i>septuagésimo*</i>	seventieth
<i>octogésimo*</i>	eightieth
<i>nonagésimo*</i>	ninetieth
<i>centésimo*</i>	hundredth
<i>docentésimo*</i>	two hundredth
<i>trecentésimo*</i>	three hundredth
<i>quadragentésimo*</i>	four hundredth
<i>quingentésimo*</i>	five hundredth
<i>sexcentésimo*</i>	six hundredth
<i>septingentésimo*</i>	seven hundredth
<i>octogentésimo*</i>	eight hundredth
<i>nonagentésimo*</i>	nine hundredth
<i>milesimo*</i>	thousandth.

N. B. Every word, either in the cardinal or ordinal numbers, which is marked thus (*), has the last *o* changed for an *a* whenever applied to a feminine noun.

Nouns denoting Quantity.

<i>La mitad</i>	the half	<i>una docena</i>	a dozen
<i>el tercio</i>	the third	<i>una veintena</i>	a score
<i>el cuarto</i>	the fourth	<i>una centena</i>	a hundred
<i>un par</i>	a couple	<i>un millar</i>	a thousand
<i>media docena</i>	half a dozen	<i>un cuento</i>	a million
<i>una decena</i>	half a score		

OF PRONOUNS.

A pronoun is a word which prevents the necessity of repeating the noun, by supplying its place.

There are five sorts of pronouns: namely, Personal, Possessive, Relative, Interrogative, and Demonstrative.

Personal.

The personal pronouns are peculiar in having two objective cases, one of which never can be used with, nor the other without, a preposition.

Example.

Sing. Nom.	Yo,	I.	
1st Obj. case	me,	}	me, or to me.
2d Obj. case	á mí,		
Plur. Nom.	nosotros,*	we.	
1st Obj.	nos,	}	us, or to us.
2d Obj.	á nosotros,*		
Sing. Nom.	tú,	thou.	
1st Obj.	te,	}	thee, or to thee.
2d Obj.	á ti,		
Plur. Nom.	vosotros,*	ye,	
1st Obj.	os,	}	you, or to you.
2d Obj.	á vosotros,*		
Sing. Nom.	él,	he.	
1st Obj.	le,	}	him, or to him.
2d Obj.	á él,		

- Plur. Nom. *ellos*, they.
 1st Obj. *los* and *les*,* * them *and* to them.* *
 2d Obj. *á ellos*, them, *or* to them.
- Sing. Nom. *ella*, she.
 1st Obj. *la* and *le*,* * her, *and* to her.* *
 2d Obj. *á ella*, her, *or* to her.
- Plur. Nom. *ellas*, they.
 1st Obj. *las* and *les*,* * them, *and* to them.* *
 2d Obj. *á ellas*, them, *or* to them.
- Sing. Nom. *ello*, it.
 1st Obj. *lo*,
 2d Obj. *á ello*, } it, *or* to it.
- Sing. } 1st Obj. case *se*, { himself, herself, itself, them-
 and } 2d Obj. case *á sí*, { selves ; *or* to himself, to
 Plur. } { herself, to itself, to them-
 selves.

Terminations marked thus (*) have the last *o* changed into *a* when they represent feminine nouns.

N.B. Where the first objective case has two terminations, the one marked with the double asterisk corresponds in English with the one only which bears the same mark : thus the English for *los* is them ; and for *les*, to them. This second termination might be properly termed the dative of the pronoun, and I should have adopted the expression had it more frequently occurred ; but it is distinguishable only in the plural of the third person masculine ; and in both numbers of the third person feminine.

Possessives.

- Sing. Nom. and Obj. *mio*,* my *or* mine.
 Plur. Nom. and Obj. *nuestro*,* our *or* ours.
 Sing. Nom. and Obj. *tuyo*,* thy *or* thine.
 Plur. Nom. and Obj. *vuestro*,* your *or* yours.
 Sing. Nom. and Obj. *suyo*, his *or* its.
 Nom. and Obj. *suya*, her *or* hers.
 Plur. Nom. and Obj. *suyos*,* their *or* theirs.

Those marked thus (*) change the *o* into *a* when they relate to a feminine noun.

Relatives.

Sing.	Nom.	<i>quien</i> ,	who.
	Obj.	<i>á quien</i> ,	whom or to whom.
Plur.	Nom.	<i>quienes</i> ,	who.
	Obj.	<i>á quienes</i> ,	whom or to whom.

The other relatives are,

Nom.	} Sing.	<i>qual</i> ,	Plur.	<i>quales</i> ,	} who, which, and
and		<i>que</i> ,		<i>que</i> ,	
Obj. case		<i>cuyo</i> ,*		<i>cuyos</i> ,*	
					whose or of which.

Those terminations marked thus (*) change the o into a when relating to a feminine noun.

The noun to which a relative refers is called its antecedent.

Interrogatives.

When the relative pronouns are used in asking a question, they are called *Interrogatives*; as *quien está ahí?* who is there? *qual de los dos?* which of the two? &c.

Demonstratives.

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Sing.	Nom.	<i>este,</i>	<i>esta,</i>	<i>esto,</i>	this.
	and	<i>ese,</i>	<i>esa,</i>	<i>eso,</i>	} that.
	Obj. case	<i>aquel,</i>	<i>aquella,</i>	<i>aquello,</i>	
Plur.	Nom.	<i>estos,</i>	<i>estas,</i>	these,	
	and	<i>esos,</i>	<i>esas,</i>	} those.	
	Obj. case	<i>aquellos,</i>	<i>aquellas,</i>		

There are some words to which grammarians have given the names of indefinites, or indefinite pronouns. See Rules on the use of these pronouns, in Part II.

Observation.

Possessives and demonstratives† are used in Spanish both as adjectives and as pronouns: when they are used adjectively, they are joined to some substantive with which they must always agree; as *nuestro rey*, our king; *nuestra patria*, our country; *nuestros enemigos*, our ene-

† The neuter terminations *esto*, *eso*, and *aquello*, are never used adjectively.

mies; *nuestras hazañas*, our exploits; *este ejército*, this army; *esa batalla*, that battle; *estas tropas*, these troops; *esos soldados*, those soldiers. When used as pronouns they represent a noun, which either is understood or has been formerly mentioned in the period, and whose gender and number they always assume; as *Esta (habilidad) es una de las tuyas (habilidades)*, This is one of thy tricks; *Occuparás la plaza de un mozo que murió quince días ha, porque era de delicada complexión, la tuya parece mas robusta, y no morirás tan presto*, Thou wilt fill the place of a lad, who died a fortnight ago, because he was of a delicate constitution; *thine* seems more robust, and thou wilt not die so soon. Gil Blas, book i. chap. 4.

OF VERBS.

A verb is that part of speech generally used to affirm something concerning the noun, which is the subject of discourse, or, as it is commonly called, the subject of the verb; as *soy*, I am; *ella duerme*, she sleeps; *el escribió*, he wrote.*

A verb may make three different species of affirmation concerning its subject; and hence there are three different sorts of verbs, called *active*, *passive*, and *neuter*.

An active verb affirms that its subject is acting or doing something; as *el monge predica*, the monk preaches; *el niño lee*, the child reads.

A passive verb describes its subject as being acted upon, or suffering; as *el xefe fué herido*, the

* Affirmation is the general characteristic of a verb; and therefore, as I shall have occasion to speak of verbs being negatively used, it is necessary to observe, in order to reconcile the seeming contradiction, that verbs always retain their affirming property, even in a negative sentence, and that to use a verb negatively means to place such words either before or after it, as may counteract the impression produced on the mind by the affirmation; as *amó*, he loved; *no amó* he loved not; *alguno vendrá*, some one will come; *ninguno vendrá*, no one will come. By these examples we may see that the verbs *amar* and *venir* remain unaltered, for the negatives *no* and *ninguno* make no part of either of the verbs.

chief was wounded ; *el reo está encarcelado*, the culprit is imprisoned.

A neuter verb denotes neither the one nor the other ; but merely affirms the existence of its subject, in a quiescent state ; or describes the condition, posture or situation of its subject : as *fué*, he was ; *vivimos*, we lived ; *moramos*, we dwell : *ella está sentada*, she is seated.

An active verb may denote two different kinds of action ; and therefore active verbs have been divided into *transitive* and *intransitive*.

An active transitive verb describes an action which its subject may exercise upon something else, called generally the accusative or object of the verb ; es *el cazador mató la liebre*, the sportsman killed the hare ; *el criado asepilló el vestido*, the servant brushed the suit.

An active intransitive denotes an action by which the agent only can be affected ; as *los niños jugaron*, the children played.

When the agent and the individual upon whom the action is exercised are represented by the same person, the verb is called reflective ; as *el soldado se mató*, the soldier killed himself. N.B. Almost all active transitive verbs may be changed into reflective in Spanish.

Active intransitive verbs are sometimes changed into transitive by adding to them the objective case of some noun which is generally formed from them ; as *baylar un bayle*, to dance a dance ; *soñar un sueño*, to dream a dream ; *saltar un salto*, to leap a leap, &c.

In order clearly to distinguish the transitive from intransitive verbs, the attention must be wholly directed to their meaning ; for the same verb may be transitive or intransitive, according to the meaning in which it is employed. Thus the verb *pasear* is an active intransitive verb,

when it signifies to walk one's self, and active transitive when it denotes to make another walk, or to lead him, in which sense it is frequently used when speaking of horses, mules, &c. Gil Blas, in speaking of the exhibition of his mule before the jockey, uses the verb *pasear* as active transitive, when he says, *Pasearonla y repasearonla delante del mulatero*, they walked her to and fro before the jockey.

OF THE ACCIDENTS OF VERBS.

Number, Person, Tense, and Mood.

Number.

A verb may have more than one subject : that is, it may affirm something concerning one, or more than one, individual : hence verbs require like nouns a singular and a plural number ; as *el páxaro vuela*, the bird flies ; *los páxaros vuelan*, the birds fly.

Person.

There are three different classes of individuals that can be the subjects of a verb ; namely, the speaker ; the individual to whom the discourse is addressed ; or an individual who neither speaks nor is addressed ; and to point out this distinction, verbs have three distinct persons ; the first *yo*, I, stands for the name of the speaker ; the second *tú*, thou, is equivalent to the name of the individual to whom the speaker addresses himself ; and the third *él*, he ; *ella*, she ; *ello*, it ; represents any other individual whatever : as *yo leo*, I read ; *tú escribes*, thou writest ; *él pinta*, he paints ; *ella bayla*, she dances.

It has been already observed that verbs may have more than one subject ; it therefore follows that any of the three abovementioned persons may be the subject of a verb alone or accompanied ; and in order to represent them when accompanied, verbs have three other persons, called also first, second, and third, in their plural number. The first person is *nosotros*, or we : with this person the speaker

affirms any thing concerning himself and others at the same time; as *nosotros caminamos*, we travelled: the second is *vosotros*, ye; this person the speaker makes use of when he addresses more than one individual; as *vosotros sois espías*, ye are spies: the third person is *ellos*, or *ellas*, they; and this person is used by the speaker, when he affirms any thing concerning more than one individual not addressed; the speaker not being one of the number; as *ellos pelearon*, they fought; *ellas cantaron*, they sang.

Tense.

The action, passion, or state of existence described by a verb, may be limited to three different periods of time, for it may be described as having taken place; as *he visto*, I have seen; or taking place; as *veo*, I see; or as being to take place, as *veré*, I shall see; and for this purpose verbs have another accident called *tense*.

Spanish verbs have seven tenses; namely, the *present*, *imperfect*,* *perfect indefinite*,* *perfect definite*,* *pluperfect*,* *future imperfect*, *future perfect*. See Observations on the Tenses, Part II.

Mood.

Moods are certain forms of the verb, which, it may be said, serve to modify the affirmation. There are four moods; namely, *indicative*, *imperative*, *subjunctive*,† and *infinitive*.

The indicative affirms the execution of the action denoted by the verb, in a positive and unconditional manner; as *nosotros damos*, we give; *vosotros vais*, ye go.

The imperative orders or entreats the execution of the action; as *id vosotros*, go ye; *concedednos*, grant us; *perdoname*, forgive me.

* They are also named Preterimperfect, Preterperfect indefinite, Preterperfect definite, Preterpluperfect.

† This is sometimes called the potential mood.—See *subjunctive* in Part II

The subjunctive always speaks of the action as contingent ; *si fuéremos mañana*, if we happen to go to-morrow ; *si viniera aquí*, were he to come here ; *aunque lo conceda*, though he may grant it.

The infinitive denotes the action or energy of the verb in a general unlimited and indefinite manner, without any distinction of tense or of person ; as *venir*, to come ; *ir*, to go ; *conceder*, to grant ; *perdonar*, to forgive.

OF CONJUGATIONS.

To conjugate a verb is to repeat it through all the variety of number, person, tense, and mood, of which it is susceptible.

In Spanish there are only three conjugations, which are distinguished by the vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, which regularly precede the last *r* of the infinitive mood : therefore verbs belonging to the first conjugation have their infinitive in *ar* ; those of the second, in *er* ; and verbs of the third, in *ir* ; as, *hablar*, to speak ; *leer*, to read ; *escribir*, to write.

Verbs sometimes are named according to their perfections or their imperfections, and therefore all the verbs of which we have been speaking may be *regular* or *irregular*, *personal* or *impersonal*, *perfect* or *defective*.

Irregulars are those verbs which deviate from the regular form by which all the others are conjugated. See Part II.

Impersonals are verbs which cannot be conjugated through all the persons. See Part II.

Defectives are such verbs as want some of the tenses. See Part II.

The verbs *ser* and *haber* are, from the nature of their service, styled auxiliary or helping verbs, because they are used to form what are called the compound tenses of all verbs ; and also their passive voice ; as, *habiamos escrito*, we had written ; *fueron heridos*, they were wounded.

N. B. In the following examples all the terminations of the verbs have been accented, in order to assist beginners in pronouncing; but it is to be observed that the accent is to be *written* on the letters which are printed in Roman only.

Conjugation of the Auxiliary *Haber*.

Indicative.

Present.—have.

- Sing. 1. *Yo he*, I have.
 2. *Tú has*, thou hast.
 3. *El ha*, he has.
 Plur. 1. *Nosotros hemos* or *habemos*,* we have.
 2. *Vosotros habéis*, ye have.
 3. *Ellos han*, they have.

Imperfect.—had.

- Yo había*, I had.
Tú habías, thou hadst.
El había, he had.
Nosotros habíamos, we had.
Vosotros habíais, ye had.
Ellos habían, they had.

Perfect.—had.

- Yo hube*, I had.
Tú hubiste, thou hadst.
El hubo, he had.
Nosotros hubimos, we had.
Vosotros hubisteis, ye had.
Ellos hubieron, they had.

Future.—shall have.

- Yo habré*, I shall have.
Tú habrás, thou shalt have.
El habrá, he shall have.
Nosotros habrémos, we shall have.
Vosotros habréis, ye shall have.
Ellos habrán, they shall have.

Subjunctive.

Present.—may have.

- Yo haya*, I may have.
Tú hayas, thou mayst have.
El haya, he may have.

* See *Haber*, No. XXV. Part II. by Google.

Nosotros hayámos, we may have.

Vosotros hayáis, ye may have.

Ellos háyan, they may have.

Imperfect.—should, might, would have.

Yo hubiéra, hubiése, habría, I should, might, would have.

Tú hubieras, hubiéses, habrías, thou shouldst, mightst, wouldst have.

El hubiéra, hubiése, habría, he should, might, would have.

Nosotros hubiéramos, hubiésemos, habríamos, we should, might, would have.

Vosotros hubierais, hubiéseis, habrías, ye should, might, would have.

Ellos hubieran, hubiesen, habrían, they should, might, would have.

Future.—if should have.

Si yo hubiere, if I should have.

Si tú hubieres, if thou shouldst have.

Si él hubiere, if he should have.

Si nosotros hubiéremos, if we should have.

Si vosotros hubiéreis, if ye should have.

Si ellos hubieren, if they should have.

Infinitive.

Present. *Habér,* to have.

Gerund. *Habiendo,* having.

As an auxiliary, this verb is employed in the foregoing tenses only; but when it is used either impersonally or as an equivalent to *tener*, (which latter use is nearly exploded,) it has *habido* for its participle, and is conjugated through all the compound tenses. See Impersonal. Verbs, Part II.

Conjugation of *Tener*, To have, or To hold.

Indicative.

Present.—have.

Yo tengo, I have.

Tú tienes, thou hast.

El tiene, he has.

Nosotros tenemos, we have.

Vosotros tenéis; ye have.

Ellos tienen, they have.

Imperfect.—had.

<i>Yo tenía,</i> I had.	<i>Nosotros teníamos,</i> we had.
<i>Tú tenías,</i> thou hadst.	<i>Vosotros teníais,</i> ye had.
<i>El tenía,</i> he had.	<i>Ellos tenían,</i> they had.

Perfect Indefinite.—had.

<i>Yo tuve,</i> I had.	<i>Nosotros tuvimos,</i> we had.
<i>Tú tuviste,</i> thou hadst.	<i>Vosotros tuvisteis,</i> ye had.
<i>El tuvo,</i> he had.	<i>Ellos tuviéron,</i> they had.

Perfect Definite.—have had.

Yo he tenido, I have had.
Tú has tenido, thou hast had.
El ha tenido, he has had.
Nosotros hemos tenido, we have had.
Vosotros habéis tenido, ye have had.
Ellos han tenido, they have had.

Pluperfect.—had had.

Yo había, or había, tenido, I had had.
Tú hubiste, or habías, tenido, thou hadst had.
El hubo, or había, tenido, he had had.
Nosotros hubimos, or habíamos, tenido, we had had.
Vosotros hubisteis, or habíais, tenido, ye had had.
Ellos hubiéron, or habían, tenido, they had had.

Future Imperfect.—shall or will have

Yo tendré, I shall have.
Tú tendrás, thou shalt have.
El tendrá, he shall have.
Nosotros tendremos, we shall have
Vosotros tendréis, ye shall have.
Ellos tendrán, they shall have.

Future Perfect.—shall or will have had.

Yo habré tenido, I shall have had.
Tú habrás tenido, thou shalt have had.
El habrá tenido, he shall have had.
Nosotros habrémos tenido, we shall have had.
Vosotros habréis tenido, ye shall have had.
Ellos habrán tenido, they shall have had.

Imperative.

Ten tú, have thou.
Tenga él, let him have.
Tengámos nosotros, let us have.
Tened vosotros, have ye.
Tengan ellos, let them have.

Subjunctive.

Present.—may have.

Yo tenga, I may have.
Tú tengas, thou mayst have.
El tenga, he may have.
Nosotros tengamos, we may have.
Vosotros tengáis, ye may have.
Ellos tengan, they may have.

Imperfect.—should, or might, or would have.

Yo tuviéra, tuviése, tendría, I should, might, would have.
Tú tuvieras, tuviéses, tendrías, thou shouldst, mightst, wouldst have.
El tuviéra, tuviése, tendría, he should, might, would have.
Nosotros tuviéramos, tuviésemos, tendríamos, we should, might, would have.
Vosotros tuviérais, tuviéseis, tendríais, ye should, might, would have.
Ellos tuviéran, tuviésen, tendrían, they should, might, would have.

Perfect.—may have had.

Yo haya tenido, I may have had.
Tú hayas tenido, thou mayst have had.
El haya tenido, he may have had.
Nosotros hayámos tenido, we may have had.
Vosotros hayáis tenido, ye may have had.
Ellos hayan tenido, they may have had.

Pluperfect.—should, might, would have had.

Yo	{	<i>hubiéra tenido,</i>	I	{	should have had,
		or			or
		<i>hubiése tenido,</i>			might have had,
		or			or
		<i>habría tenido,</i>			would have had.

Tu	{	<i>hubiêras tenído,</i>	thou	{	shouldst have had,
		or			or
		<i>hubiêses tenído,</i>			mightst have had,
		or,			or
El	{	<i>habrías tenído,</i>	he	{	wouldst have had,
		<i>hubiêra tenído,</i>			should have had,
		or			or
		<i>hubiêse tenído,</i>			might have had,
Nosótro	{	or	we	{	or
		<i>hubiêsemos tenído,</i>			might have had,
		or			or
		<i>habríamos tenído,</i>			would have had.
Vosótro	{	<i>hubiêrais tenído,</i>	ye	{	should have had,
		or			or
		<i>hubiêseis tenído,</i>			might have had,
		or			or
Ellos	{	<i>habríais tenído,</i>	they	{	would have had.
		<i>hubiêran tenído,</i>			should have had,
		or			or
		<i>hubiêsen tenído,</i>			might have had,
		or			or
		<i>habrían tenído,</i>			would have had.

Future Imperfect.—if should have.

Si yo tuviêre, if I should have,

Si tú tuviêres, if thou shouldst have.

Si él tuviêre, if he should have.

Si nosótro *tuviêremos,* if we should have.

Si vosótro *tuviêreis,* if ye should have.

Si ellos tuviêren, if they should have.

Future perfect.—if should have had.

Si yo hubiêre tenído, if I should have had.

Si tú hubiêres tenído, if thou shouldst have had.

Si él hubiêre tenído, if he should have had.

Si nosótro hubiêremos tenído, if we should have had.

Si vosótro hubiêreis tenído, if ye should have had.

Si ellos hubiêren tenído, if they should have had.

*Infinitive.**Present.**Tenér*, to have*Perfect.**Habér tenido*, to have had.*Gerund.**Teniendo*, having.*Compound of the Gerund.**Habiendo tenido*, having had.*Participle.**Tenido*, had.Conjugation of *Ser* and *Estár*.*Indicative.**Present.—am.**Yo soy*, or *estoy*, I am.*Tú eres*, or *estás*, thou art.*El es*, or *está*, he is.*Nosotros somos*, or *estamos*, we are.*Vosotros sois*, or *estáis*, ye are.*Ellos son*, or *están*, they are.*Imperfect.—was.**Yo era*, or *estaba*, I was.*Tú eras*, or *estabas*, thou wast.*El era*, or *estaba*, he was.*Nosotros éramos*, or *estábamos*, we were.*Vosotros érais*, or *estábais*, ye were.*Ellos eran*, or *estaban*, they were.*Perfect Indefinite.—was.**Yo fui*, or *estuve*, I was.*Tú fuiste*, or *estuviste*, thou wast*El fué*, or *estuvo*, he was.*Nosotros fuimos*, or *estuvimos*, we were.*Vosotros fuisteis*, or *estuvisteis*, ye were.*Ellos fueron*, or *estuvieron*, they were.

Perfect Definite.—have been.*Yo he sido, or estado, I have been.**Tú has sido, or estado, thou hast been.**El ha sido, or estado, he has been.**Nosotros hemos sido, or estado, we have been.**Vosotros habéis sido, or estado, ye have been.**Ellos han sido, or estado, they have been.**Pluperfect.*—had been.

<i>Yo</i>	<i>húbe sido, or estado,</i>	}	<i>I had been.</i>
	<i>or</i>		
<i>Tú</i>	<i>había sido, or estado,</i>	}	<i>thou hadst been</i>
	<i>hubiste sido, or estado,</i>		
<i>El</i>	<i>or</i>	}	<i>he had been.</i>
	<i>había sido, or estado,</i>		
<i>Nosotros</i>	<i>hubíamos sido, or estado,</i>	}	<i>we had been.</i>
	<i>or</i>		
<i>Vosotros</i>	<i>habíamos sido, or estado,</i>	}	<i>ye had been.</i>
	<i>hubisteis sido, or estado,</i>		
<i>Ellos</i>	<i>or</i>	}	<i>they had been.</i>
	<i>habían sido, or estado,</i>		

Future Imperfect.—shall be.*Yo seré, or estaré, I shall be.**Tú serás, or estarás, thou shalt be.**El será, or estará, he shall be.**Nosotros seremos, or estaremos, we shall be.**Vosotros seréis, or estaréis, ye shall be.**Ellos serán, or estarán, they shall be.**Future Perfect.*—shall have been.*Yo habré sido, or estado, I shall have been.**Tú habrás sido, or estado, thou shalt have been.**El habrá sido, or estado, he shall have been.**Nosotros habremos sido, or estado, we shall have been.**Vosotros habréis sido, or estado, ye shall have been.**Ellos habrán sido, or estado, they shall have been.*

Imperative.

Se, or *está*, *tú*, be thou.
Séa, or *esté*, *él*, let him be.
Seámos, or *estémos*, *nosótro*s, let us be.
Sed, or *estád*, *vosótro*s, be ye.
Séan, or *estén*, *ellos*, let them be.

Subjunctive.

Present.—may be.

Yo séa, or *esté*, I may be.
Tú séas, or *estés*, thou mayst be.
El séa, or *esté*, he may be.
*Nosótro*s *seámos*, or *estémos*, we may be.
*Vosótro*s *seáis*, or *estéis*, ye may be.
Ellos séan, or *estén*, they may be.

Imperfect.—should, might, would be.

<i>Yo</i>	{ <i>fué</i> ra, <i>fué</i> se, <i>ser</i> ía, or <i>estuvié</i> ra, <i>estuvié</i> se, <i>estar</i> ía,	{ I should, might, would be.
<i>Tú</i>	{ <i>fué</i> ras, <i>fué</i> ses, <i>ser</i> ías, or <i>estuvié</i> ras, <i>estuvié</i> ses, <i>estar</i> ías,	{ thou shouldst, mightst, wouldst be.
<i>El</i>	{ <i>fué</i> ra, <i>fué</i> se, <i>ser</i> ía, or <i>estuvié</i> ra, <i>estuvié</i> se, <i>estar</i> ía,	{ he should, might, would be.
<i>Nosótro</i> s	{ <i>fué</i> ramos, <i>fué</i> semos, <i>ser</i> íamos, or <i>estuvié</i> ramos, <i>estuvié</i> semos, <i>estar</i> íamos,	{ we should, might, would be.
<i>Vosótro</i> s	{ <i>fué</i> rais, <i>fué</i> seis, <i>ser</i> iais, or <i>estuvié</i> rais, <i>estuvié</i> seis, <i>estar</i> iais	{ ye should, might, would be.
<i>Ellos</i>	{ <i>fué</i> ran, <i>fué</i> sen, <i>ser</i> ían, or <i>estuvié</i> ran, <i>estuvié</i> sen, <i>estar</i> ían	{ they should, might, would be.

Perfect.—may have been.

Yo háya sido, or *estado*, I may have been.
Tú háyas sido, or *estado*, thou mayst have been.
El háya sido, or *estado*, he may have been.

Nosotros hayámos sido, or estado, we may have been.

Vosotros hayáis sido, or estado, ye may have been.

Ellos hayan sido, or estado, they may have been.

Pluperfect.—should, might, would have been.

<i>Yo hubiera, hu- biése, habría,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{sido,} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{estado,} \end{array} \right\}$	I should, might, would have been.
---	---	--------------------------------------

<i>Tú hubieras, hu- biéses, habrías,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{sido,} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{estado,} \end{array} \right\}$	thou shouldst, mightst, wouldst have been.
--	---	---

<i>El hubiera, hubiese, habría,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{sido,} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{estado,} \end{array} \right\}$	he should, might, would have been.
---	---	---------------------------------------

<i>Nosotros hubiéramos, hubiésemos, habríamos,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{sido,} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{estado,} \end{array} \right\}$	we should, might, would have been.
--	---	---------------------------------------

<i>Vosotros hubierais, hubiéseis, habríais,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{sido,} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{estado,} \end{array} \right\}$	ye should, might, would have been.
---	---	---------------------------------------

<i>Ellos hubieran, hu- biésen, habrían,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{sido,} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{estado,} \end{array} \right\}$	they should, might, would have been.
---	---	---

Future Imperfect.—if should be.

Si yo fuere, or estuviere, if I should be.

Si tú fuéres, or estuvieres, if thou shouldst be.

Si él fuere, or estuviere, if he should be.

Si nosotros fuéremos, or estuviéremos, if we should be.

Si vosotros fuéreis, or estuviéreis, if ye should be.

Si ellos fuéren, or estuviéren, if they should be.

Future Perfect.—if should have been.

Si yo hubiere sido, or estado, if I should have been.

Si tú hubieres sido, or estado, if thou shouldst have
been.

Si él hubiere sido, or estado, if he should have been.

Si nosotros hubiéremos sido, or estado, if we should have
been.

Si vosotros hubiéreis sido, or estado, if ye should have
been.

Si ellos hubiéren sido, or estado, if they should have been.

Infinitive.

Present.

Ser, or *estár*, to be.

Perfect.

Habér sido, or *estado*, to have been.

Gerund.

Siendo, or *estando*, being.

Compound of the Gerund.

Habiendo sido, or *estado*, having been.

Participle.

Sido, or *estado*, been.

With the following verbs the pronouns are omitted ; but they may be used, if so required.

First Conjugation. *Amar*, To love.

Indicative.

Present.—love.

<i>Amo</i> , I love.	<i>Amamos</i> , we love.
<i>Amas</i> , thou lovest.	<i>Amáis</i> , ye love.
<i>Ama</i> , he loves.	<i>Aman</i> , they love.

Imperfect.—loved, or was loving.

<i>Amaba</i> , I loved, or was loving.
<i>Amabas</i> , thou lovedst, or wast loving.
<i>Amaba</i> , he loved, or was loving.
<i>Amábamos</i> , we loved, or were loving.
<i>Amábais</i> , ye loved, or were loving.
<i>Amaban</i> , they loved, or were loving.

Perfect Indefinite.—loved.

<i>Amé</i> , I loved.	<i>Amamos</i> , we loved.
<i>Amaste</i> , thou lovedst.	<i>Amásteis</i> , ye loved.
<i>Amó</i> , he loved.	<i>Amáron</i> , they loved.

Perfect Definite.—have loved

<i>He amado</i> , I have loved.
<i>Has amado</i> , thou hast loved.
<i>Ha amado</i> , he has loved.

Hemos amado, we have loved.

Habéis amado, ye have loved.

Han amado, they have loved.

Pluperfect.—had loved.

Hube, or *había*, *amado*, I had loved.

Hubiste, or *habías*, *amado*, thou hadst loved.

Hubo, or *había*, *amado*, he had loved.

Hubimos, or *habíamos*, *amado*, we had loved.

Hubisteis, or *habíais*, *amado*, ye had loved.

Hubieron, or *hubían*, *amado*, they had loved.

Future Imperfect.—shall or will love.

Amaré, I shall love.

Amarás, thou shalt love.

Amará, he shall love.

Amarémos, we shall love.

Amaréis, ye shall love.

Amarán, they shall love.

Future Perfect.—shall or will have loved.

Habré amado, I shall have loved.

Habrás amado, thou shalt have loved.

Habrá amado, he shall have loved.

Habrémos amado, we shall have loved.

Habréis amado, ye shall have loved.

Habrán amado, they shall have loved.

Imperative.

Ama tú, love thou.

Ame él, let him love.

*Amémosnosótro*s, let us love.

*Amád vosótro*s, love ye.

*Amen éll*os, let them love.

Subjunctive.

Present.—may love.

Ame, I may love.

Ames, thou mayst love.

Ame, he may love.

Amémos, we may love.

Améis, ye may love.

Amen, they may love.

Imperfect.—should, might, would love.

Amára, *amáse*, *amaría*, I should, might, would love.

Amáras, *amáses*, *amarías*, thou shouldst, mightst, wouldst love.

Amára, *amáse*, *amaría*, he should, might, would love.

Amáramos, amásemos, amaríamos, we should, might,
would love.

Amárais, amáseis, amaríais, ye should, might, would
love.

Amáran, amásen, amarían, they should, might, would
love.

Perfect.—may have loved.

Háya amado, I may have loved:

Háyas amado, thou mayst have loved.

Háya amado, he may have loved.

Hayámos amado, we may have loved.

Hayáis amado, ye may have loved.

Háyan amado, they may have loved.

Pluperfect—should, might, would have loved.

Hubiéra, hubiése, habría, amado, I should, might, would
have loved.

Hubiéras, hubiéses, habría, amado, thou shouldst, mightst,
wouldst have loved.

Hubiéra, hubiése, habría, amado, he should, might, would
have loved.

Hubiéramos, hubiésemos, habríamos, amado, we should,
might, would have loved.

Hubiérais, hubiéseis, habría, amado, ye should, might,
would have loved.

Hubiéran, hubiésen, habrían, amado, they should, might,
would have loved.

Future Imperfect.—if should love.

Si amáre, if I should love.

Si amáres, if thou shouldst love.

Si amáre, if he should love.

Si amáremos, if we should love.

Si amáreis, if ye should love.

Si amáren, if they should love.

Future Perfect.—if should have loved.

Si hubiere amado, if I should have loved.
Si hubiéres amado, if thou shouldst have loved.
Si hubiere amado, if he should have loved.
Si hubiéremos amado, if we should have loved.
Si hubiéreis amado, if ye should have loved.
Si hubiéren amado, if they should have loved.

Infinitive.

Present.

Amár, to love.

Perfect.

Habér amado, to have loved.

Gerund.

Amándo, loving.

Compound of the Gerund.

Habiendo amado, having loved.

Participle.

Amado, loved.

Second Conjugation. *Vendér*, To sell.

Indicative.

Present.—sell.

<i>Vendo</i> , I sell.	<i>Vendemos</i> , we sell.
<i>Vendes</i> , thou sellest.	<i>Vendeis</i> , ye sell.
<i>Vende</i> , he sells.	<i>Venden</i> , they sell.

Imperfect.—sold or was selling.

<i>Vendia</i> , I sold.	<i>Vendíamos</i> , we sold.
<i>Vendias</i> , thou soldest.	<i>Vendiais</i> , ye sold.
<i>Vendia</i> , he sold.	<i>Vendían</i> , they sold.

Perfect Indefinite.—sold.

<i>Vendí</i> , I sold.	<i>Vendimos</i> , we sold.
<i>Vendiste</i> , thou soldest.	<i>Vendisteis</i> , ye sold.
<i>Vendió</i> , he sold.	<i>Vendiéron</i> , they sold.

Perfect Definite.—have sold.

He vendido, I have sold.
Has vendido, thou hast sold.
Ha vendido, he has sold.
Hemos vendido, we have sold
Habéis vendido, ye have sold.
Han vendido, they have sold.

Pluperfect.—had sold.

Hube, or había, vendido, I had sold.
Hubiste, or habías, vendido, thou hadst sold.
Hubo, or había, vendido, he had sold.
Hubimos, or habíamos, vendido, we had sold.
Hubisteis, or habíais, vendido, ye had sold.
Hubieron, or habían, vendido, they had sold.

Future Imperfect.—shall or will sell.

<i>Venderé,</i> I shall sell.	<i>Venderémos,</i> we shall sell.
<i>Venderás,</i> thou shalt sell.	<i>Venderéis,</i> ye shall sell.
<i>Venderá,</i> he shall sell.	<i>Venderán,</i> they shall sell.

Future Perfect.—shall or will have sold.

Habré vendido, I shall have sold.
Habrás vendido, thou shalt have sold.
Habrá vendido, he shall have sold.
Habrémos vendido, we shall have sold.
Habréis vendido, ye shall have sold.
Habrán vendido, they shall have sold.

Imperative.

Vende tú, sell thou.
Venda él, let him sell.
Vendámos nosotros, let us sell.
Vended vosotros, sell ye.
Vendan ellos, let them sell.

*Subjunctive.**Present.*—may sell.

<i>Venda</i> , I may sell.	<i>Vendamos</i> , we may sell.
<i>Vendas</i> , thou mayst sell.	<i>Vendáis</i> , ye may sell.
<i>Venda</i> , he may sell.	<i>Vendan</i> , they may sell.

Imperfect.—should, might, would sell.

<i>Vendiéra</i> , <i>vendiése</i> , <i>vendería</i> ,	I should, might, would sell.
<i>Vendiéras</i> , <i>vendiéses</i> , <i>venderías</i> ,	thou shouldst, mightst, wouldst sell.
<i>Vendiéra</i> , <i>vendiése</i> , <i>vendería</i> ,	he should, might, would sell.
<i>Vendiéramos</i> , <i>vendiésemos</i> , <i>venderíamos</i> ,	we should, might, would sell.
<i>Vendiérais</i> , <i>vendiéseis</i> , <i>venderíais</i> ,	ye should, might, would sell.
<i>Vendiéran</i> , <i>vendiésen</i> , <i>venderían</i> ,	they should, might, would sell.

Perfect.—may have sold.

<i>Haya vendido</i> ,	I may have sold.
<i>Hayas vendido</i> ,	thou mayst have sold.
<i>Haya vendido</i> ,	he may have sold.
<i>Hayámos vendido</i> ,	we may have sold.
<i>Hayáis vendido</i> ,	ye may have sold.
<i>Hayan vendido</i> ,	they may have sold.

Pluperfect.—should, might, would have sold.

<i>Hubiéra</i> , <i>hubiése</i> , <i>habría</i> , <i>vendido</i> ,	I should, might, would have sold.
<i>Hubiéras</i> , <i>hubiéses</i> , <i>habrías</i> , <i>vendido</i> ,	thou shouldst, mightst, wouldst have sold.
<i>Hubiéra</i> , <i>hubiése</i> , <i>habría</i> , <i>vendido</i> ,	he should, might, would have sold.
<i>Hubiéramos</i> , <i>hubiésemos</i> , <i>habríamos</i> , <i>vendido</i> ,	we should, might, would have sold.

Hubiérais, hubiéreis, habríaís, vendído, ye should,
might, would have sold.
Hubiéran, hubiéren, habrían, vendído, they should,
might, would have sold.

Future Imperfect.—if should sell.

Si vendière, if I should sell.
Si vendiéres, if thou shouldst sell.
Si vendière, if he should sell.
Si vendiéremos, if we should sell.
Si vendiéreis, if ye should sell.
Si vendiéren, if they should sell.

Future Perfect.—if should have sold.

Si hubiere vendído, if I should have sold.
Si hubiéres vendído, if thou shouldst have sold.
Si hubiere vendído, if he should have sold.
Si hubiéremos vendído, if we should have sold.
Si hubiéreis vendído, if ye should have sold.
Si hubiéren vendído, if they should have sold.

Infinitive.

Present.

Vendér, to sell.

Perfect.

Habér vendído, to have sold.

Gerund.

Vendiendo, selling.

Compound of the Gerund.

Habiendo vendído, having sold.

Participle.

Vendído, sold.

Third Conjugation. *Unir*, To unite.

Indicative.

Present.—unite.

<i>Uno</i> , I unite.	<i>Unimos</i> , we unite.
<i>Unes</i> , thou unitest.	<i>Unís</i> , ye unite.
<i>Une</i> , he unites	<i>Unen</i> , they unite.

Imperfect.—united, or was uniting.

<i>Unia</i> , I united.	<i>Uníamos</i> , we united.
<i>Unías</i> , thou unitedst.	<i>Uníais</i> , ye united.
<i>Unía</i> , he united.	<i>Unían</i> , they united.

Perfect Indefinite.—united.

<i>Uní</i> , I united.	<i>Unímos</i> , we united.
<i>Uníste</i> , thou unitedst.	<i>Unísteis</i> , ye united.
<i>Unió</i> , he united.	<i>Unieron</i> , they united.

Perfect Definite.—have united.

He unido, I have united.
Has unido, thou hast united.
Ha unido, he has united.
Hémos unido, we have united.
Habéis unido, ye have united.
Han unido, they have united.

Pluperfect.—had united.

Hube, or *había unido*, I had united.
Hubiste, or *habías unido*, thou hadst united
Hubo, or *había unido*, he had united.
Hubimos, or *habíamos unido*, we had united.
Hubisteis, or *habíais unido*, ye had united.
Hubieron, or *habían unido*, they had united.

Future Imperfect.—shall, or will unite.

<i>Uniré</i> , I shall unite.	<i>Uniremos</i> , we shall unite.
<i>Unirás</i> , thou shalt unite.	<i>Uniréis</i> , ye shall unite.
<i>Unirá</i> , he shall unite.	<i>Unirán</i> , they shall unite.

Future Perfect.—shall or will have united.

Habré unido, I shall have united.
Habrás unido, thou shalt have united.
Habrá unido, he shall have united.
Habrémos unido, we shall have united.
Habréis unido, ye shall have united.
Habrán unido, they shall have united.

Imperativo.

Une tú, unite thou.
Una él, let him unite.
*Unámos nosótro*s, let us unite.
*Unid vosótro*s, unite ye.
*Unan é*llos, let them unite.

Subjunctive.

Present.—may unite.

<i>Una,</i> I may unite.		<i>Unámos,</i> we may unite.
<i>Unas,</i> thou mayst unite.		<i>Unáis,</i> ye may unite.
<i>Una,</i> he may unite.		<i>Unan,</i> they may unite.

Imperfect.—should, might, would unite.

Uniera, uniése, uniría, I should, might, would unite.
Unieras, uniéses, unirías, thou shouldst, mightst, wouldst unite.
Uniera, uniése, uniría, he should, might, would unite.
Uniéramos, uniésemos, uniríamos, we should, might, would unite.
Unierais, uniéseis, uniríais, ye should, might, would unite.
Unieran, uniésen, unirían, they should, might, would unite.

Perfect.—may have united.

Háya unido, I may have united.
Háyas unido, thou mayst have united.
Háya unido, he may have united.
Hayámos unido, we may have united.
Hayáis unido, ye may have united.
Háyan unido, they may have united

Pluperfect.—should, might, would have united.

Hubiéra, hubiése, habría, unido, I should, might, would have united.
Hubiéras, hubiéses, habrías, unido, thou shouldst, mightst, wouldst have united.
Hubiéra, hubiése, habría, unido, he should, might, would have united.

Hubiéramos, hubiésemos, habríamos, unido, we should,
might, would have united.

Hubiérais, hubiéscis, habríais, unido, ye should, might,
would have united.

Hubiéran, hubiésen, habrían, unido, they should, might,
would have united.

Future Imperfect.—if should unite.

Si uniere, if I should unite.

Si unieres, if thou shouldst unite.

Si uniere, if he should unite.

Si uniéremos, if we should unite.

Si uniéreis, if ye should unite.

Si uniéren, if they should unite.

Future Perfect.—if should have united.

Si hubiere unido, if I should have united.

Si hubieres unido, if thou shouldst have united.

Si hubiere unido, if he should have united.

Si hubiéremos unido, if we should have united.

Si hubiéreis unido, if ye should have united.

Si hubiéren unido, if they should have united.

Infinitive.

Present.

Unir, to unite.

Perfect.

Habér unido, to have united.

Gerund.

Uniendo, uniting.

Compound of the Gerund.

Habiendo unido, having united

Participle.

Unido, united.

VIEW OF A VERB CONJUGATED AS PASSIVE.

Ser herido, to be wounded.

Indicative.

Present —am wounded.

Soy herido, I am wounded.

Eres herido, thou art wounded.

Es herido, he is wounded.

Somos heridos, we are wounded.

Sóis heridos, ye are wounded.

Son heridos, they are wounded.

Imperfect.—was wounded.

Era herido, I was wounded.

Eras herido, thou wast wounded.

Era herido, he was wounded.

Eramos heridos, we were wounded.

Erais heridos, ye were wounded.

Eran heridos, they were wounded

Perfect Indefinite.—was wounded.

Fui herido, I was wounded.

Fuiste herido, thou wast wounded.

Fue herido, he was wounded.

Fuimos heridos, we were wounded.

Fuisteis heridos, ye were wounded.

Fuéron heridos, they were wounded.

Perfect Definite.—have been wounded.

He sido herido. I have been wounded.

Has sido herido, thou hast been wounded.

Ha sido herido, he has been wounded.

Hémos sido heridos, we have been wounded.

Habéis sido heridos, ye have been wounded.

Han sido heridos, they have been wounded.

Pluperfect.—had been wounded.

Hube, or había, sido herido, I had been wounded

Hubiste, or habías, sido herido, thou hadst been wounded.

Hubo, or había, sido herido, he had been wounded.

Hubimos, or habíamos, sido heridos, we had been wounded.

Hubisteis, or habíais, sido heridos, ye had been wounded.

Hubiéron, or habían, sido heridos, they had been wounded.

Future Imperfect.—shall be or will be wounded.

Seré herido, I shall be wounded.

Serás herido, thou shalt be wounded.

Será herido, he shall be wounded.

Serémos heridos, we shall be wounded.

Seréis heridos, ye shall be wounded.

Serán heridos, they shall be wounded.

Future Perfect.—shall or will have been wounded.

Habré sido herido, I shall have been wounded.

Habrás sido herido, thou shalt have been wounded.

Habrá sido herido, he shall have been wounded.

Habrémos sido heridos, we shall have been wounded.

Habréis sido heridos, ye shall have been wounded.

Habrán sido heridos, they shall have been wounded.

Imperative.

Se tú herido, be thou wounded.

Séa él herido, let him be wounded.

Seámos nosotros heridos, let us be wounded.

Sed vosotros heridos, be ye wounded.

Séan ellos heridos, let them be wounded.

Subjunctive.

Present.—may be wounded.

Séa herido, I may be wounded.

Séas herido, thou mayst be wounded.

Séa herido, he may be wounded.

Seámos heridos, we may be wounded.

Seáis heridos, ye may be wounded.

Séan heridos, they may be wounded.

Imperfect —should, might, would be wounded.

Fuëra, fuëse, sería, herido, I should, might, would be wounded.

Fuëras, fuëses, serías, herido, thou shouldst, mightst, wouldst be wounded.

Fuëra, fuëse, sería, herido, he should, might, would be wounded.

Fuëramos, fuësemos, seríamos, heridos, we should, might, would be wounded.

Fuërais, fuëseis, seriais, heridos, ye should, might, would be wounded.

Fuëran, fuësen, serían, heridos, they should, might, would be wounded.

Perfect.—may have been wounded.

Háya sido herido, I may have been wounded.

Háyas sido herido, thou mayst have been wounded.

Háya sido herido, he may have been wounded.

Hayámos sido heridos, we may have been wounded.

Hayáis sido heridos, ye may have been wounded.

Háyan sido heridos, they may have been wounded.

Pluperfect.—should, might, would have been wounded.

<i>Hubiëra sido</i>	} <i>herido,</i>	I should have been	} wounded.
<i>Hubiëse sido</i>		I might have been	
<i>Habría sido</i>		I would have been	

<i>Hubiëras sido</i>	} <i>herido,</i>	thou shouldst have been	} wounded.
<i>Hubiëses sido</i>		thou mightst have been	
<i>Habrías sido</i>		thou wouldst have been	

<i>Hubiëra sido</i>	} <i>herido,</i>	he should have been	} wounded.
<i>Hubiëse sido</i>		he might have been	
<i>Habría sido</i>		he would have been	

<i>Hubiëramos sido</i>	} <i>herido,</i>	we should have been	} wounded.
<i>Hubiësemos sido</i>		we might have been	
<i>Habríamos sido</i>		we would have been	

<i>Hubierais sido</i>	} <i>heridos</i> ,	ye should have been	} wounded.
<i>Hubiésses sido</i>		ye might have been	
<i>Habríais sido</i>		ye would have been	
<i>Hubieran sido</i>	} <i>heridos</i> ,	they should have been	} wounded.
<i>Hubiesen sido</i>		they might have been	
<i>Habrían sido</i>		they would have been	

Future Imperfect.—if should be wounded.

Si fuere herido, if I should be wounded.

Si fuéres herido, if thou shouldst be wounded.

Si fuere herido, if he should be wounded.

Si fuéremos heridos, if we should be wounded.

Si fuéreis heridos, if ye should be wounded.

Si fuéren heridos, if they should be wounded.

Future Perfect.—if should have been wounded.

Si hubiere sido herido, if I should have been wounded.

Si hubiéres sido herido, if thou shouldst have been wounded.

Si hubiere sido herido, if he should have been wounded.

Si hubiéremos sido heridos, if we should have been wounded.

Si hubiéreis sido heridos, if ye should have been wounded.

Si hubiéren sido heridos, if they should have been wounded.

Infinitive.

Present.

Ser herido, to be wounded.

Perfect.

Habér sido herido, to have been wounded.

Gerund.

Siendo herido, having been wounded.

Compound of the Gerund.

Habiendo sido herido, having been wounded.

Participle.

Herido, wounded.

VIEW OF A VERB CONJUGATED AS REFLECTIVE.

Alabarse, to praise one's self.

Indicative.

Present.—praise myself.

<i>Yo me alábo,</i>	<i>Nosotros nos alabámos</i>
<i>Tú te alábas,</i>	<i>Vosotros os alabáis,</i>
<i>El se alába,</i>	<i>Ellos se alaban.</i>

Imperfect.—praised myself.

<i>Me alabába,</i>	<i>Nos alabábamos,</i>
<i>Te alabábas,</i>	<i>Os alabábais,</i>
<i>Se alabába,</i>	<i>Se alabában.</i>

Perfect Indefinite.—praised myself.

<i>Me alabé,</i>	<i>Nos alabámos,</i>
<i>Te alabáste,</i>	<i>Os alabásteis,</i>
<i>Se alabó,</i>	<i>Se alabáron.</i>

Perfect Definite.—have praised myself.

<i>Me he alabádo,</i>	<i>Nos hemos alabádo,</i>
<i>Te has alabádo,</i>	<i>Os habéis alabádo,</i>
<i>Se ha alabádo,</i>	<i>Se han alabádo.</i>

Pluperfect.—had praised myself.

<i>Me hube, or había, alabádo,</i>
<i>Te hubiste, or habías, alabádo,</i>
<i>Se hubo, or había, alabádo,</i>
<i>Nos hubimos, or habíamos, alabádo,</i>
<i>Os hubisteis, or habíais, alabádo,</i>
<i>Se hubieron, or habían, alabádo.</i>

Future Imperfect.—shall praise myself.

<i>Me alabaré,</i>	<i>Nos alabarémos,</i>
<i>Te alabarás,</i>	<i>Os alabaréis,</i>
<i>Se alabará,</i>	<i>Se alabarán.</i>

Future Perfect.—shall have praised myself.

<i>Me habré alabádo,</i>	<i>Nos habrémos alabádo,</i>
<i>Te habrás alabádo,</i>	<i>Os habréis alabádo,</i>
<i>Se habrá alabádo,</i>	<i>Se habrán alabádo.</i>

Imperative.

Alábate tú, praise thou thyself.

Alábese él, let him praise himself.
Alabémonos nosotros, let us praise ourselves.
Alabáos vosotros, praise ye yourselves.
Alábense ellos, let them praise themselves.

Subjunctive.

Present.—may praise myself.

<i>Me alábe,</i>	<i>Nos alabémos,</i>
<i>Te alábes,</i>	<i>Os alabéis,</i>
<i>Se alábe,</i>	<i>Se aláben.</i>

Imperfect.—should, might, would praise myself.

Me alabára, alabáse, alabaría,
Te alabáras, alabáses, alabarías,
Se alabára, alabáse, alabaría,
Nos alabáramos, alabásemos, alabariamos,
Os alabárais, alabáseis, alabariais,
Se alabáran, alabásen, alabarian.

Perfect.—may have praised myself.

<i>Me háya alabádo,</i>	<i>Nos hayámos alabádo,</i>
<i>Te háyas alabádo,</i>	<i>Os hayáis alabádo,</i>
<i>Se háya alabádo,</i>	<i>Se háyan alabádo.</i>

Pluperfect.—should, might, would have praised myself

Me hubiéra, hubiése, habría, alabádo,
Te hubieras, hubiéses, habrías, alabádo,
Se hubiéra, hubiése, habría, alabádo,
Nos hubiéramos, hubiésemos, habríamos, alabádo,
Os hubiérais, hubiéseis, habríais, alabádo,
Se hubieran, hubiesen, habrían, alabádo.

Future Imperfect.—if should praise myself.

<i>Si me alabáre,</i>	<i>Si nos alabáremos,</i>
<i>Si te alabáres,</i>	<i>Si os alabáreis,</i>
<i>Si se alabáre,</i>	<i>Si se alabáren.</i>

Future Perfect.—if should have praised myself.

<i>Si me hubiere alabádo,</i>	<i>Si nos hubiéremos alabádo,</i>
<i>Si te hubieres alabádo,</i>	<i>Si os hubiereis alabádo,</i>
<i>Si se hubiere alabádo,</i>	<i>Si se hubieren alabádo.</i>

Infinitive.

Present.

Alabárse, to praise one's self.

Habérse alabádo, to have praised one's self.

Alabándose, praising one's self.

Habiéndose alabádo, having praised one's self

Alabádo, praised.

On Verbs used Interrogatively or Negatively.

When we ask a question, the subject comes after the verb ; as *¿ Vivía tu padre entonces ?* Was your father then alive ? But the subject sometimes elegantly follows the verb, when no question is asked ; as, *Vivía entonces mi abuelo materno*, My mother's father was then alive.—Gil Blas, ch. v.

N.B. When the verb is negatively used, the *no* must precede it ; as, *Yo no como*, I do not eat ; *¿ No ayunará tu padre mañana ?* Will not your father fast to-morrow ? *¿ No ha visto vm. al rey ?* Have you not seen the king ? *Si, pero mi hijo no le ha visto*, Yes, but my son has not seen him.

OF THE PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a word derived from a verb, and resembling in its properties both verbs and adjectives.

A Participle (so called from its participating of the nature of the verb from which it is derived) resembles its primitive, because it denotes being, action, or suffering ; as, *He sido pobre*, I have been poor ; *Tu has escrito los nombres*, Thou hast written the names ; *Se han impreso varias obras*, Several works have been printed. And it has also the properties of an adjective, because it qualifies the noun to which it is applied with the variations of gender, number, and case : as, *Los nombres*

sscritos, The written names ; *En las obras impresas*, In the printed works.

Spanish verbs have two participles, called the present participle, and the past participle. The latter, from its being used to form passive verbs, has obtained the name of the passive participle.

All verbs have not a present participle, and in many verbs it retains only its adjective property. The present participle ends in *ante* for the first, and in *iente* for the second, or third, conjugation.

The passive participle for the first conjugation ends in *ado*, and for the second or third in *ido*. Those which end otherwise are called irregular participles.

OF ADVERBS.

An Adverb is a part of speech which, being joined to verbs, serves to modify their signification ; as, *Habla concisamente*, He speaks concisely.

Adverbs are also joined to an adjective, or to a substantive used adjectively, or even to another adverb, in order to express some circumstance, degree, quality, or manner of its signification ; as, *El juez es muy severo*, The judge is very severe ; *El es muy niño*, He is very childish ; *Lo digo muy seriamente*, I say it very seriously ; *mas despacio*, more slowly, &c.

Adverbs formed from adjectives, or from other adverbs, by the addition of a word or syllable, are called compound ; and those adverbs from which others are formed are termed simple : thus the adverbs *fácilmente*, easily ; *felizmente*, happily ; are compounds of the adjectives *fácil*, easy ; *feliz*, happy ; and from the simple adverb *mas*, more, is formed the compound *ademas*, besides ; &c.

Adverbs are divided according to their meaning into several classes. Their chief divisions are into adverbs of *place*, *time*, *manner*, or *quality*, *quan-*

tity, comparison, order, affirmation, negation, and doubt. The following are some of those which belong to each of the foregoing classes.

Of Place.

<i>Acá,</i>	hither.	<i>Dentro,</i>	within.
<i>Aquí,</i>	here.	<i>Fuera,</i>	without.
<i>Ahí,</i>	there.	<i>Arriba,</i>	up.
<i>Allí,</i>	thither.	<i>Abaxo,</i>	down.
<i>Allá,</i>	yonder.	<i>Delante,</i>	before.
<i>Cerca,</i>	near.	<i>Detras,</i>	behind.
<i>Léjos,</i>	far.	<i>Encima,</i>	upon.
<i>Donde,</i>	where.	<i>Debaxo,</i>	under. &c.
<i>Adonde,</i>	whither.		

Of Time.

<i>Hoy,</i>	to-day.	<i>Siempre,</i>	always.
<i>Ayer,</i>	yesterday.	<i>Nunca,</i>	never.
<i>Mañana,</i>	to-morrow.	<i>Jamás,</i>	never.
<i>Ahora,</i>	now.	<i>Ya,</i>	already.
<i>Luego,</i>	presently.	<i>Amenudo,</i>	often.
<i>Tarde,</i>	late.	<i>Antes,</i>	before.
<i>Temprano,</i>	soon.	<i>Despues, *</i>	after. &c.

Of Manner.

<i>Bien,</i>	well.	<i>Despacio,</i>	slowly.
<i>Mal,</i>	badly.	<i>Alto,</i>	loudly.
<i>Así,</i>	thus.	<i>Baxo,</i>	lowly.
<i>Pronto,†</i>	readily.	<i>Presto,†</i>	quickly.
<i>Recio,</i>	strongly.	<i>Fuertemente,</i>	strongly.
<i>Apriesa,</i>	hastily.		

N.B. To this class belong almost all the adverbs which end in *mente*.

Of Quantity.

<i>Mucho,</i>	much.	<i>Bastante,</i>	enough,
<i>Poco,</i>	little.	<i>Harto,</i>	sufficiently. &c.
<i>Demasiado,</i>	too much.		

* To these may be added *una vez*, once; *dos veces*, twice; *tres veces*, thrice; *cuatro veces*, four times. &c.

† See the author's Synonyms, page 31.

Of Comparison.

<i>Mas,</i>	more.		<i>Peor,</i>	worse.
<i>Menos,</i>	less.		<i>Muy,</i>	very.
<i>Mejor,</i>	better.		<i>Casi,</i>	almost. &c.

Of Order.

<i>Primero,</i>	first.		<i>Despues,</i>	after. &c.
-----------------	--------	--	-----------------	------------

Of Affirmation.

<i>Aun,</i>	even.		<i>Si,</i>	yes. &c.
-------------	-------	--	------------	----------

Of Negation.

<i>No,</i>	no.		<i>Tampoco,</i>	neither. &c.
<i>Ni,</i>	nor.			

Of Doubt.

<i>Acaso,</i>	perhaps.		<i>Probablemente,</i>	probably. &c.
---------------	----------	--	-----------------------	---------------

There are also many expressions which, from their having the same import as adverbs, have obtained the name of adverbial moods or expressions; such as *hacia allí*, towards there, or towards that place; *despues de mañana*, after to-morrow; *sin duda*, indubitably. &c.

PREPOSITIONS.

A Preposition is a part of speech which serves to show the relation which one word bears to another; as, *En el país de los enemigos*, In the enemy's country.

The following are the principal prepositions in Spanish :

<i>A,</i>	to or at.		<i>Hacia,</i>	towards.
<i>Ante,</i>	before.		<i>Hasta,</i>	till.
<i>Con,</i>	with.		<i>Para,</i>	for.
<i>Contra,</i>	against.		<i>Por,</i>	by or for.
<i>De,</i>	of or from.		<i>Segun,</i>	according to.
<i>Desde,</i>	from.		<i>Sin,</i>	without.
<i>En,</i>	in.		<i>Sobre,</i>	upon.
<i>Entre,</i>	between.		<i>Tras,</i>	behind.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

A Conjunction has been defined to be that part of speech which connects words and sentences together; as, *La justicia y la misericordia son atributos divinos*, Justice and mercy are divine attributes; *Iré á verle, y se lo preguntaré*, I shall go to see him, and will ask him about it.

The Spanish Academy has distributed conjunctions into the following classes :

Conjunctive :—as, *y*,* and ; *ni*, nor ; *que*, that. Example, *Pedro y Juan*, Peter and John ; *No salieron ni Pedro ni Juan*, Neither Peter nor John went out. N.B. When the sentence begins with *no*, the first *ni* may be left out.

Disjunctive :—as, *o*,* or, either ; as *Vendrá el hombre ó la muger*, The man or the woman will come.

Conditional :—as, *si*, if ; *como*, as ; *con tal que*, provided that. Example, *Si aspiras á ser docto, estudia*, If thou dost aspire to be learned, study.

Causal :—as, *porque*, because ; *pues*, *puesque*, since. Example, *No puedo ir, porque estoy coxo*, I cannot go, because I am lame ; *Pues me lo preguntas, te lo contaré*, Since thou askest me about it, I will relate it to thee.

Continuative :—as, *pues*, then ; *puesto que*, since. Example, *Digo pues que salió de aquel peligro*, I say then that he came out of that danger.

Comparative :—as, *como*, as ; *así*, so ; *así como*, as. Example, *Blanco como la nieve*, White as snow ; *Así como lo digo, así lo aprendí*, As I say it, so I learned it.

* *é* is substituted for *y* when the word following the conjunction begins with *i*, or with *hi* ; as, *malicia é ignorancia*, *Padre é hijo*. We also exchange *ó* for *ú*, when the word following begins with *au* : as, *ondas ú olas* ; *corderos u ovejas*.

Adversative :—as, *mas*, *pero*, but ; *aunque*, though. Example, *Quisiera ir, mas no puedo*, I should like to go, but I cannot ; *Es rico, pero no dichoso*, He is rich, but not happy.

Objective :—as, *para que*, that, or in order that ; *afin de que*, to the end that ; Example, *Te lo digo para que se lo escribas*, I tell it thee that thou mayst write it to him.

Those conjunctions which contain only one word, as, *como*, *pero*, &c. are called simple ; and those which are formed with different words, as, *asi como*, *para que*, &c. are denominated compound conjunctions.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

An Interjection is a part of speech which expresses some emotion of the mind ; as, *ola !* holla ! *chito !* hush ! *ay !* oh ! &c.

Observation.

The ten parts of speech which have been explained, comprise all the different species of words of which the Spanish language is composed : every word therefore in the language must necessarily be referred to some one of these ten divisions : but as words are always attached to these ten classes according to their import in the sentence, a word may be made to vary its class according to the various manners in which it is used : hence *el* and *tú* (*the* and *thou*, the one an article and the other a pronoun) may both be made to stand in the place of nouns ; as is the case in the following sentences : *No puedo pronunciar el bien*, I cannot pronounce *the* well ; *No sé el acusativo de tú*, I do not know the accusative of *thou*. The same word may be also found as an adjective or adverb according to the manner in which it is employed : thus, in *un hombre baxo de cuerpo*, a man *low* in stature, *low* is in both languages an adjective ; but, in *hable vm. baxo*, speak *low*, the adjective becomes

an adverb in both languages. In the same manner *mañana*, to-morrow, which, in *Vendré mañana*, I shall come to-morrow, is an adverb; in *Mañana es día de ayuno*, To-morrow is a fast day, is used as a substantive. Many more instances might be adduced of the variation in class which some of the parts of speech are capable of undergoing; but the foregoing examples are sufficient to convince learners that, without a strict attention to the import of the word in the sentence, the class to which it belongs can seldom be accurately ascertained.

S Y N T A X.

SYNTAX treats of sentences, fixes the proper arrangement of their component parts, and shows how the various modifications of words are to be correctly employed.

A sentence has been defined to be an assemblage of words forming a complete sense.

Syntax is divided into two parts, Concord and Government.

Concord is the agreement of one word with another, in number, gender, case, or person ; as, *Yo escribo*, I write. Here *yo* is the first person of the singular number, and *escribo* is also the first person of the same number : these two words, therefore, are said to agree in number and person.

Government or Regimen is the power of one word over another when it determines its case, tense, or mood ; as, *La matará*, He will kill her. Here *matará* is an active transitive verb, governing the pronoun in the objective case.

There are four species of concords.

1st. Between the article and noun. These agree in number, gender, and case ; as, *El valor de las tropas*, *The valour* of the troops. N. B. This is likewise the agreement of two nouns used in apposition.

2d. Between the noun and the adjective. These also agree in gender, number, and case ; as, *La victoria gloriosa de los valerosos patriotas*, *The*

glorious victory of the *valiant patriots*. N.B. Participles adjectively used have also this species of concord.

3d. Between the antecedent and the relative. These always agree in gender and number, and sometimes also in case ; as, *Entregué las cartas á las señoras para las quales se escribiéron*, I delivered the letters *to the ladies for whom* they were written ; *Estas son las señoras para las quales se escribiéron las cartas*, These are *the ladies for whom* the letters were written. The second example exhibits the relative as agreeing in gender and number only with its antecedent, the relative being in the objective case, whilst the antecedent is in the nominative.

4th. Between the subject and the verb. These agree in number and person ; as, *Yo soy*, I am ; *nosotros somos*, we are ; *ellos vienen*, they come.

PART THE SECOND.

[Having enumerated and defined the different species of words of which the Spanish language is composed, I shall in this Part lay down the necessary rules to learn how to produce the correct agreement and right arrangement of words in a sentence.]

RULES

OF

ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

AGREEMENT OF THE ARTICLE.

RULE 1. The article agrees in gender, number, and case, with the noun to which it is prefixed; as
El libro contenia los comentarios de los doctores de la universidad sobre las profecias de los profetas. *The book contained the commentaries of the doctors of the university on the prophecies of the prophets.*

Note a.—Feminine nouns, beginning with *a* or *ha*, and having the accent on the first syllable, take in the singular the masculine article; as, *Mas el arca andaba sobre las aguas*, But the ark moved upon the waters.

Note b.—The article *el* loses the *e* after the prepositions *de* or *á*, to which prepositions the consonant of the article is then joined; as, *del autor*, of the author; *al libro*, to the book; instead of *de el autor*, *á el libro*. N.B. *El* preceding an epithet does not lose the *e*: as, *logró el dictado de el Batallador*, he obtained the surname of the Battler; *dieron á su rey el dictado de el Deseado*, they gave their king the surname of the Desired.

Plural Number.

RULE 2. Nouns ending in a vowel which is not marked with the accent, take an *s* in the plural; as
Reyno, reynos, Kingdom, kingdoms.
Corona, coronas, Crown, crowns.

RULE 3. Nouns which end in an accented vowel, or in a consonant,* take *es* in the plural ; as

<i>Alholí, alholies,</i>	Granary, granaries
<i>Arbol, árboles,</i>	Tree, trees.
<i>Imágen, imágenes,</i>	Image, images.
<i>Flor, flores,</i>	Flower, flowers.

Note a.—Nouns ending in *ay* or *ey* take *es* in the plural ; as, *rey, reyes ; ay, ayes*.

Nouns which do not increase in the Plural.

Cortaplumas, penknife ; *sacamuelas*, toothdrawer ; *sacatrapos*, corkscrew ; *brindis*, a drinking toast ; *Lúnes*, Monday ; *Mártes*, Tuesday ; *Miércoles*, Wednesday, *Jueves*, Thursday ; *Viernes*, Friday.

The following Nouns are used only in the Plural

<i>Albricias</i> f.	a gift†	<i>Uares</i> f.	pot-hanger
<i>alicates</i>	pincers	<i>maytines</i>	matins
<i>angarillas</i> f.	hand-barrow	<i>modales</i>	manners
<i>bofes</i>	lungs	<i>nonas</i> f.	nones
<i>calendas</i> f.	calends	<i>pechugas</i> f.	the breast of birds
<i>completas</i> f.	complin	<i>preces</i> f.	prayers
<i>despabil- deras</i> f.	snufflers	<i>puches</i> f.	pap
<i>efemérides</i> f.	ephemeris	<i>semejas</i> f.	similitude
<i>exequias</i> f.	exequies	<i>tenazas</i> f.	tongs
<i>fascas</i> f.	a bundle of twigs	<i>tercianas</i>	ague
<i>fauces</i> f.	gullet	<i>tinieblas</i>	darkness
<i>idus</i>	ides	<i>trébedes</i> f.	trevet
<i>largas</i> f.	delays	<i>visperas</i> f.	vespers
<i>livianos</i>	lights	<i>viveres</i>	provisions

Nouns which from the nature of their meaning are used in English in the singular only, do not in general admit the plural in Spanish ; as, *trigo*, wheat ; *oro*, gold, &c.

* If the final consonant be a *z*, it must be changed into *c* ; as, *luz, luces*, light, lights ; *nariz, narices*, nose noses ; *lápiz, lápices*, pen-cil, pencils.

† The reward bestowed on a messenger of good news.

OF THE GENDER OF NOUNS

There are two methods of distinguishing the gender in Spanish nouns; first by their meaning, and secondly by their termination.

RULE 4. Nouns which signify males, or which denote dignities, professions, employments, &c. applicable to men, are masculine; and those which signify females, or the dignities, professions, &c. generally applied to women, are feminine; as, *hombre*, man; *caballo*, horse; *emperador*, emperor; *monge*, monk; *sastre*, tailor, &c. and *muger*, woman; *gallina*, hen; *emperatris*, empress; *monja*, nun; *costurera*, sempstress, &c.

N.B. *Haca*, a pony, is always feminine.

RULE 5. Nouns ending in *e*, *i*, or *y*, *l*, *o*, *u*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*, and *z*, are generally masculine; as, *talle*, shape; *alelí*, jilly-flower; *clavel*, pink; *cuello*, neck; *espíritu*, spirit; *pan*, bread; *collar*, collar; *mes*, month; *cenit*, zenith; *relox*, watch; *barniz*, varnish.

RULE 6. Nouns ending in *a*, *d*, and *ion*, are generally feminine; as, *ventana*, window; *salud*, health; *intencion*, intention.

Note a.—The names of the alphabetic characters, as well as of the figures of rhetoric, poetry, and grammar, (except *metaplasmo*, *pleonasm*, *hyperbaton*,) are feminine.

Note b.—The names of sciences, arts, rivers, mountains, winds, and seasons, follow the rule of their termination: hence *Dibuxo*, *Tajo*, *Helicon*, *Norte*, *Invierno*, are masculine; and *Teología*, *Escultura*, *Tamisa*, *Tramontana*, *Primavera*, are feminine; except *Etna*, which is masculine.

Note c.—Nouns, which are used in the plural only, are of the gender to which they would belong according to their termination, had they a singular number: thus, *viweres*, provisions, is masculine; and *tenazas*, tongs, is feminine, being the genders to which *vivere* and *tenaza* would be referred, had the said nouns a singular number: except *efemérides*, *fascas*, *fauces*, *llarcs*, *preces*, *trébedes*, which are feminine.

Note d.—The names of the musical notes which compose the octave are masculine ; as *el re, el mi, el la, el fa*, &c.

Note e.—Proper names of kingdoms, cities, towns, villages, &c. are generally of the same gender as the common name to which they belong : thus *Toledo* is feminine, although it ends in *o*, because *ciudad*, the common noun to which it is referred, is of that gender : but as there are some proper names which, contrary to this rule, are, when used alone, of the gender of their termination ; and as the knowledge of these names cannot be obtained without considerable practice, I should recommend learners in particular to mention the common as well as the proper noun, by which means the gender will be universally fixed : thus, although we say *el Ferrol* and *la España*, when mentioned alone, we express them *la ciudad de Ferrol, el reyno de España*, when preceded by their common nouns.

Gender of Nouns.

Exceptions from Rule 5.

Feminine Nouns ending in *e*.

- <i>Aguachirle</i>	slipslop	<i>corambre</i>	hide -
- <i>alache</i>	shad	<i>corriente</i>	stream
- <i>alsine</i>	chickweed	<i>corte</i>	court
- <i>anagalide</i>	{ pimpernel (a plant)	<i>costumbre</i>	custom -
- <i>ave</i>	a fowl	<i>crasie</i>	plumpness -
- <i>azumbre</i>	a measure	<i>creciente</i>	flood tide
- <i>barbarie</i>	barbarity	<i>crenche</i>	{ the parting of - the hair
- <i>base</i>	basis	<i>cumbr</i>	summit -
- <i>calvicie</i>	baldness	<i>dulceazumbre</i>	sweetness
- <i>calle</i>	street	<i>elatine</i>	waterwort
- <i>capelardente</i>	a funeral pile	<i>enante</i>	a herb
- <i>cariátide</i>	caryatides	<i>epipáctide</i>	{ bastard helle- bore
- <i>carne</i>	flesh	<i>esferoyde</i>	spheroid
- <i>catástrofe</i>	catastrophe	<i>especie</i>	species
- <i>certidumbre</i>	certainty	<i>estirpe</i>	race
- <i>churre</i>	grease	<i>etiopide</i>	{ sclarea (a plant)
- <i>clase</i>	class	<i>falange</i>	phalanx
- <i>clave</i>	key	<i>fame</i>	hunger
- <i>clemátide</i>	{ climber (a plant)	<i>fase</i>	phases
- <i>cohorte</i>	cohort	<i>fè</i>	faith
- <i>compages</i>	a joint		

<i>fièvre</i>	fever	<i>nugre</i>	muck
<i>frente</i>	forehead	<i>nave</i>	nave
<i>fuelle</i>	fountain	<i>nieve</i>	snow
<i>gente</i>	people	<i>noche</i>	night
<i>hambre</i>	hunger	<i>nube</i>	cloud
<i>helice</i>	helix	<i>paralaxe</i>	parallax
<i>helzine</i>	{ pellitory of the wall	<i>paraselene</i>	mock-moon
<i>hemionite</i>	{ hemionitis (a plant)	<i>parte</i>	portion
<i>herrumbre</i>	rust of iron	<i>patente</i>	patent
<i>hipocistide</i>	{ hypocistos (a plant)	<i>péplide</i>	wild purslain
<i>hojaldre</i>	a kind of cake	<i>pesadumbre</i>	grief
<i>incertidumbre</i>	uncertainty	<i>peste</i>	plague
<i>indole</i>	temper	<i>piramide</i>	pyramid
<i>ingle</i>	groin	<i>pixide</i>	pix
<i>intemperie</i>	{ intemperate- ness	<i>planicie</i>	plain
<i>lande</i>	{ a species of acorn	<i>plebe</i>	rabble
<i>landre</i>	{ a glandular swelling.	<i>podre</i>	pus
<i>laringe</i>	larynx	<i>podredumbre</i>	rottenness
<i>laude</i>	praise	<i>progenie</i>	progeny
<i>leche</i>	milk	<i>prole</i>	issue
<i>legumbre</i>	pulse	<i>quiete</i>	quietus
<i>lente</i>	lens	<i>salumbre</i>	oxide of salt*
<i>liebre</i>	hare	<i>salve</i>	{ the Salve Re- gina
<i>liendre</i>	nit	<i>sangre</i>	blood
<i>lite</i>	litigation.	<i>sede</i>	see
<i>llave</i>	key	<i>serie</i>	series
<i>lumbre</i>	fire	<i>servidumbre</i>	servitude
<i>mansedumbre</i>	meekness	<i>serpiente</i>	serpent
<i>menguante</i>	ebb tide	<i>sirte</i>	quicksand
<i>mente</i>	mind	<i>suerte</i>	chance
<i>mole</i>	mass	<i>superficie</i>	superficies
<i>molice</i>	effeminacy	<i>tarde</i>	afternoon
<i>muchedumbre</i>	multitude	<i>teame</i>	a kind of stone
<i>muerte</i>	death	<i>techumbre</i>	roof
		<i>temperie</i>	temperature
		<i>tilde</i>	tittle
		<i>torre</i>	tower
		<i>trabe</i>	beam or girder
		<i>tripode</i>	tripod

* A kind of rust which salt acquires by exposure to atmospheric air.

<i>troxe</i>	granary	<i>velambre</i>	{ certain nup- tial rites glimmering xirys(<i>a plant</i>)
<i>ubre</i>	udder		
<i>urdiembre</i>	warp	<i>vislumbre</i>	
<i>varice</i>	varix	<i>xiride</i>	

Feminine Nouns in *i* or *y*.

<i>Dibcesi</i>	diocese	<i>ley</i>	law
<i>graciadei</i>	{ gratiola (<i>a</i> herb)	<i>metrópoli</i>	metropolis
<i>grey</i>		<i>palmacristi</i>	palmachristi
	flock	<i>paráfrasi</i>	paraphrase.

Feminine Nouns in *l*.

<i>Agumiel</i>	hydromel	<i>hiel</i>	gall
<i>cal</i>	lime	<i>miel</i>	honey
<i>capital</i>	metropolis	<i>piel</i>	skin
<i>cárcel</i>	prison	<i>sal</i>	salt
<i>col</i>	cabbage	<i>señal</i>	signal
<i>decretal</i>	decretal	<i>vocal</i>	vowel.

Feminine Nouns in *n*.

<i>Arrumazon</i>	stowage	<i>plomazon</i>	{ the gilders' cushion
<i>barbechazon</i>	{ fallowing time	<i>razon</i>	
<i>binazon</i>	{ the second ploughing	<i>sarten</i>	frying-pan
<i>cargazon</i>		<i>sazon</i>	season
<i>clavazon</i>	cargo	<i>segazon</i>	reaping-time
<i>clin</i> or <i>crin</i>	row of nails	<i>sien</i>	temple
<i>desazon</i>	mane	<i>sinrazon</i>	wrong
<i>imágen</i>	uneasiness	<i>trabazon</i>	splicing.
	image		

Feminine Nouns in *o*.

<i>Mano</i>	hand	<i>nao</i>	ship.
-------------	------	------------	-------

Feminine Nouns in *r*.

<i>Bezoar</i>	bezoar	<i>segur</i>	axe
<i>flor</i>	flower	<i>zoster</i>	shingles.
<i>labor</i>	work		

Feminine Nouns in *s*.

<i>Anagiris</i>	bean trefoil	<i>apoteosis</i>	apotheosis
<i>antiperistasis</i>	antiperistasis	<i>bacaris</i>	flea-bane

<i>b'lis</i>	bile	<i>metemstco-</i>	{ metempsy- chosis
<i>colap'scis</i>	isinglass	<i>sis</i>	
<i>crisis</i>	crisis	<i>mies</i>	crop
<i>diaperisis</i>	diapedesis	<i>paraláxis</i>	parallax
<i>diarthrosis</i>	diarthrosis	<i>paráxis</i>	palsy
<i>diësis</i>	diesis	<i>parënesis</i>	paranesis
<i>enfitëusis</i>	emphyteusis	<i>polispástos</i>	{ tackle of pul- leys
<i>epiglôtis</i>	epiglottis	<i>raquttis</i>	
<i>ëtites</i>	ætites	<i>res</i>	head of cattle
<i>galiópsis</i>	dead-nettle	<i>selenites</i>	selenites
<i>hematites</i>	hæmatites	<i>sindéresis</i>	remorse
<i>hipóstasis</i>	hypostasis	<i>sinéresis</i>	synæresi
<i>hipótesis</i>	hypothesis	<i>sintáxis</i>	syntax
<i>lis</i>	flower de lys	<i>tësis</i>	thesis
<i>macis</i>	mace	<i>tisis</i>	phthisis
<i>metamórfo-</i>	{ metamorpho- sis	<i>tos</i>	cough.
<i>sis</i>			

See also feminine nouns in *s* which are used in the plural only, page 84.

Feminine Noun in *u*.

<i>Tribu</i>		tribe.
--------------	--	--------

Feminine Nouns in *x*.

<i>Salsifraz</i>	saxifrage	<i>trox</i>	granary.
<i>sardónix</i>	sardonix		

Feminine Nouns in *z*.

<i>Cerviz</i>	cervix	<i>niñez</i>	childhood
<i>cocatriz</i>	cockatrice	<i>nuez</i>	nut
<i>codorniz</i>	quail	<i>paz</i>	peace
<i>coz</i>	kick	<i>perdiz</i>	partridge
<i>cruz</i>	cross	<i>pez</i>	pitch
<i>faz</i>	visage	<i>pomez</i>	pumice
<i>haz</i>	bundle	<i>raiz</i>	root
<i>hez</i>	dregs	<i>sobrehaz</i>	surface
<i>hoz</i>	sickle	<i>sobrepelliz</i>	surplice
<i>luz</i>	light	<i>tez</i>	complexion
<i>matriz</i>	matrix	<i>vez</i>	time
<i>nariz</i>	nose	<i>voz</i>	voice.

N. B. All nouns ending in *ez*, and denoting qualities in the abstract, are feminine ; as, *estrechez*, narrowness ; *palidez*, paleness.

*Exceptions from Rule 6.*Masculine Nouns in *a*.

<i>Adema</i>	prop	<i>guarda-</i>	{ custom-house
<i>albacea</i>	executor	<i>costa</i>	{ cutter
<i>alcavala</i>	per-centage	<i>guardaropa</i>	wardrobe
<i>almea</i>	storax	<i>guardavela</i>	maintoptackle
<i>anagrama</i>	anagram	<i>idioma</i>	idiom
<i>aneurisma</i>	aneurism	<i>largomira</i>	telescope
<i>antípoda</i>	antipode	<i>lema</i>	lemma
<i>aporisma</i>	echymosis	<i>maná</i>	manna
<i>apotegma</i>	apophthegm	<i>mapa</i>	map
<i>axioma</i>	axiom	<i>paradigma</i>	paradigm
<i>carisma</i>	divine gift	<i>paragua</i>	umbrella
<i>clima</i>	climate	<i>pentagra-</i>	{ the musical
<i>cometa</i>	comet	<i>ma</i>	{ staff
<i>crisma</i>	chrism	<i>planeta</i>	planet
<i>dia</i>	day	<i>poema</i>	poem
<i>diafragma</i>	midriff	<i>prisma</i>	prism
<i>diagrama</i>	diagram	<i>problema</i>	problem
<i>digama</i>	digamma	<i>progim-</i>	{ essay
<i>dilema</i>	dilemma	<i>nasma</i>	
<i>diploma</i>	diploma	<i>sintoma</i>	symptom
<i>dogma</i>	dogma	<i>sistema</i>	system
<i>drama*</i>	drama	<i>sofa</i>	sofa
<i>edema</i>	œdema	<i>sofisma</i>	sophism
<i>enigma</i>	enigma	<i>tapaboca</i>	{ slap on the
<i>entimema</i>	enthymeme		{ mouth
<i>epigrama</i>	epigram	<i>tema</i>	theme
<i>esperma</i>	sperm	<i>teorema</i>	theorem
<i>Etna</i>	Etna	<i>viva</i>	cheer or huzza;

and all those nouns which by their meaning denote males; as, *Jesuita*, Jesuit; *anacoreta*, anchorite; *anabaptista*, anabaptist, &c. N.B. Although *gloria* is feminine, its compounds, as, *gloria patri*, *gloria in excelsis*, &c. are masculine.

Masculine Nouns in *d*.

<i>Adalid</i>	{ the chief of a band of war- riors	<i>almud</i>	a measure
<i>alamud</i>		<i>archilaud</i>	species of lute
		<i>ardid</i>	wile
		<i>ataud</i>	coffin

* And its compounds; as, *melodrama*, &c.

<i>cesped</i>	turf or sod	<i>sud</i>	south
<i>huesped</i>	guest	<i>talmud</i>	talmud.
<i>laud</i>	late		

Masculine Nouns in *ion*.

<i>Avion</i>	marten	<i>morrión</i>	murrain
<i>embrion</i>	embryo	<i>aluvion</i>	alluvion
<i>gorrión</i>	sparrow	<i>chirrión</i>	{ tumbrel or
<i>guion</i>	standard		{ cart
<i>sarampión</i>	measles	<i>antuvion</i>	sudden shock;

and all the augmentative nouns which end in *ion*.

Nouns of doubtful gender.

<i>Albalá</i>	certificate	<i>dote</i>	dowry
<i>anatema</i>	anathema	<i>puente</i>	bridge
<i>cisma</i>	schism	<i>canal</i>	canal
<i>emblema</i>	emblem	<i>márgen</i>	margin
<i>hermafro-</i>	{ hermaphro-	<i>orden†</i>	order
<i>dita</i>		<i>cutis</i>	skin
<i>nema</i>	seal of a letter	<i>mar†</i>	sea
<i>reuma</i>	rheum	<i>pringue</i>	dripping
<i>arte*</i>	art	<i>hipérbole</i>	hyperbole.

Observation.

In addition to masculine and feminine nouns, there are two other species called epicene and common nouns; the first comprehends those nouns which, without varying the article, denote either the masculine or feminine of a class; as, *el raton*, the he or she mouse; *la rata*, the he or she rat; *el pato*, the duck or drake. To distinguish them, it is necessary to add some word descriptive of the sex; as, *el raton hembra*, the she mouse; *la rata macho*, the he rat. Common nouns are those which vary the article to show the distinction of genders; as, *el testigo*, the male witness; *la testigo*, the female witness; *el homicida*, the homicide (man); *la homicida*, the homicide (woman); &c.

* In the plural it is almost always feminine; as, *el arte diabolico*, or *el arte diabolica*, the diabolic art; *las artes mecanicas*, mechanic arts.

† When synonymous with *command* it is feminine.

‡ All the compounds of *mar*, as, *bazamar*, &c. are feminine.

Use of the Definite Article.

RULE 7. Nouns taken in a definite sense require the article ; as

El hombre viene, The man is coming.
Las virtudes de los santos, The virtues of the saints.

RULE 8. Nouns used in their most general sense are preceded by the article ; as

El hombre peca, Man sins.
La virtud es amable, Virtue is amiable.

RULE 9. Names of empires, kingdoms, countries, provinces, mountains, rivers, winds, and seasons, generally take the article ; as

La Alemania, Germany.
La Inglaterra, England.
El Parnaso, Parnassus.
El Otoño, Autumn.

Note a.—Empires, kingdoms, countries, and provinces, when preceded by a preposition, are not usually found with the article, unless they are personified ; as

El clima de Inglaterra, The climate of England.
Los esfuerzos de la Inglaterra, The efforts of England.

Note b.—Kingdoms bearing the same name as their capital do not admit the article ; as, *Nápoles*, Naples.

Note c.—Custom has assigned the article under all circumstances to the names of some distant empires, &c. ; as, *las casas del Japon*, the houses of Japan ; *las calles de la China*, the streets of China.

RULE 10. Nouns of measure, weight, &c. when preceded by the indefinite article in English, as an equivalent to *each*, require the article ; as

Cinco duros la vara, Five dollars a yard.
Dos reales la libra, Two rials a pound.
Ochenta guineas la bota, Eighty guineas a butt.
Dos veces al dia, Twice a day.

Note a.—If the preposition *por* be used, we omit the article ; as, *cinco duros por vara*, five dollars per yard ; *dos reales por libra*, two rials per pound.

Note b.—It is to be observed, that whenever in similar instances the indefinite article may be changed into the numeral adjective in English, it is to be expressed by the same adjective in Spanish ; as He sold *a* pound for fourpence the first day, and the following day

twenty pounds at eight pence a pound. *Vendió una libra por quatro peniques el primer dia, y el dia siguiente veinte libras á ocho peniques la libra.*

RULE 11. *Señor, señora, señorito, señorita*, when used in the third person of both numbers, require the article ; as

El señor Don Juan,

Mr. John.

El señor Pacheco,

Mr. Pacheco.

La señora Doña Catalina Gomez, Mrs. Catherine Gomez.

La señorita Perez,

Miss Perez.

Note a.—*Don* and *Doña* must be placed immediately before baptismal names, but cannot be preceded by the article nor used in the plural : as, *Don Juan* ; *Doña Maria* ; *los señores Don Juan Romero y Don Luis Gomez*.*

Note b.—When a common noun is immediately placed before the proper name of an individual, (to denote his dignity, profession, &c.) it is generally preceded by the article ; as, *El rey Jorge*, King George ; *Y me envió al Doctor Godínez*, And he sent me to Doctor Godínez ; *Liámome el Capitan Rolando*, I am called Captain Rolando : except *Santo* ; as *Santo Tomas*, Saint Thomas.

RULE 12. Numerals, when denoting either the day of the month or the hour of the day, generally take the article ; as

El seis de Enero,

The sixth of January.

El catorce de Mayo,

The fourteenth of May.

La una,

One o'clock.

Las onze,

Eleven o'clock.

Las tres y quarto,

A quarter after three

Las ocho menos quarto,

A quarter to eight.

Las diez menos veinte minutos,

Twenty minutes before ten.

RULE 13. The article is generally repeated before every noun enumerated, especially if they differ in gender ; as

• *La Fé, la Esperanza, y la Caridad,*

Faith, Hope, and Charity.

Los dias y las noches,

The days and nights.

* See page 133.

Note a.—When the nouns enumerated are followed by a word which seems to contain them in the aggregate, the article is usually omitted; as, *Africanos, Asiaticos, Americanos, y Europeos todos son hombres*, Africans, Asiatics, Americans, and Europeans, are all men.

RULE 14. Two or more nouns used in apposition* admit the article only before the first; as
La ciudad de Londres, The city of London, the
capital de Inglaterra capital of England and
y residencia del soberano, the residence of the
sovereign.

Jupiter, hijo de Saturno, Jupiter, the son of Saturn.

N. B. Two nouns coming together and denoting the same person, admit the article sometimes before each of them. See *note b* to Rule 17.

RULE 15. Proper names of persons, places, and months, take no article; as

<i>Socrates</i> ,	Socrates.
<i>Roma</i> ,	Rome.
<i>Abril</i> ,	April.

Note a.—The days of the week are very seldom found without the article; as, *el Lunes*, Monday; *el Viérnes*, Friday.

Note b.—Custom has established the uniform use of the article before the proper name of some places; as, *la Coruña*, Corunna; *el Ferrol*, Ferrol.

Note c.—*Casa*, when preceded by a preposition, and used in the sense of *home*, is seldom found with the article; as, *Vamos á casa*, let us go home; *estoy en casa del conde*, I am at the count's; *viene de casa*, he comes from home; *el amo de casa*, the master of the house.

Note d.—Nouns adverbially used are not preceded by the article; as, *de corason*, heartily; *con paciencia*, patiently

RULE 16. Nouns taken in a partitive sense are never preceded by the article; as

<i>Dame pan</i> ,	Give me bread.
<i>Dale vino</i> ,	Give him some wine.
<i>Danos miel</i> ,	Give us honey.

Note a.—Some may be also expressed by *algun*, *alguna*, in the

* See observation after Rule 25

singular, and by *algunos, algunas*, and *unos, unas*, in the plural ; as, *alguna tinta*, some ink ; *unas plumas*, some pens.

Note b.—Any interrogatively used is either suppressed entirely, or expressed like *some* ; as *¿ hay algunas plumas ?* or *¿ hay plumas ?* are there any pens ?

Note c.—Some before a singular noun is often expressed by *un poco de*, a little ; as, *dame un poco de pan* ; *un poco de su miel*.

Note d.—The article is omitted before adjectives, either of number or of order, when they are preceded by the noun to which they refer ; as, *Jorge Primero*, George the First ; *Clemente Catorce*, Clement the Fourteenth ; *Capítulo decimo*, Chapter the tenth ; *Tomo quince*, Volume the fifteenth. N. B. Numerals only are, generally, used after twenty ; as *El Papa Juan Veinte y dos*, Pope John the Twenty-second ; *Tomo treinta y cinco*, Volume the thirty-fifth.

Note e.—The article is omitted before the titles of books, chapters, paragraphs, &c. when they are not the subject or objective case of a verb expressed, or the regimen of some preposition ; as, *Gramática Española, discurso preliminar, capítulo once, párrafo segundo, verso quarto* ; and, *La Gramática Española se divide, leímos el discurso preliminar, el capítulo once empieza así, el párrafo segundo es muy largo, en el párrafo tercero del capítulo veinte y quatro dice el autor, &c.* N. B. When the title of a book relates to a particular individual, it may be expressed with or without the article ; as, *Aventuras* or *las Aventuras de Telemaco* ; *Obras* or *las Obras de Ciceron* ; *Cartas* or *las Cartas de Plinio*. It is however improper to use the article if all the adventures, the works, or the letters be not understood.

NOUNS.

RULE 17. When two nouns signifying different things come together in English, their order is reversed in Spanish, and the preposition *de* prefixed to the second ; as

<i>La naturaleza del hombre,</i>	Man's nature.
<i>Cuchara de té,</i>	Tea-spoon.
<i>Columna de mármol,</i>	Marble pillar.
<i>El camino de Londres,</i>	The London road

Note a.—If the second noun is preceded in English by the prepositions *of* or *to*, the order is preserved ; as, The authority of the prince, *la autoridad del príncipe* ; brother to the duke, *hermano del duque*. N. B. *To*, after the words journey, voyage, walk, &c. is not altered in Spanish ; as, Journey to London, *viage á Londres* ; a walk to the Park, *un paseo al Parque*.

Note b.—Two substantives signifying the same thing admit *be* between them when the first serves as a species of epithet for the other; as, *El tonto del amo*, the fool of a master; *el picaro del criado*, the rogue of a servant.

Note c.—If the second noun be preceded by *of* and followed by the sign of the possessive case, (*'s*.) we place the preposition and article before both nouns; as, Two regiments of the king's, *Dos de los regimientos del rey*.

Note d.—Some compound nouns in English are translated by a simple one; as, *tetera*, tea-pot; *molinillo*, chocolate-mill; *cartera*, letter-case.

Note e.—The sign (*'s*) of the English possessive case is rendered by *de*, even when the noun to which it refers is not expressed after it in English; as, This house is the ambassador's, *esta casa es del embajador*; Go to the consul's, *ve á casa del consul*; He was buried at St. Paul's, *fué enterrado en la iglesia de San Pablo*.

Note f.—When the noun which has the mark of the possessive case is preceded by the indefinite article in English, it admits of two constructions in Spanish: thus, *a king's palace* may be translated *el palacio de un rey*, the palace of a king, or, *un palacio de rey*, a palace fit for a king.

OF ADJECTIVES.

Their Feminine Termination.

RULE 18. Adjectives which end in *o*, *an*, or *on*, have their feminine termination in *a*. Those terminating otherwise are common to both genders; as

<i>El muchacho holgazan,</i>	The idle boy.
<i>La muchacha holgazana,</i>	The idle girl.
<i>El hombre ruin,</i>	The mean man.
<i>La muger ruin,</i>	The mean woman.
<i>El dia feliz,</i>	The happy day.
<i>La hora feliz,</i>	The happy hour.

Note a.—Adjectives in *o* change it into *a* in their feminine termination: as, *santo*, *santa*, holy; *bueno*, *buena*, good; *sabio*, *sabia*, wise.

Note b.—Adjectives derived from the names of countries, kingdoms, provinces, &c. ending with a consonant, admit an *a* in their feminine termination; as, *Español*, *Española*, Spanish; *Saxon*, *Saxona*, Saxon; *Andaluz*, *Andaluza*, Andalusian.

Note c.—The last-mentioned species of adjectives are generally expressed by the name of the country, with the preposition *de* prefixed, when the adjective serves to qualify articles of commerce, &c. as, *manteca de Irlanda*, Irish butter; *cerveza de Inglaterra*, English beer; *vino de España*, Spanish wine.

Note d.—The same construction often takes place when the adjective is applied to persons ; as, *El embajador de España*, the Spanish ambassador ; *el cónsul de Inglaterra*, the English consul.

Plural of Adjectives.

RULE 19. The plural of adjectives is formed like the plural of substantives ; as, *santo, santos, Saxon, Saxones, holgazan, holgazanes, haragana, haraganas, ruin, ruines, feliz, felices*. See Rules 2 and 3.

Place of Adjectives.

RULE 20. Adjectives, and participles used adjectively, are generally placed after their nouns ; as
Operaciones difíciles, Difficult operations.
Generales vencidos, Conquered generals.
Soldados heridos, Wounded soldiers.

Agreement of Adjectives.

RULE 21. An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case ; as
Argumento ridículo, Ridiculous argument.
Conclusiones falsas, False conclusions.

N. B. Adjectives are always put in the masculine when they qualify the feminine noun *nada* ; as, *nada es tan cierto como la muerte*, nothing is so certain as death. Nouns common to both genders vary the adjective ; as, *el homicida fué castigado, la homicida fué castigada*, the homicide was punished.

Note a.—Adjectives are generally prefixed in the three following instances : 1st, When they denote the inherent property of the subject ; as, *sobre el duro mármol*, upon the hard marble. 2d, When used as epithets ; as, *el ambicioso Alexandro*, the ambitious Alexander. 3d, When they are accented on the antepenult ; as, *un intrépido gefe*, an intrepid chief : hence all superlatives in *ísimo* are generally prefixed ; as, *atrocísima maldad*, most atrocious wickedness.

Note b.—*Mucho* and *poco* should precede their noun ; as, *muchos enemigos*, many enemies ; *pocas tropas*, few troops.

Note c.—*Cierto* when not meaning *indubitable* is placed before ; as, *ciertas propuestas*, certain proposals.

Note d.—Cardinal numbers, not used to translate ordinal numbers, are prefixed ; as, *doce dias*, twelve days ; *el dia doce*, the twelfth day.

Note e.—Adjectives may be either prefixed or postponed when a verb intervenes ; as, *difíciles eran las operaciones, los enemigos eran*

muchos, heridos estaban los soldados, soldados habia muchos, viveres tenian pocos.—N. B. Some adjectives vary their signification with their place ; as, *buena vida*, luxurious life ; *vida buena*, virtuous life ; *papeles varios*, papers on various subjects ; *varios papeles*, sundry papers ; *habitacion nueva*, dwelling newly built ; *nueva habitacion*, new habitation ; *mortal herida*, dangerous wound ; *herida mortal*, mortal wound, &c.

Note f.—*Todo* should precede the noun ; as, *todo hombre ha nacido para morir*, every man is born to die ; *toda accion debe encaminarse al bien de la sociedad*, every action ought to be directed to the welfare of society.—N. B. If the noun be in the plural, it ought to be immediately preceded by the article ; as, *todos los hombres han nacido*, &c. *todas las acciones deben*, &c.

RULE 22. Two or more nouns in the singular require their adjective in the plural ; and in the masculine termination if they differ in gender ; as
El palacio y el templo The magnificent palace
magníficos, and temple.
La torre y la casa derribadas, The tower and house
overthrown.
La iglesia y el hospital The church and hospital
edificados por él, built by him.

Note a.—An adjective prefixed to two nouns singular agrees, generally, with the nearest ; as, the intrepid valour and resistance of the patriots, *el intrépido valor y resistencia, la intrépida resistencia y valor de los patriotas.*

RULE 23. An adjective agrees with the *nearest* of two or more plural nouns, which differ in gender ; as, *los efectos y riquezas preciosas, las riquezas y efectos preciosos, los preciosos efectos y riquezas, las preciosas riquezas y efectos*, the invaluable riches and effects.

Note a.—An adjective of two terminations is improper to qualify two nouns which differ both in gender and in number ; as, *la intrepidez y los esfuerzos eran estupendos*, the intrepidity and efforts were wonderful. It is better to use an adjective of one termination for both, or a distinct adjective for each noun ; as, *la intrepidez y los esfuerzos eran admirables, or la intrepidez era maravillosa y los esfuerzos estupendos.*

Note b.—Adjectives when connected by a verb to a title do not agree with it, but with the individual to whom it is given ; as, *su magestad Saxona ha estado malo*, his Saxon majesty has been ill ; *su excellencia está indispuerto*, his excellency is unwell ; *sus señorías*

han sido nombrados, their lordships have been appointed ; *¿ está vm. bueno, señor ?* are you well, sir ?

Note c.—The adjective which follows the reflective pronoun agrees with the noun which the pronoun represents ; as, *el se vió engañado*, he saw himself deceived ; *las mugeres se engañan á sí mismas*, women deceive themselves.

Observation.

When two or more adjectives serve to qualify a noun substantive which is in the plural, they do not agree with it in number, provided the plural of the substantive be composed of nouns of different species, and yet including but one of each species ; as, *diccionario de las lenguas Española, Inglesa, y Latina*, a dictionary of the Spanish, English, and Latin languages ; here *lenguas* is in the plural, and yet the three adjectives by which it is qualified remain in the singular, and cannot be changed without destroying the sense. Fearful that this distinction will not be readily understood, because English adjectives are always indeclinable, I shall endeavour to illustrate the remark by stating a case. Suppose I want to describe three dresses, a black, a blue, and a white, I should say, *descripcion de los vestidos, negro, azul, y blanco*: change the number of the adjectives, and say, *descripcion de los vestidos, negros, azules, y blancos* ; it then implies that there are more than one dress of each colour : alter the number of the substantive, and express it, *descripcion del vestido negro, azul, y blanco* ; the meaning then is, that there is only one dress, in which the three colours, black, blue, and white, are blended together.

Adjectives which become defective when placed before their Nouns.

RULE 24. *Primero, tercero, postrero, uno,* alguno, ninguno, bueno, and malo*, prefixed, lose the *o* in the singular ; as, *el primer hombre*, the first man ; *el postrer dia*, the last day ; *ningun juez*, no judge ; *un buen poeta*, a good poet ; *un mal lector*, a bad reader.

* *Un* is also placed before all those feminine nouns, which require the masculine article, as, *un arca, un hambre*. See Note a to Rule 1st.

Note a.—With *tercero* the rule is immaterial ; as, *el tercer siglo*, or *el tercero siglo*, the third century.

Note b.—*Ciento* immediately preceding a noun loses the *to* ; as, *cien hombres*, a hundred men ; *ciento y veinte*, a hundred and twenty.

Note c.—*Santo* loses the *to* before the proper names of men ; as, *San Juan*, St. John ; *San Francisco*, St. Francis : except before the names of *Domingo*, *Tomas*, *Tomé*, and *Tortibio* ; as, *Santo Domingo*, St. Dominick, *Santo Tomas*, St. Thomas, &c.

Note d.—*Grande* frequently loses the *de* ; but more especially when preceding a consonant, and when not conveying an idea of size ; as, *un gran matemático*, a great mathematician ; *un grande odio*, a great hatred ; *un grande caballo*, a large horse ; *un gran caballo*, a famous horse.

Note e.—The adjective *uno*, *una*, is used for the indefinite article, *a* or *an* ; as, *un autor escribió en un día una obra*, an author wrote in one day a work.

Note f.—The adjectives *alguno* and *ninguno* must always precede the noun, when the verb is not accompanied by the negative *no* : as, *he escrito algunas cartas*, I have written some letters ; *ningun amigo tiene*, no friend has he ; but when *no* accompanies the verb we use generally *ninguno*, which must then be placed after the verb ; as, *no he escrito ningunas cartas*, I have written no letters ; *no tiene ningun amigo*, he has no friend.—N. B. *Alguno* in the singular, and placed after the noun, is often used instead of *ninguno* ; as, *no tiene amigo alguno*.

RULE 25. Adjectives, or Participles employed as substantives, require the neuter article, if such words as *how*, *how much*, *what*, or *that which*, can be prefixed to the English adjective, and, in other instances, take the masculine or feminine article agreeing with the noun understood ; as, *Los jóvenes no conocen bien lo ventajoso que les será prepararse para lo futuro*, The young do not well know how advantageous it will be to them to prepare themselves for the future ; *Muchas son las penas verdaderas, pero las imaginarias son mas*, Many are the real troubles, but the imaginary ones are more.

Observation.

On the use of the numeral adjective *uno* as a substitute for the English indefinite article *a* or *an*.

The English indefinite is sometimes expressed by the

same article in Spanish ; at others it is translated by the definite article, and in many instances entirely suppressed.

1. The indefinite is used in both languages, when *a* or *an* denotes the idea of unity in a very vague and indeterminate manner ; as, *a* friend told me that, *un amigo me dixo eso* ; he wrote *an* excellent work, *escribió una obra excelente*.

2. It may be used in both languages, when the noun is taken in a general sense ; that is to say, when the English noun can be put in the plural, without an article, or the Spanish noun in either number with the definite article ; as, *a* man without honour is contemptible ; or, men without honour are contemptible ; *un hombre sin honra es despreciable* ; or, *el hombre sin honra es despreciable* ; or, *los hombres sin honra son despreciables*. See Rule 8.

3. The indefinite article, used before nouns of measure, weight, number, bulk, &c. is translated by the definite. See Rule 10.

4. When a verb connects two nouns, one of which denotes the country, dignity, profession, employment, &c. of the other, the indefinite is generally suppressed in Spanish ; as, the governor was *an* Englishman, *el gobernador era Ingles* ; the duke is also *a* bishop, *el duque es tambien obispo* ; the son is *a* better physician than the father, *el hijo es mejor médico que el padre*.

5. When two nouns come together, used in apposition, the indefinite is not expressed in Spanish ; as, Lord Wellington, *a* commander in Spain, *Lor Wellington, comandante en España*.—N.B. Nouns which are used in apposition may be readily discovered, because they will generally admit a relative and the verb *to be* between them ; as, my brother *a* banker at, &c. that is, my brother *who is* a banker at : the Thames *a* river of England, that is, the Thames *which is* a river of England, &c.

6. When the indefinite precedes a noun seemingly taken in part only, it is also suppressed ; as, I have *an* inclination, *tengo inclinacion* ; he had *a* mind to go, *tenia gana de ir* ; have you *an* objection ? *¿ tiene vm. reparo ?* she has *a* memory, *ella tiene memoria*.

7. It is also omitted in Spanish in the title-page of a book ; as, *A New Dictionary, Diccionario Nuevo* ;

8. Likewise before the numbers one hundred, one thousand ; but it is not omitted before one million alone ; as, *a hundred men, cien hombres* ; *a thousand pounds, mil libras* ; he owes *a million, debe un millon*.

9. It is also suppressed before the word *half* ; as, three yards and *a half, tres varas y media* : it is likewise omitted before the integer which precedes the half, if it contains but one unit ; as, *a yard and a half, vara y media* ; *a million and a half, millon y medio*.

10. The indefinite is not translated in ejaculations, nor when placed between the substantive and adjective ; as, what *a pity* ! *¡ que lastima* ! so famous *a victory, tan famosa victoria* ; such *a man, tal hombre*.

11. It is omitted after the adverb *like* ; as, he acted like *a man, obró como hombre* ; like *a hero, como héroe*. But if the word following the adverb be connected with the following part of the sentence, the indefinite may be used ; as, like *a man who valued virtue, como hombre, or como un hombre, que apreciaba la virtud*.

COMPARATIVES.

RULE 26. Adjectives are compared with the adverbs *mas*, more ; *ménos*, less ; and *tan*, so or as ; example,

<i>Mas rico,</i>	Richer.
<i>Mas virtuoso,</i>	More virtuous.
<i>Ménos vano,</i>	Less vain.
<i>Tan sabio,</i>	So or as wise.

Note a.—If the English adjective *much* be preceded by *so* or *as*, the Spanish adjective *tanto* is employed ; as, *tanto dinero*, as much money ; *tantas penas*, so many troubles.

RULE 27. *Than* after comparatives in English is *que* in Spanish, unless it precedes the pronoun *what*, expressed or understood, and then it is *de* ; as
Richer than I, Mas rico que yo.
Less vain than thou, Ménos vano que tú.
More than they, or than Mas de lo que pensaron.
what they, thought,

Note a.—*Than* before what is sometimes translated *que*, when the verb in the sentence is negative; as, *no tiene el libro mas que lo que hemos extractado*, the book contains no more *than* what we have extracted.

Note b.—*Than* after comparatives, and preceding a noun of number or quantity, is *que* or *de*; the latter seems preferable when the verb is not accompanied by a negative; as, *tenemos mas de dos libras*, we have more *than* two pounds; *no tenia mas que dos hijas*, he had no more *than* two daughters; *mas de un tercio*, more *than* one third; *no mas que un tercio*, not more *than* one third.

RULE 28. *As* after comparatives is *como*: example,
As beautiful as vain, Tan hermosa como vana.
As much money as power, Tanto dinero como poder.
I read as much as I write, Tanto leo como escribo.

Note a.—Instead of *como* we may use *quan* after *tan* before adjectives, and *quanto* after *tanto* before verbs; as, *tan hermosa quan vana*; *tanto leo quanto escribo*.

Note b.—The English definite article before comparatives is not translated into Spanish, and the expression frequently receives a different turn; as, the better day the better deed, *mejor dia mejor obra*; the more money the less wit, *mas dinero menos ingenio*; the more we play the less we learn, *mas jugamos menos aprendemos*, or *mientras mas jugamos menos aprendemos*, or *quanto mas jugamos tanto menos aprendemos*, &c.

Note c.—*As* after *so*, and followed by a verb in the infinitive, is rendered *que*, and the second verb is put in the same tense as the first: Example, he was so impious *as* not to believe in God, *era tan impio que no creia en Dios*.

Note d.—If there be two comparatives, differently formed, the conjunction should correspond with the last; as, *sus calles estan tan bien ó mejor empedradas que las nuestras*, their streets are as well paved as, or better paved than, ours; *sus navios son mas fuertes ó ú lo menos tan fuertes como los nuestros*, their ships are stronger than, or at least as strong as, ours.

SUPERLATIVES.

RULE 29. English superlatives ending in *est* or formed by *most* are rendered by prefixing the definite article to the Spanish comparative; as

The wisest, *El mas sabio.*
 The most ungrateful, *La mas ingrata.*

Note a.—The definite article is omitted before the comparative, if it is already expressed before the substantive; as, *la muger mas ingrata*, the most ungrateful woman: unless a verb intervene; as, *el leon es el mas noble de todos los animales*, the lion is the noblest of all animals.

Note b.—*Most*, or *most of*, when followed by a singular noun, is translated *la mayor parte* ; as, most of the army, *la mayor parte del exercito* ; but if the noun be in the plural, *most* may also be translated *mas*, with the corresponding article ; as, most of the soldiers, *la mayor parte*, or *los mas, de los soldados* ; most causes, *la mayor parte*, or *las mas de las causas*.

Note c.—The preposition *in* after the English superlative is translated *de* in Spanish ; as, the best house in the street, *la mejor casa de la calle* ; the soul is the greatest wonder in the world, *el alma es la mayor maravilla del mundo*.

RULE 30. Superlatives which in English are made with *very*, are formed in Spanish by prefixing *muy* to the adjective, or by affixing to it the termination *ísimo* ; as

Very clever, *Muy hábil*, or *habilísimo*.
Very easy, *Muy fácil*, or *facilísimo*.

Note a.—If the adjective ends in a vowel, it is suppressed ; as, *corto*, short ; *cortísimo*, very short ; *alegre*, cheerful ; *alegrísimo*, very cheerful ; *triste*, sad ; *tristísimo*, very sad ; *famoso*, famous ; *famósísimo*, very famous.

Adjectives which change their final termination before they admit the termination *ísimo* :

Final changes into		Example.	
<i>co</i>	<i>qu</i> ,	<i>rico</i>	<i>riquísimo</i> .
<i>go</i>	<i>gu</i> .	<i>largo</i>	<i>larguísimo</i>
<i>ble</i>	<i>bil</i> ,	<i>afable</i>	<i>afabilísimo</i> .
<i>s</i>	<i>c</i> ,	<i>feliz</i>	<i>felicísimo</i> .

Superlatives in *ísimo* irregularly formed :

<i>Bonísimo</i> ,	very good,	from <i>bueno</i> ,	good.
<i>fortísimo</i> ,	very strong,	<i>fuerte</i> ,	strong.
<i>novísimo</i> ,	very new,	<i>nuevo</i> ,	new.
<i>sapientísimo</i> ,	very wise,	<i>sabio</i> ,	wise
<i>sacratísimo</i> ,	very sacred,	<i>sacro</i> ,	sacred.
<i>fidelísimo</i> ,	very faithful,	<i>fiel</i> ,	faithful.

Irregular comparatives and superlatives :

From	Comparat.	Superlat.
<i>Bueno</i> ,	<i>mejor</i> ,	<i>óptimo</i> .
<i>malo</i> ,	<i>peor</i> ,	<i>peísimo</i> .
<i>grande</i> ,	<i>mayor</i> ,	<i>máximo</i> .
<i>pequeño</i> ,	<i>menor</i> ,	<i>mínimo</i> .*
<i>alto</i> ,	<i>superior</i> ,	<i>supremo</i> .
<i>bajo</i> ,	<i>inferior</i> ,	<i>ínfimo</i> .
<i>mucho</i> ,	<i>mas</i> .	
<i>poco</i> ,	<i>ménos</i> .	

* This is often compared, for greater energy, as, *no tengo el mas mínimo reparo*, I have not the slightest objection.

All these form a superlative in *ísimo* according to the rules already given ; as, *malísimo, poquísimo, baxísimo, &c.*

Note b.—These positives admit also a comparative formed with *mas* or *ménos* ; and a superlative with *muy*, as, *mas bueno*, better ; *ménos malo*, less bad ; *los mas grandes*, the greatest ; *muy pequeños*, very small.

Note c.—Substantives used adjectively admit the degrees of comparison ; as, *es mas caballero que tú*, he is more of a gentleman than thou ; *el es muy hombre*, he is very much of a man, or very manly ; *este hombre es muy niño*, this man is very childish.

Government of Adjectives.

RULE 31. Adjectives generally require *de* before their regimen, if it is part of the noun with which they agree ; as

Un saco ancho de boca, A sack wide at the mouth.

Un cuchillo boto de punta, A knife blunt at the point.

Un vestido largo de mangas, A suit long in the sleeves.

Un hombre baxo de cuerpo, A man low in stature.

Una muger acre de genio, A woman of a sour temper.

The following adjectives belong to this rule :

<i>Agudo de ingenio</i> ,	Sharp or keen.
<i>Alto de cuerpo</i> ,	Tall.
<i>Blanco de cara</i> ,	Of a fair complexion.
<i>Blando de corteza</i> ,	Of a soft rind.
<i>Chico de persona</i> ,	Short.
<i>Crecido de cuerpo</i> ,	Overgrown.
<i>Duro de entendimiento</i> ,	Hard of comprehension.
<i>Fuerte de condicion</i> ,	Of a rough temper.
<i>Gordo de talle</i> ,	Thick in the waist.
<i>Largo de cuerpo</i> ,	Long in the body
<i>Ligero de pies</i> ,	Of light feet.
<i>Mediano de estatura</i> ,	Of a middle height.
<i>Recio de complexion</i> ,	Of a strong constitution.

<i>Torcido de cuerpo,</i>	Twisted in the body.
<i>Mayor de cuerpo,</i>	Taller.
<i>Menor de edad,</i>	Less in age.
<i>Manco de una mano,</i>	Lame of one hand.
<i>Pálido de semblante,</i>	Having a pale face.

RULE 32. Adjectives require *en* before their regimen, if it denotes that wherein the quality of the adjective is conspicuous ; as

<i>Un hombre áspero en las palabras, incansable en el trabajo, exácto en sus pagos, constante en sus devociones, y devoto en sus oraciones.</i>	A man harsh in his words, unwearied in his labour, exact in his payments, constant in his devotions, and devout in his prayers.
---	---

Note a.—If the regimen is an infinitive, it is also preceded by *en* ; as, *Los reyes deben ser lentos en castigar y prontos en recompensar*, Kings ought to be slow to punish and ready to reward.

The following adjectives belong to this rule :

<i>Diligente en sus negocios,</i>	Diligent in his business.
<i>Experto en las leyes,</i>	Skilful in the laws.
<i>Incesante en sus tareas,</i>	Constant in his business.
<i>Indefatigable en la guerra,</i>	Indefatigable in war.
<i>Nimio en el proceder,</i>	Nice in his proceedings.
<i>Parco en la comida,</i>	Sparing in his meals.
<i>Pesado en la conversacion,</i>	Tiresome in his conversation.
<i>Hábil en sus negocios,</i>	Clever in his business.
<i>Impropio en su edad,</i>	Unbecoming at his age.
<i>Inconstante en su proceder,</i>	Wavering in his actions.
<i>Inflexible en su dictamen,</i>	Inflexible in his opinions.
<i>Superior en luces,</i>	Superior in understanding.

RULE 33. If the regimen of the adjective is the noun to which the quality of the adjective is directed, it is generally preceded by *á* : as

<i>La tirania es aborrecible á las gentes,</i>	Tyranny is hateful to the people.
--	-----------------------------------

Esta fruta es agradable al paladar, This fruit is agreeable to the palate.
Los limones son ágríos al gusto, Lemons are sour to the taste.

RULE 34. If the noun which forms the regimen is also what produces the quality implied in the adjective, it is generally governed with *de* ; as
Ella estaba pálida de miedo, She was pale with fear.

El era temeroso de la muerte, He was fearful of death.

The following adjectives belong to this rule :

<i>Abochornado de la pregunta,</i>	Hurt at the question.
<i>Aburrido de las desgracias,</i>	Worried by misfortunes.
<i>Alegre de las noticias,</i>	Joyful on account of the news.
<i>Avergonzado del castigo,</i>	Ashamed of the punishment.
<i>Impelido de la necesidad,</i>	Compelled by necessity.

Note a.—If the regimen of the foregoing adjectives is an infinitive, it also requires *de* before it ; as, *cansado de trabajar*, tired of working.

RULE 35. Numeral adjectives govern with the preposition *de* a noun of dimension ; as

<i>Dos varas de largo,</i>	Two yards in length.
<i>Treinta pies de alto,</i>	Thirty feet high.
<i>Seis pulgadas de grueso,</i>	Six inches thick.

Note a.—It is not requisite that the numeral adjective should precede the noun of dimension ; as, *la pared tiene ocho varas de alto*, or *la pared tiene de alto ocho varas*, the wall is eight yards high.

Note b.—If the quantity be expressed with the verb *ser*, or without any verb at all, the numeral adjective must also be preceded by *de* ; as, *el pozo es de ochenta brazas de profundo*, the well is eighty fathoms in depth ; *la tabla es de quatro pulgadas de grueso*, the plank is four inches thick ; and *un pozo de ochenta brazas de profundo*, a well eighty fathoms deep, &c.

Note c.—The difference in the measure must be also preceded by *de*; as, *el es mas alto que tú de tres pulgadas*, he is taller than you by three inches.

RULE 36. Adjectives denoting *plenty* or *scarcity*, *care* or *negligence*, govern their regimen with *de*; as

<i>Un jarro lleno de agua,</i>	A jug full of water.
<i>Un vaso vacío de vino,</i>	A glass empty of wine.
<i>Un hombre falto de juicio,</i>	A man void of reason.
<i>Un hombre cuidadoso de su dinero,</i>	A man careful of his money.
<i>Un enfermo descuidado de su salud,</i>	A patient careless of his health.

Note a.—*Abundante* admits *en* as well as *de*; as, *abundante de or en riquezas*, abounding in riches. *Fertil* and *fecundo* belong to Rule 32.

The following adjectives belong to this rule

<i>Ageno de verdad,</i>	Foreign to truth.
<i>Escaso de medios,</i>	Nearly bereft of means.
<i>Infecto de heregia,</i>	Tainted with heresy.
<i>Inficionado de peste,</i>	Infected with the plague.
<i>Limitado de talentos,</i>	Straitened in talents.
<i>Apurado de dinero,</i>	Exhausted of money.

RULE 37. Adjectives denoting *desire* or *disdain*, *knowledge* or *ignorance*, *capacity* or *incapacity*, *worthiness* or *unworthiness*, *innocence* or *guilt*, require also *de* before their regimen; as

<i>Deseoso de la vida,</i>	Desirous of life.
<i>Desdeñoso de sus favores,</i>	Disdainful of his favours.
<i>Cierto de las noticias,</i>	Certain of the news.
<i>Incierto de las consecuencias,</i>	Uncertain of the consequences.
<i>Digno de una corona,</i>	Worthy of a crown.
<i>Indigno de alabanzas,</i>	Unworthy of praise.
<i>Capaz del empleo,</i>	Capable of the employment.

Inocente del asesinato, Innocent of the murder.
Reo de muerte, Guilty of death.

Note a.—If these adjectives be followed by an infinitive, the same preposition must be used; as, *bueno de comer*, good to eat.

RULE 38. *Numeral and ordinal adjectives, superlatives, relatives, interrogatives, and indefinites, as well as nouns used partitively, require also their regimen with de; as*

Dos de los regimientos, Two of the regiments.
El primero de los dos, The first of the two.
El mejor de todos, The best of all.
No sabiendo quien de ellos hablaba, Not knowing which of them was the speaker.
¿ Qual de las tres vende vm. ? Which of the three do you sell?
Qualquiera de las hijas, Any one of the daughters.
Muchos de los presentes, Many of those present.
Algunos de los oyentes, Some of the hearers.

Note a.—The preposition *de* may be often changed into *entre* or *de entre*; as, *uno de*, or *entre*, or *de entre*, *ellos*, one of, or among, or from among, them.

RULE 39. *Adjectives denoting fitness or unfitness govern their regimen with para; as*

Apto para el empleo, Fit for the employment.
Impropio para su edad, Improper for his age.
Benéfico para su salud, Beneficial to his health.
Util para la patria, Useful for the country
Idoneo para todo, Fit for every thing.

Note a.—If these adjectives be followed by an infinitive, it must be preceded by the preposition *para*; as, *bueno para comer*, fit to be eaten.

Note b.—*Compatible* and *incompatible* require their regimen with *con*; as, *compatible con la justicia*, consistent with justice; *incompatible con el mando*, inconsistent with the command.

RULE 40. Adjectives denoting *facility* or *difficulty* require *á* before their regimen; as

<i>Increible á muchos,</i>	Incredible to many.
<i>Comprehensible á pocos,</i>	Comprehensible to few.
<i>Inaccessible á todos,</i>	Inaccessible to all.
<i>Flexible á la razon,</i>	Yielding to reason.

Note a.—*Fácil, difícil, separable,* and *inseparable,* have always their regimen with *de*; as, *fácil de digestion*, easy of digestion; *inseparable de la virtud*, inseparable from virtue.

Note b.—If the regimen of any of the foregoing adjectives be an infinitive, it must also be preceded by the same preposition: as, *Vióse pues precisado á ponerme baxo la férula de un preceptor*, (Gil Blas, ch. 1.) He saw himself then compelled to place me under the rod of a preceptor. *Fácil de digerir*, easy to be digested.

RULE 41. Adjectives denoting *profit* or *disprofit*, *likeness* or *unlikeness*, require *á* before their regimen; as

<i>Provechoso á la salud,</i>	Advantageous to health.
<i>Pernicioso á la juventud,</i>	Pernicious to youth.
<i>Semejante á su padre,</i>	Like his father.
<i>Igual á otros,</i>	Equal to others.
<i>Inferior á su hermano,</i>	Inferior to his brother.
<i>Superior á sus hijos,</i>	Superior to his children.
<i>Conforme á su dictamen,</i>	Agreeable to his opinion.

Note a.—*Mayor* and *menor* require *de* before their regimen. See Rule 31.

Note b.—Adjectives implying equality have sometimes their regimen with *con*; as, *igual con otro, conforme con su opinion*, &c.

RULE 42. Adjectives denoting *proximity* generally have their regimen with *á*; as

<i>Cercano á la muerte,</i>	Approaching death.
<i>Inmediato á ella,</i>	Close to her.
<i>Vecino al palacio,</i>	Adjacent to the palace.
<i>Junto á la casa,</i>	Adjoining the house.
<i>Contiguo á la heredad,</i>	Contiguous to the estate.

Note a.—If these adjectives have an infinitive for their regimen, the same preposition is employed; as, *próximo á morir*, near dying.

RULE 43. Adjectives denoting *distance* have generally *de* before their regimen ; as

Distante de la Corte, Distant from Court.
Léjos de Londres, Far from London

Note a.—If the regimen be an infinitive, the same preposition must be used ; as, *Léjos de impacientarme con las prolixas relaciones de mi amo*, far from becoming impatient with the tedious narrations of my master. Gil Blas, b. iv. ch. 2.

RULE 44. Adjectives denoting *behaviour* generally govern the noun to which it is directed with *con* ; as

Amoroso con los suyos, Affectionate to his relations.
Atento con sus mayores, Respectful towards his elders.
Ingrato con los amigos, Ungrateful to his friends.

Observation.

Many of the foregoing species of adjectives have their regimen with prepositions different from those which have been allotted to them in the foregoing examples, according to the sense in which they are taken : thus, for instance, the adjective *áspero* may have its regimen with *á*, *de*, *en*, or *con* ; as

Una fruta áspera de sabor, A fruit with a rough (or harsh) taste. See Rule 31.

Un hombre áspero en sus costumbres, A man rough (or blunt) in his manners. See Rule 32.

Una piedra áspera al tacto, A stone rough (or uneven) to the touch. See Rule 33.

Un amo áspero con sus criados, A master rough (or rigid) with his domestics. See Rule 44.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1st Person.—Sing.		1st Person.—Plur.	
Nom.	<i>yo.</i>	Nom.	<i>nosotros.</i>
1st Obj. case	<i>me.</i>	1st Obj. case	<i>nos.</i>
2d Obj. case	<i>mí.</i>	2d Obj. case	<i>nosotros</i>

2d Person.—Sing.		2d Person.—Plur.	
Nom.	<i>tú.</i>	Nom.	<i>vosotros</i>
1st Obj. case	<i>te.</i>	1st Obj. case	<i>os.</i>
2d Obj. case	<i>ti.</i>	2d Obj. case	<i>vosotros.</i>
3d Person.—Sing.		3d Person.—Plur.	
Nom.	<i>él, ella, ello.</i>	Nom.	<i>ellos.</i>
1st Obj. case	<i>le, la, lo, se.</i>	1st Obj. case	<i>los, las, les, se.</i>
2d Obj. case	<i>él, ella, ello, sí.</i>	2d Obj. case	<i>ellos, sí.</i>

N.B. *Nosotros, vosotros, and ellos* change the last *o* into *a* for the feminine termination.

Observation.

The second person had formerly the termination *vos* also, which is now nearly exploded, being employed by Spaniards only in their addresses to persons in very exalted stations, or by those persons in their official documents; as, *El rey vuestro tío dexará presto de vivir, y vos ocuparéis su lugar*, The king your uncle will soon cease to live, and you will occupy his place. Gil Blas, b. iv. ch. 4. *Por quanto vos Don Francisco Ximenez habeis executado*, &c. Forasmuch as you Don Francis Ximenes have executed.

Place of the Pronouns.

RULE 45. The subject or nominative case precedes verbs which are not in the imperative, nor used interrogatively; as

<i>Yo leo,</i>	<i>I read.</i>
<i>Tú hablas,</i>	<i>Thou speakest.</i>
<i>Vengan ellos,</i>	<i>Let them come.</i>
<i>¿ Viene ella ?</i>	<i>Is she coming ?</i>

Note a.—The subject is seldom expressed except when emphasis or the distinction of persons seems to require it; as, *hablo*, I speak; *leo*, I read; *saldré*, I shall go out; and *yo leeré, y tú escribirás*, I will read, and thou shall write; *No era yo solo el que habia de caminar con el arriero*, I was not the only one who was to travel with the carrier. Gil Blas, ch. 3.

Note b.—Verbs are placed before their subject when they are used to introduce a quotation, or when the transposition adds to the energy of the sentence; as, *Llora, hija, (le decía ella,) llora todo quanto puedas*, Weep, child, (said she to her,) weep as much as you can. *Gil Blas*, ch. 10. *No sabía yo que pensar de tal encuentro*, I did not know what to think of such a meeting. *Ibid.* ch. 3.

Note c.—The English pronoun *it* is never translated before impersonal verbs; as, it rains, *llueve*; it will snow, *nevará*; it is impossible to believe it, *es imposible creerlo*; it will concern many, *importará á muchos*.

RULE 46. The objective case, when not preceded by a preposition, is affixed to infinitives, imperatives, and gerunds; as

<i>Amarla,</i>	To love <i>her</i> .
<i>Amemosla,</i>	Let us love <i>her</i> .
<i>Amandola,</i>	Loving <i>her</i> .
<i>Habiendola amado,</i>	Having loved <i>her</i> .
<i>Dales algo,</i>	Give <i>them</i> something.
<i>Habiendoles dicho,</i>	Having said to <i>them</i> .

Note a.—The terminations of the first and second persons plural of verbs lose their final letter when they are followed by *nos* or *os*; as, *levantémonos*, let us rise; *sentáos*, sit ye down.

RULE 47. Verbs which are not in the infinitive, imperative, or gerund, have generally the objective case prefixed; as

<i>El me enseña,</i>	He teaches <i>me</i> .
<i>Tú le instruyes,</i>	Thou instructest <i>him</i> .
<i>Yo lo digo,</i>	I say <i>it</i> .
<i>Ella nos ve,</i>	She sees <i>us</i> .
<i>Nosotros los oímos,</i>	We hear <i>them</i> .
<i>Vosotros la amais,</i>	Ye love <i>her</i> .
<i>Ella les dixo,</i>	She said to <i>them</i> .

Note a.—The objective case may sometimes elegantly follow, but never when the sentence does not begin by the verb; as, *llevo me á su casa quando*, he carried *me* to his house when, &c.; *amábame tiernamente entónce*s, and *entónce*s *me amaba tiernamente*, he loved *me* tenderly then.

Note b.—When one verb has another in the infinitive for its regimen, the objective case referring to the second verb may be always

placed either before the governing verb, or after the regimen; as, *te pudieras levantar*, or *pudieras levantarte*, thou mightest rise.

Variety in the use of the Objective Cases.

RULE 48. Prepositions when expressed always govern the second objective case; as

<i>Para mí,</i>	For <i>me</i> .
<i>Sin tí,</i>	Without <i>thee</i> .
<i>Contra ellos,</i>	Against <i>them</i> .

Note a.—*Mi, ti, si*, when preceded by *con*, take *go* after them, and are joined to the preposition; as, *conmigo, contigo, consigo*.

Note b.—*Entre* is used with the subject case of the first and second persons singular, in this expression, *entre tú y yo*, between *thee* and *me*; but in every instance besides it governs the second objective case; as, *entre sí*, between themselves; *entre nosotros*, between us.

Note c.—The second objective case is always used after comparatives; as, *te quiero mas que á él*, I love thee better than *him*; *me dan ménos que á tí*, they give me less than *thee*; *nos dió tanto dinero como á ellos*, he gave us as much money as *them*.

RULE 49. When in English the objective case of the first or second person is the regimen of the verb, or of the preposition *to* expressed or understood, we use the first case; * as

I exhorted <i>thee</i> ,	<i>Yo te exhorté.</i>
He conquered <i>me</i> ,	<i>El me venció.</i>
She spoke <i>to us</i> ,	<i>Ella nos habló.</i>
He will tell <i>me</i> ,	<i>El me dirá.</i>

RULE 50. If the objective case of the third person be the regimen of the English verb, we translate it by *le, los* for the masculine, *la, las*† for the feminine, and *lo*‡ for the neuter; as

He killed <i>him</i> ,	<i>El le mató.</i>
------------------------	--------------------

* Except after comparatives. See Rule 48, note c.

† Except after comparatives. See Rule 48, note c.

‡ See also Rule 51, note c.

She saw *them*,
They heard *it*,

Ella los vió.
Ellos lo oyéron.

RULE 51. If the third person in English is governed by the preposition *to* expressed or understood, we render it by *le, les*,* for both genders; as

We spoke *to him*, *Nosotros le hablamos.*
I wrote *to her*, *Yo le escribí.*
She told *them*, *Ella les dixo.*

Note a.—The third person being governed by *to*, in English, either expressed or understood, is expressed by *se* if the regimen of the verb be a pronoun of the third person; as, he brought her a jewel, and sent it *to her*, *le compró una joya, y se la mandó*; I shall write them three letters, and will send them *to them*, *les escribiré tres cartas, y se las mandaré*; I sent them six lines, and she read them *to them*, *yo les mandé seis renglones, y ella se los leyó*; my servant will give it *him*, *mi criado se lo dará*.

N. B. For the manner in which adjectives are made to agree with the reflective pronoun *se*, see note c to Rule 23.

Note b.—When two first objective cases occur in the sentence, one of which is the regimen of the verb, and the other is governed in English by the preposition *to* either expressed or understood, the regimen of the verb is to be placed last; as, she told *it me*, *ella me lo dixo*; I was going to tell *it to thee*, *iba á decírtelo*; I gave it *to him*, *yo se lo di*. But if the regimen of the verb be the reflective pronoun, it must be placed first; as, he discovered himself immediately *to me*, *luego se me descubrió*.

Note c.—Both the objective cases belonging to the same person are sometimes used together in Spanish, to give more energy to the expression, and then the second must always be preceded by *á*. Example, *mi madre me ama á mí*, my mother loves me; *su hermana te aborrece á tí*, his sister hates thee; *él se lo mandó á ella*, he sent it *to her*; *ella se ama á sí*, she loves herself; *él se lo contó á ellas*, he related it *to them*; *yo les dixé las noticias á ellos*, I told them the news; *yo se las diré á vms.*, I will tell them *to you*.

Note d.—The second objective case of any of the persons ought not to be in the sentence preceded by *á*, as the regimen of the verb, without being accompanied by the first:† therefore such expressions as these, *á él quiero*, *á tí amo*, are faulty; they should be *á él lo quiero*, *á tí te amo*. The place of the second objective case in simi-

* Except after comparatives. See Rule 48, note c.

† Except after a comparative; as, *Y siempre me creían á mí mas que á él*; and they always believed me more than him. Gil Blas, ch. 5.

lar cases is restricted to the following rules: 1st, If the first objective case should precede the verb, the second may be placed either before the first, or after the verb; as, *á tí te amo*, or *te amo á tí*, I love thee. 2dly, If the first objective case follow the verb, the second must be placed after the first; as, *amandole á él*, loving him.

Note e.—To construe the English pronoun *it*, when it represents a noun of the masculine gender in Spanish, by the neuter pronoun *lo*, is incorrect. *Lo* can never be properly employed, unless the object to which it refers be one to which we cannot ascribe either the masculine or the feminine gender; as, the book I bought I will send (*it*) to thee, *el libro que compré te le mandaré*; no: promise that thou wilt bring *it* to me to-morrow, *no: promete que me le traeras mañana*; I promise *it* to thee, *te lo prometo*. *It* in the first two examples is rendered *le*, because it refers to *libro*, which is masculine, but in the last it is construed *lo*, because the English pronoun does not refer to the book, but to the action of bringing it the following day.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

Are *mio, tuyo, suyo, nuestro, vuestro*.

N.B. The *o* is changed into *a* for the feminine termination.

RULE 52. Possessives always agree in gender, number, and case, with the possession; as

<i>Nuestro jardín,</i>	Our garden.
<i>De nuestros jardines,</i>	Of our gardens.
<i>Vuestra quinta,</i>	Your villa.
<i>En vuestras quintas,</i>	In your villas.

RULE 53. Possessive pronouns, when used as pronominal adjectives,* precede the noun with which they agree; as

<i>Nuestros empeños,</i>	Our endeavours.
<i>Vuestras virtudes,</i>	Your virtues.

RULE 54. *Mio, tuyo*, and *suyo*, lose their last syllable when placed before the noun; as

* That is, when they represent *my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their*, in English. See Observation after Demonstratives, p. 42.

<i>Mi conducta,</i>	My conduct.
<i>Mis palabras,</i>	My words.
<i>Tu valor,</i>	Thy valour.
<i>Tus hazañas,</i>	Thy exploits.
<i>Su temeridad.</i>	His temerity.
<i>Sus acciones,</i>	Her actions.
<i>Sus ramas,</i>	Its branches.
<i>Su silencio,</i>	Their silence.
<i>Sus pasiones,</i>	Their passions.

RULE 55. *Mio* is placed after, in our addresses, that is, when it agrees with the second person ; as

<i>¡ Acuerdate, hijo mio !</i>	Remember, my son !
<i>¡ Venzamos, paisanos mios !</i>	Let us conquer, my countrymen !
<i>¡ Querida patria mia ! solo por ti muero,</i>	My dear country ! for thee alone I die.

RULE 56. When possessives are used as pronouns,* they agree in gender, number, and case, with the noun which they represent, and are preceded by the definite article ; as

<i>Tu casa y la mia,</i>	Thy house and <i>mine</i> .
<i>De mis esfuerzos y los tuyos,</i>	Of my efforts and <i>thine</i> .
<i>Su enemigo y el nuestro,</i>	His enemy and <i>ours</i> .
<i>Para sus enemigos y los nuestros,</i>	For his enemies and <i>ours</i> .
<i>Nuestra bata y la suya,</i>	Our gown and <i>hers</i> .
<i>Sus batas y las nuestras,</i>	Her gowns and <i>ours</i> .
<i>Vuestro ingenio y el suyo,</i>	Your genius and <i>hers</i> .
<i>Vuestras palabras y las suyas,</i>	Your words and <i>his</i> .
<i>Su inocencia y la mia,</i>	Their innocence and <i>mine</i> .
<i>Tus delitos y los suyos,</i>	Thy crimes and <i>theirs</i> .

* That is, when they are equivalent to *mine, thine, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs*.

N. B. Possessives are preceded by the neuter article, when they are indefinitely used ; as, *lo mio no es tuyo*, *ni lo tuyo suyo*, mine is not thine, nor thine his. See Rule 25.

RULE 57. When the possessive pronoun is connected with the noun by a verb, the article is omitted ; as

<i>Este libro es mio,</i>	This book is <i>mine</i> .
<i>Esa carta es tuya,</i>	That letter is <i>thine</i> .
<i>El palacio es suyo,</i>	The palace is <i>his</i> .
<i>La casa era nuestra,</i>	The house was <i>ours</i> .

Note a.—The verb need not be expressed when the assertion is an answer to a foregoing question ; as, ¿ *De quien es esa casa ?* *mia*. ¿ *De quien son estos libros ?* *nuestros*, &c.

RULE 58. When *mine*, *thine*, &c. are preceded by *of*, we omit the preposition and article, and place the possessive after the noun ; as,

A friend <i>of mine</i> ,	<i>Un amigo</i> mio.
A servant <i>of his</i> ,	<i>Un criado</i> suyo.
An author <i>of ours</i> ,	<i>Un autor</i> nuestro.
One <i>of your</i> houses,	<i>Una casa</i> vuestra.
Two servants <i>of mine</i> ,	<i>Dos criados</i> mios.

Observation.

The English possessive adjective, when it agrees with any part of the body, is changed into the Spanish definite article in the following instances : 1st, After all reflective verbs : as, she washed *her* hands, *ella se lavó las manos*, i. e. she to herself washed the hands. 2d, When the part of the body with which the adjective agrees in English is not the subject of a verb ; as, in vain I entreated pardon with tears in *my* eyes, *en vano pedia perdon con las lágrimas en los ojos* ; he gave me *his* hand, *el me dió la mano*. If the part of the body with which the possessive adjective agrees does not belong to the subject of the verb, the individual to whom it belongs must be represented by the corresponding personal pronoun in its first objective case ; as, I washed

her hands, *Yo le lavé las manos*; *i. e.* I washed to her the hands. I threw the bridle on *her* neck, *Echele el freno sobre el pezcuezo*; *i. e.* I threw to her the bridle on the neck. Gil. Blas, ch. 2. 3d. When the part of the body is the subject of the verb *to ache*; as, *my* head aches, *me duele la cabeza*; *i. e.* to me aches the head: *their* teeth ache, *les duelen las muelas*; *i. e.* to them ache the teeth. N.B. The possessive adjective is retained in all cases where the use of the article might occasion ambiguity; as, Dost thou come to take pleasure in the work of *thy* hands? *¿Vienes á complacerte en la obra de tus manos?* Gil Blas, ch. 14. And my mother wished to rear me with *her* own milk, *Y mi madre quiso criarme con su propia leche*; And until I was seven years old they held me always in *their* arms, *Y hasta los siete años me tuvieron siempre en sus brazos*. Ibid. ch. 5. Many of the most distinguished gentlemen in Spain solicited *my* hand, *Muchos caballeros de los mas principales de España solicitaron mi mano*. Ibid. ch. 11.

The possessive adjective is also changed sometimes for the definite article, although it does not agree with any part of the body, if the person to whom the possessive refers is sufficiently denoted in some other part of the sentence; as, Throw down *your* purse quickly on the ground, otherwise I will kill you, *Eche prontamente la bolsa en el suelo, ó si no le mato*. Ibid. ch. 8.

Your is not translated *vuestro* in Spanish, nor *yours*, *el vuestro*, except when we address persons in very exalted stations; as, All *your* power, Sire, will be useless, answered Sifredo's daughter in a faint voice, *Inútil será, Señor, todo vuestro poder, respondió, con desmayada voz, la hija de Sifredo*. Ibid. b. iv. ch. 4.

Instead of *vuestro* we place the definite article, or the possessive adjective, (referring to the third person,) before the noun, and the words *de vm.* or, *de vms.* after it; as, these are *your* books, *estos son los*, or, *sus libros de vm.* Gentlemen, *your* beds are ready, *Señores, las*, or, *sus camas de vms. estan prontas*. Madam, I cannot answer *your* question, *Señora, no puedo responder á la*, or, *á su pregunta de vm.* N.B. The words *de vm.* or

de vms. are frequently left out in asking a question (in familiar discourse) when the noun is preceded by *su* or *sus*; as, How is your father? ¿*Como está su padre de vm.*? or, *Como está su padre*? Are your daughters in the country? ¿*Estan sus hijas de vm.*? or, *Estan sus hijas, en el campo*?

Instead of *el vuestro*, &c. we prefix the article (which the possession would require, were it expressed) before the words *de vm.* or *de vns.*; as, Gentlemen, my coach and yours are at the door, *Señores, mi coche, y el (coche) de vms. están á la puerta.* Madam, I shall sell my house and also yours, *Señora, venderé mi casa, y tambien la (casa) de vm.* Sir, the wind has destroyed our garden and yours, (*i. e.* your gardens,) *Señor, el viento ha destruido nuestro jardin y los (jardines) de vm.*

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

Are,

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Quien,</i>	<i>Quienes.</i>
<i>Qual,</i>	<i>Quales</i>
<i>Que,</i>	<i>Que.</i>
<i>Cuyo,*</i>	<i>Cuyos.</i>

N.B. *Qual* must always be preceded by the definite article; *que* but seldom; and *quien* and *cuyo* never.

RULE 59. *Quien*† relates to persons only, and is always preceded by the preposition *á* when governed by the verb; as

<i>El rey es quien lo manda,</i>	The king, (it) is, <i>who</i> commands it.
<i>El hombre con quien fuimos,</i>	The man <i>with whom</i> we went.
<i>La muger á quien amas,</i>	The woman <i>whom</i> thou lovest.

* The *o* is changed into *a* in the feminine termination.

† The corresponding word to *quien* in English is *who* only.

RULE 60. *Qual* and *que* refer to persons and to things ;* as

El criado que vino, y por The servant *who* came,
el qual mandé la carta, and *by whom* I sent
the letter.

La llave que medió, y con The key *which* he gave
la qual abrí la puerta, me, and *with which*
I opened the door.

RULE 61. *Cuyo* also relates both to persons and things, but agrees with the word by which it is immediately followed ; as

La nacion cuyo rey es The nation *whose* king
sabio, is wise.

La calle cuyas casas The street the *houses of*
son altas, *which* are lofty.

Its equivalents in English are *whose* and *of which*.

N.B. *Cuyo* is a pronoun which partakes of the nature both of a relative and of a possessive pronominal adjective ; as the former it relates to an antecedent, the *possessor*, and like the latter it agrees in gender and number with the *possession*.

RULE 62. *Who*, having its antecedent expressed in English, is generally rendered by *que*, especially if placed close to the antecedent and agreeing with it in case ; as

A king *who* governs well, rewards the
men *who* defend the
country,

*Un rey que gobierna
bien, premia á los
hombres que defien-
den la patria.*

Every thing was en-
dured by Ingunda,
who had retired to
Africa,

*Todo fué sufrido por
Ingunda, quien se
habia retirado á
Africa.*

Note a.—If it be required to repeat *who* in the sentence, it may be translated *que*, or *qual* : as, a king *who* governs well, and *who*

* Their equivalents in English are *who*, *which*, and *that*.

loves his subjects, *un rey que gobierna bien, y que ama á sus vasallos*; the God *who* created us, and *who* punishes sinners, *el Dios que nos crió, y el qual castiga á los pecadores*; the men *who* came, and *who* saw her, *los hombres que vinieron, y que la vieron*; the women *who* went, and *who* will return no more, *las mugeres que fueron, y las quales no volverán mas*.

RULE 63. *Whom* is generally translated *quien*; *
as

The man *whom* we saw, *El hombre á quien vimos.*

The women *whom* I sent, *Las mugeres á quienes envié.*

Note a.—If *whom* be repeated we may use either *quien* or *qual*; as, the man *whom* we saw, and *with whom* we spoke, *el hombre á quien vimos, y con quien hablamos*; the women *whom* we sent, and *with whom* they quarrelled, *las mugeres á quienes enviamos, y con las quales riñeron*.

Note b.—When *whom* is not preceded by a preposition, it may also be translated *que*; as, *el hombre que vimos, las mugeres que envié*.

RULE 64. If the English antecedent be a personal pronoun agreeing in case with the relative, it is generally suppressed, and the definite article prefixed to the relative; as

He *who* spoke to me, *El que me habló.*

She *who* wrote, *La que escribió.*

We *who* are friends, *Los que somos amigos.*

They *who* endeavour, *Los que se empeñan.*

See Demonstratives, Rule 75.

RULE 65. *Yo* and *tú* must always be expressed before the relative; as

Yo que *te amaba*, *I who* loved thee.

Tú que *me aborreces*, *Thou who* dost hate me.

RULE 66. *That* or *which* is translated *que*; as
La hacienda que compramos, The estate *that* we bought.

La espada que tenia, The sword *which* he had.

* See Rule 59.

Note a.—In repetitions we may use *que* or *qual*; as, *la hacienda que compramos*, y *que venderemos*, the estate *which* we bought, and *which* we shall sell; *la espada que tenia*, y con la qual *te hirió*, the sword *which* he had, and *with which* he wounded thee.

RULE 67. *What* is translated *lo que*; * as
When we cannot obtain *Quando no podemos*
what we desire, we ought *lograr lo que de-*
to content ourselves with *seamos, debemos*
what we have. *contentarnos con lo*
que tenemos.

Note a.—*What* repeated is generally *que*, but sometimes *qual* may be introduced; as, lo que *le di es* lo que *tiene*, *what* I gave him is *what* he has; lo que *le dí*, lo qual *le debía*, *es* lo que *tiene*, *what* I gave him, which was *what* I owed him, is *what* he has.

RULE 68. The relative *que* is, generally, placed close to its antecedent, unless the words which intervene form a parenthesis to the sentence; as

La dicha espada cortaba The said sword cut like
como una navaja, y no a razor, and there ne-
habia armadura (por ver was an *armour*
fuerte y encantada que (so hardened or so
fuese) que se le parase powerfully enchant-
delante, ed) *that* could with-
DonQuixote, b. iii. ch. 18. stand its edge.

RULE 69. Relatives must immediately follow the preposition by which they are governed; as

El hombre con quien ha- The man *whom* we
blamos, spoke *with*.
El libro en que leimos, The book *which* we
read *in*.

RULE 70. Relatives must be expressed, although only understood in English; as

The woman I love, *La muger que amo.*
The house we live in, *La casa en que vivimos.*
The pen I write with, *La pluma con que escribo.*

* Except when connected with an adjective by the verb *to be*. See Rule 25.

INTERROGATIVES.

The four relatives, *quien*, *qual*, *que*, and *cuyo*, are also used as interrogatives ; and correspond to the English interrogatives, *who*, *which*, *what*, and *whose*.

RULE 71. Interrogatives do not admit the article ; as

¿ Quien viene ?	<i>Who</i> comes ?
¿ Qual tengo ?	<i>Which</i> have I ?
¿ Qué tenemos ?	<i>What</i> have we ?
¿ Cuyos son los libros ?	<i>Whose</i> are the books ?

Note a.—*Whose* is frequently translated *de quien* ; as, ¿ *de quien son los libros ?* ¿ *de quien era la casa ?*

RULE 72. If the interrogation is governed by a preposition, it must also precede the answer ; as

¿ Con quien vino ?	<i>With whom</i> did he come ?
Con mi padre,	<i>With</i> my father.
¿ Con quien se casa ella ?	<i>Whom</i> doth she marry ?
Con el marques,	The marquis.
¿ En que gasta su dinero ?	<i>In what</i> does he spend his money ?
En nada,	<i>In</i> nothing.
¿ De que murió ?	<i>What</i> did he die of ?
De calentura,	A fever.
¿ De quien es este palacio ?	<i>Whose</i> palace is this ?
Del rey,	The king's.
¿ A como estamos hoy ?	<i>What</i> day of the month is to-day ?
A doce,	The twelfth.

Note a.—Questions asked with *cuyo* or *de quien* require *de* before the answer, unless it be a pronoun possessive ; as, *cuya* or *de quien es esa bolsa ?* *de mi padre*, *whose* purse is that ? *my father's* ; ¿ *cuyas* or *de quien son las llaves ?* *mine*, *whose* are the keys ? *mine*.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The First.

Masculine	Sing. <i>este</i> ,	Plur. <i>estos</i> .
Feminine	<i>esta</i> ,	<i>estas</i> .
Neuter	<i>esto</i> .	

The Second.

Masculine	Sing. <i>ese</i> ,	Plur. <i>esos</i> .
Feminine	<i>esa</i> ,	<i>esas</i>
Neuter	<i>eso</i> .	

The Third.

Masculine	Sing. <i>aquel</i> ,	Plur. <i>aquellos</i> .
Feminine	<i>aquella</i> ,	<i>aquellas</i> .
Neuter	<i>aquello</i> .	

N.B. Demonstratives are never preceded by the articles.

When these demonstratives precede the adjective *otro*, the first and second form with it one word, and lose the final vowel ; as

First.

Masc. from <i>este</i> ,	Sing. <i>estotro</i> ,	Plur. <i>estotros</i> .
Fem. <i>esta</i> ,	<i>estotra</i> ,	<i>estotras</i> .
Neut. <i>esto</i> ,	<i>estotro</i> .	

Second.

Masc. from <i>ese</i> ,	Sing. <i>esotro</i> ,	Plur. <i>esotros</i> .
Fem. <i>esa</i> ,	<i>esotra</i> ,	<i>esotras</i> .
Neut. <i>eso</i> ,	<i>esotro</i> .	

Third.

Masc. from <i>aquel</i> ,	Sing. <i>aquel otro</i> ,	Plur. <i>aquellos otros</i> .
Fem. <i>aquella</i> ,	<i>aquella otra</i> ,	<i>aquellas otras</i> .
Neut. <i>aquello</i> ,	<i>aquello otro</i> .	

Demonstratives have sometimes, like adjectives, the noun (to which their demonstrative property is applied) expressed in the sentence ; and, at other times, they represent, like pronouns, a noun already mentioned : as, *este jardin*, *esos árboles*, *this garden*, *those trees* : and, *mi jardin es mas largo que este*, *my garden is longer than*

this; *tus árboles son mas altos que esos*, thy trees are loftier than *those*. See Observation, p. 42, Part I.

RULE 73. *This* is translated by the first; as
 I shall gain *this* lawsuit, *Ganaré este pleyto.*
 I shall send *these* goods, *Mandaré estos géneros.*
 We shall see *this* play, *Verémos esta comedia.*
These troops will conquer, *Vencerán estas tropas.*
 We shall take *this*, *Tomarémos esto.*

RULE 74. *That* may be rendered by the second or third; as

That letter, *Esa or aquella carta.*
Those papers, *Aquellos or esos papeles.*

Observation.

To point out exactly when the English demonstrative *that* is to be translated *ese*, and when *aquel*, is attended with much difficulty, since even the rules, which are given by the Spanish Academy for the application of the demonstratives, are insufficient. The Academy says that *este* denotes an object nearer to the first than to the second person; *ese*, one exactly the reverse, in point of situation; and *aquel*, an object very distant from both the persons. However clear this explanation of the Spanish Academy may be, yet it does not remove the difficulty; because it is possible to use *este*, *ese*, and *aquel*, with objects which, notwithstanding their relative distances, may differ among themselves, yet not in reference to the first and second persons. For instance, if I wished to tell a person who is close to me, that the house in which we are, the one facing us, and one in St. John's Street, are all three mine; I should say, *Esta casa en que estamos, esa que está enfrente, y aquella que está en la calle de San Juan, son todas tres mías*. Now it is evident that the houses in question are, at the time of my remark, equally distant from the person addressing, and the person addressed. Perhaps their different uses may be more readily found, by considering that, in reference to the speaker, *este* denotes proximity, *ese* moderate distance, and *aquel* remoteness; and therefore we

should employ them with objects, according to the adverb, which would describe in English their local situation; in which view *este* will represent *here*; *ese*, there; and *aquel*, yonder: as, *esta casa en que estamos*, this house (*here*) in which we are; *esa que está enfrente*, that (*there*) opposite; *y aquella en la calle de San Juan*, and that (*yonder*) in St. John's Street, &c.

When these demonstratives relate to time, *este* denotes time present, *ese* time lately past, and *aquel* time still further removed from the present; as, *este hombre que ves*, *ese hombre que has visto hoy*, *y aquel hombre que vimos la semana pasada*, son parientes míos, this man whom you see, that man whom you have seen to-day, and that man whom we saw last week, are relations of mine.

RULE 75. English personal pronouns, followed by a relative not agreeing in case, are generally resolved by the demonstrative in Spanish; as

We ought to reward *Debemos premiar á aquel*
him who labours for *que trabaja por la pa-*
 the country, *tria.*

RULE 76. *That*, used twice in the sentence, is generally translated by *aquel* the second time, if the objects differ in their distance, and by *ese* if they do not; as

That man who is there, *Ese hombre que está ahí,*
 and *that* that is yon- *y aquel que está allí.*
 der,

That man, and *that* *Ese hombre, y esa muger*
 woman who goes with *que va con él.*
 him.

Note a.—The latter is generally translated *este*, and the former, *ese*, in the corresponding gender and number; as, virtue and vice produce different effects, *the former* makes men happy, *the latter* makes them miserable, *la virtud y el vicio producen efectos diferentes*, *esa hace felices á los hombres*, *este los hace desdichados*.

Note b.—When *that* (followed by *of* or *which*, expressed or understood) refers to a noun already mentioned, the English demonstrative is generally rendered by the Spanish article in the corresponding number and gender; as, in his house and in *that* of the earl, *en su casa y en la del conde*; from this book and *that* I bought, *de este*

libro y del que compré ; to this man and to that I saw, á este hombre y al que vi.

Note c.—The expression *that is*, used in the sense of *namely*, is translated *esto es* ; as, He made us alight at an inn, which is at the entrance of the village, *that is*, a little way out of it, *Hizonos apear en un meson que está á la entrada del lugar, esto es, un poco fuera de él.* Gil Blas, ch. 3.

INDEFINITES.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Uno*</i>	<i>unos</i>	_____	<i>entrambos*</i>
<i>alguien</i>	_____	_____	<i>varios*</i>
<i>alguno*</i>	<i>algunos</i>	<i>cada</i>	_____
<i>nadie</i>	_____	<i>tal</i>	<i>tales</i>
<i>ninguno*</i>	<i>ningunos</i>	<i>otro*</i>	<i>otros</i>
<i>mucho*</i>	<i>muchos</i>	<i>quienquiera</i>	_____
<i>algo</i>	_____	<i>qualquiera†</i>	<i>qualesquiera</i>
<i>nada</i>	_____	<i>qualquiera</i>	_____
<i>todo*</i>	<i>todos</i>	<i>cosa</i>	
_____	<i>ambos*</i>		

The use of the Indefinites, as far as they correspond with words of similar import, in English, may be generally ascertained by the following rules :

RULE 77. *One* is rendered by *uno* ; as

One does not know what *No sabe uno que pensar.*
to think,
I have seen the ladies, *He visto á las señoras,*
but *I* spoke with *one* *pero hablé con una*
only, *solamente.*

RULE 78. *Somebody, some one, anybody, any one*, are rendered by *alguien*, or by *alguno* in the singular ; as

Has *anybody* said it ? *¿ Lo ha dicho alguien ?*
Some one may have *Alguno puede haberlo*
said it, *dicho.*

* These, properly belonging to the class of adjectives, form their feminine termination like them. See Rule 18.

† This indefinite is sometimes used without the last letter in both numbers. See Note *a* to Rule 84.

Somebody said it, but I *Alguno lo dixo, pero no*
 know not who, *sé quien.*
 If *anybody* come to seek *Si viene alguien á bus-*
 me, say that I am not *carme, di que no estoy*
 at home, because I *en casa, por que temo*
 fear that *some one* of *que ha de venir á ha-*
 my creditors will come *cerme visita alguno de*
 to pay me a visit, *mis acreedores.*

Note a.—When *anybody* or *any one* means anybody whatever, we translate it the same way as *whoever*. See Rule 84.

Note b.—*Some one* or *any one* being followed by *of*, must never be translated *alguien*, but *alguno*; as, *alguno de ellos*, *some one of them*.

RULE 79. *Nobody, no one, not anybody, or not any one*, is construed *nadie*, or *ninguno* in the singular; as

He fears *nobody*, *A nadie teme.*
 I see *no one*, *A ninguno veo.*

RULE 80. *Something, or anything*, is *algo*; as
 Hast thou *anything* ? *¿ Tienes algo que decirme ?*
 to say to me?

I had *something* to *Tenia algo que contarte.*
 tell thee.

Note a.—They may also be literally translated, especially in their plural; as, *vi algunas cosas que me disgustaron*, I saw *some things* which disgusted me.

RULE 81. *Nothing, or not anything*, is translated *nada*; as

Not anything he said *Nada de lo que dixo la*
 convinced her, *convenció.*
 His entreaties availed *Nada importaron sus*
nothing, *súplicas.*

Note a.—*Algo* and *nada*, when used as substantives, admit a noun after them preceded by *de*; as, *¿ hay algo de nuevo ?* is there any thing new? *su hermano de vm. tiene algo de poeta*, your brother is something of a poet. See Rule 21.

N. B. For *anything* as synonymous with *whatever*, see Rule 85.

RULE 82. *Some*, or *any*, is rendered by *alguno* in both numbers, or by *unos*; as

I want books, have you	<i>Me faltan libros, ¿tiene</i>
<i>any?</i>	<i>vm. algunos?</i>
Do you know <i>any</i> of	<i>¿Conoce vm. á algunas</i>
these ladies?	<i>de estas señoras?</i>
I know <i>some</i> ,	<i>Conozco á unas.</i>

RULE 83. *None*, or *not any*, is translated *ninguno*; examples:

<i>Ninguna de estas señoras</i>	<i>None</i> of these ladies is
<i>es la hija casada,</i>	the married daughter.
<i>A ninguno le ocurrió que</i>	It did <i>not</i> occur to <i>any</i>
<i>podía ser aquello una</i>	that the whole might
<i>ficcion, (Gil Blas, ch.3.)</i>	be a fiction.

RULE 84. *Whoever*, *whosoever*, *whichever*, or *whichsoever*, are translated *quienquiera que*, or *qualquiera que*, in both numbers; as

<i>Whoever</i> thou mayest be,	<i>Quienquiera que seas.</i>
<i>Whoever</i> may come,	<i>Qualquiera que venga.</i>
To <i>whomsoever</i> you meet,	<i>A qualquiera que vm.</i>
	<i>encuentre.</i>

Note a.—*Qualquiera* very frequently loses the last vowel in both numbers, but this never happens unless when it is followed by some noun with which it agrees; as, *qualquier hombre*, *qualquier cosa*, *qualesquier medios*, *qualesquier causas*.

RULE 85. *Whatever*, or *whatsoever*, must be expressed by *qualquier cosa que*; as

<i>Whatever</i> I say,	<i>Qualquier cosa que digo.</i>
<i>Whatsoever</i> thou mayest	<i>Qualquier cosa que veas.</i>
see,	

Note a.—*Whatever* when used in the sense of *all which* is generally expressed by *todo lo que*; as, he did *whatever* they bid him, *hizo todo lo que le mandaron*.

RULE 86. *Another, other, or others*, is rendered by *otro* in both numbers ; as

Send me <i>another</i> ,	<i>Mandame otro.</i>
These books are dear,	<i>Estos libros son caros,</i>
but I have <i>others</i>	<i>pero tengo otros mas</i>
cheaper,	<i>baratos.</i>

Note a.—When their possessive case is very vaguely used, that is, when it is employed as in opposition to *one's own* only, it is then resolved into the Spanish adjective *ageno* ; as, *no codicies los bienes agenos*, do not covet *another's* wealth ; *me exortaron á que no tomase lo ageno contra la voluntad de su dueño*, they exhorted me not to take the property of *another*, against the will of its owner. Gil Blas, ch. 1.

RULE 87. *Each other* is translated *uno otro* ; and *one another, unos otros* ; with or without the article, and with the corresponding preposition placed between them ; as, of each other, *el uno del otro*, or *uno de otro*.

The husband and wife	<i>El marido y la muger se</i>
love <i>each other</i> , but	<i>aman uno á otro, pero</i>
the sons and daugh-	<i>los hijos y las hijas se</i>
ters hate <i>one ano-</i>	<i>aborrecen los unos á</i>
<i>ther</i> ,	<i>los otros.</i>

RULE 88. *Both* is *ambos*, and *several* is *varios* ; as

Have you any opportu-	<i>¿ Tiene vm. ocasiones ?</i>
nities ?	
Yes, I have <i>several</i> ,	<i>Sí, tengo varias.</i>
Neither of them has	<i>Ní el uno ní el otro ha</i>
written, because <i>both</i>	<i>escrito, por que ambos</i>
are ill,	<i>estan malos.</i>

Note a.—*Both* may be also rendered *uno y otro* ; as, *uno y otro me gustan*, I like them *both*.

RULE 89. *Much* is construed *mucho*, and *many*, *muchos* ; as

Hast thou any money ?	<i>¿ Tienes dinero ? No tengo</i>
I have not <i>much</i> ,	<i>mucho.</i>

You think I have no troubles, but I have *Piensa vm. que no tengo*
pesadumbres, pero tengo
many, go muchas.

RULE 90. *Each* when alone is *cada qual*, or *cada uno*; as

I have bought six *He comprado seis libros,*
 books, *each* in a *cada uno en un idioma*
 different language, *diferente.*
 They will be rewarded, *Serán premiados, cada qual*
each according *segun su mérito.*
 to his merit.

RULE 91. *Each*, or *every*, if, when joined to a noun, they are synonymous, is expressed by *cada*; as

The daily bread denotes the bread of *El pan quotidiano quiere*
each day. *decir el pan de cada*
dia.
 He accompanied *every* *Cada pregunta la acom-*
 interrogatory with a *pañaba con una pro-*
 very low bow, *funda reverencia.*

In such examples as these, *cada* may be properly termed a distributive adjective indeclinable.

RULE 92. *Every*, when not denoting the same meaning as *each*, is translated by *todo* in both its genders and numbers; as

Every one lighted his *Encendiéron todos sus ve-*
 candle, and *each* *las, y cada uno se reti-*
 retired to his room, *ró á su quarto.*
 I examined *every one* *Examiné á cada una de*
 (that is *each* lady) *por sí, hasta que las*
 separately, until I *hube examinado á to-*
 had examined every *das.*
one,
 He gave them *every* *Les dió todo lo que tenia.*
thing he had.

RULE 93. *All* is translated *todo* in both its genders and numbers ; as

<i>All</i> that glitters is not gold,	<i>Todo lo que brilla no es oro,</i>
I invited many, but they did not <i>all</i> come,	<i>Convidé á muchos, pero no vinieron todos.</i>
We have received many letters from you, but not <i>all</i> those that you wrote,	<i>Hemos recibido muchas cartas de vm., pero no todas las que vm. escribió.</i>

On the Manner of Addressing, &c. Persons in Spanish.

To the names of individuals in the second or third person is prefixed, as a token of respect, the word *Señor* or *Don*.*—*Señor* has a feminine termination, *Señora*, and gives derivation to two diminutives, *Señorito* and *Señorita*, applicable to young people ; and all the four have a regular plural. See Rule 11.

Don admits the feminine termination *Doña*, but neither of them is used in the plural.

Señor is used only with surnames ; as, *el Señor Castro*, *los Señores Garcias*, *la Señora Dorantes*, *la Señorita Monteros*, &c.

Don can only be prefixed to baptismal names ; as, *Don Antonio*, *Don Francisco de Salas*, *Doña Maria Piña*.

Señor Don is the most respectful title, and *Don* alone holds the next rank ; as, *el Señor Don Eugenio Izquierdo*, *el Señor Don Pedro Cevallos*, *la Señora Doña Catalina Romero*, *la Señorita Doña Isabel*, and *Don Diego Garcia*, *Don Luís Gomez*, *Doña Maria*, *Doña Antonia*, &c.

To persons who are deemed beneath the appellation of *Don* we prefix the word *Señor* to their baptismal name ; as, *Señor Pedro*, *Señora Maria Martinez*.

* These words are only used in the first person by certain individuals in their official documents ; as, *Yo Don Francisco Peres Corregidor que soy*, &c.

Instead of the definite article before the word *Señor*, we substitute sometimes the possessive pronoun; as, *mi Señora Doña Isabel*, &c. but this variation ought to be sanctioned by some intimacy.

In speaking of persons who have a title, the general way is to form from it an adjective in the superlative degree, in the first member of the sentence, and use the title in some subsequent one; as, *El Excelentísimo Señor Don Francisco Palafox pasó ayer por aquí, y Su Excelencia volverá mañana*, *The Most Excellent Lord Don Francis Palafox passed yesterday through here, and His Excellency will return to-morrow*; *El Ilustrísimo Señor Don Alonzo del Valle, Arzobispo de Sevilla, llegó ayer, y todo el clero fué á recibir á Su Ilustrísima*, *The Most Illustrious Lord Don Alonzo del Valle, Archbishop of Seville, arrived yesterday, and all the clergy went to receive His Grace*; *El Santísimo Padre Clemente XIV. escribió varias cartas, que han sido impresas despues de la muerte de Su Santidad*, *The Most Holy Father Clement XIV. wrote several letters, which have been printed since the death of His Holiness*.—If we are unacquainted with the baptismal name, it is common then to say, *El Señor General, El Señor Obispo*, &c.

N. B. *Magestad*, Majesty; *Alteza*, Highness; and *Señoría*, Lordship, are never changed into an adjective.

The use of the second person singular being entirely confined to menial servants, or very intimate friends, recourse is had to the words *usted* and *ustedes*, when persons are addressed; and to *su merced* and *sus mercedes*, when they form the subject of discourse; all which govern the verb in the third person of the number required as, *Señor, usted es muy urbano*, Sir, *you* are very polite; *Señores, ustedes no tienen que temer*, Gentlemen, *you* have nothing to fear; *He visto á las señoras, y sus mercedes me han dado una carta para usted*, I have seen the ladies, and *they* have given me a letter for *you*; *Mi padre no ha podido venir, porque su merced está malo; pero mañana le escribirá á vm. sobre la materia*, My father has not been able to come, because *he* is ill; but will write to *you* to-morrow on the subject. *Usted* (a corruption of *Vuestra merced*) cannot be literally translated; the title

which most resembles it in English is *Your Worship*, and *Su merced* must be construed *His* or *her Worship*. In writing they are abridged thus; usted, *vm.*; ustedese, *vms.*; su merced, *smd.*; sus mercedes, *smds.*

For the peculiar manner in which adjectives are made agree with Titles, see Note *b* to Rule 23.

On the Verbs *Ser* and *Estar*.*

Among the difficulties which Englishmen encounter in the study of the Spanish language, there is, perhaps, none greater than the one attending the proper choice of these verbs. A Spaniard, no doubt, perceives a very striking difference between them; yet he finds it almost impossible to make an Englishman sensible of the distinction, because the English language has but one word to express their different meanings. *Ser* and *estar* equally signify in English *to be*; but *ser* denotes an absolute, and *estar* a relative existence: might I be allowed the definition, I would say that *ser* expresses the kind, and *estar* the manner of being; and therefore we find that *estar* is employed when the existence is connected with, and as it were modified by, some circumstances either of time or of place. If I say, *este hombre es valiente*, this man is valiant; I mean that this man possesses that certain portion of natural courage requisite to form what is meant by a valiant man: but if *estar* be substituted, *este hombre está valiente*, will then mean, that the man is at that time inspired with valour by some existing circumstance. In the same manner, *esta naranja es ágría*, this orange is sour, denotes that the orange belongs to a species of which the acid taste is a characteristic: change the verb into *estar*, and *esta naranja está ágría*, will then convey the idea that the orange might have

* See the author's Synonyms, page 107.

been sweet had it not been gathered too soon, or some other circumstance prevented its reaching the necessary degree of maturity.

From the foregoing remarks may be drawn the following general rule: viz. That when the attribute is inherent in, or essential to, the subject, we express it by *ser*, and when it is only accidental or contingent, we make use of *estar*: thus, if we saw a man with a wooden leg, we should say *este hombre es coxo*, this man is lame; but a man walking with crutches only, might be expressed by *este hombre es*, or *está, coxo*: with *es* we should denote that his lameness was deemed permanent, and with *está* that we considered it as temporary only. This however will be more clearly shown in the following rules.

RULE 94. General truths and the qualities of the mind are expressed with *ser*, and emotions with *estar*; as

<i>La muerte es terrible,</i>	Death is terrible.
<i>Soy humilde,</i>	<i>I am</i> humble.
<i>Eres soberbio,</i>	<i>Thou art</i> proud.
<i>Es infeliz,</i>	<i>He is</i> unhappy.
<i>Estoy enfadado,</i>	<i>I am</i> angry.
<i>Estas triste,</i>	<i>Thou art</i> sorrowful.
<i>Está contento,</i>	<i>He is</i> pleased.

RULE 95. The natural beauties of the body, and its defects when deemed permanent, are denoted by *ser*; as

<i>La muchacha es bonita,</i>	The girl is pretty.
<i>El hijo era feo,</i>	The son <i>was</i> ugly.
<i>La madre es coxa,</i>	The mother is lame.
<i>El padre es ciego,</i>	The father is blind.

RULE 96. The physical changes in the animal body are expressed with *estar*; as

<i>El niño está frio,*</i>	The child is cold (to the touch.)
<i>Yo estaba ciego,</i>	I was blind.
<i>Estuvé coxo la semana pasada,</i>	I was lame last week.

RULE 97. The natural qualities of substances, when taken in a general sense, are expressed by *ser* ; as

<i>El yelo es frio,</i>	Ice is cold.
<i>La miel es dulce,</i>	Honey is sweet.
<i>La leche es blanca,</i>	Milk is white.
<i>El plomo es pesado,</i>	Lead is heavy.

RULE 98. The chemical and mechanical changes in substances are expressed with *estar* ; as

<i>La leche está ágria,</i>	The milk is sour.
<i>El plomo está derretido,</i>	The lead is melted.
<i>El agua está caliente,</i>	The water is warm.
<i>La carne estaba asada,</i>	The meat was roasted.

RULE 99. When *to be* connects two nouns, two pronouns, two infinitives, or one of each, it is translated *ser* ; as

The fear of God is the beginning of wisdom,	<i>El temor de Dios es el principio de la sabiduría.</i>
To forgive injuries is to act like Christians,	<i>Perdonar las injurias es obrar como Cristianos.</i>
Who am I?	<i>¿ Quien soy Yo ?</i>
Remember, man, that thou art dust.	<i>Acuerdate, hombre, que tú eres polvo.</i>

* See observation after Rule 107.

RULE 100. The materials of which bodies are formed are denoted by *ser*; as

<i>El vestido es de paño,</i>	The suit is of cloth.
<i>Las medias eran de seda,</i>	The stockings were of silk.
<i>Los candeleros son de plata,</i>	The candlesticks are of silver.
<i>La mesa es de caoba,</i>	The table is of mahogany.

RULE 101. *To be* forming the passive voice, or used impersonally, is, generally, translated *ser*; as

Man <i>was</i> created,	<i>El hombre fué criado.</i>
Sins <i>will</i> be punished,	<i>Los pecados serán castigados.</i>
Is it not to be wondered at that virtue should be so often despised?	<i>¿No es de maravillarse que la virtud sea tan amenudo despreciada?</i>

RULE 102. Possession or destination is expressed with *ser*; as

<i>La corona es del rey,</i>	The crown is the king's.
<i>El caballo era mio,</i>	The horse <i>was</i> mine.
<i>Este vino es de España,</i>	This wine is from Spain.
<i>Estas ruedas son para un coche,</i>	These wheels are for a coach.
<i>La flor es para ella,</i>	The flower is for her.
<i>La carta era para Escocia,</i>	The letter <i>was</i> for Scotland.
<i>Esta máquina es para copiar cartas,</i>	This machine is to copy letters.

RULE 103. Locality is denoted by *estar* ; as

<i>El estaba en la calle,</i>	He <i>was</i> in the street.
<i>Yo estaré á la puerta,</i>	I <i>shall be</i> at the door.
<i>El desertor estaba entre dos soldados,</i>	The deserter <i>was</i> between two soldiers.
<i>El reo está delante del juez,</i>	The culprit <i>is</i> before the judge.
<i>Tú estabas con tu amigo,</i>	Thou <i>wast</i> with thy friend.

RULE 104. *Estar* is employed always to conjugate a verb in the gerund ; as

<i>Estoy escribiendo,</i>	I <i>am</i> writing.
<i>Ella estaba leyendo,</i>	She <i>was</i> reading.
<i>El estará predicando,</i>	He <i>will be</i> preaching.
<i>Hemos estado arguyendo,</i>	We <i>have been</i> arguing.

RULE 105. Before adverbs or adverbial expressions denoting manner, we generally use *estar* ; as

<i>Está de moda,</i>	He <i>is</i> in the fashion.
<i>Estaba de rodillas,</i>	He <i>was</i> on his knees.
<i>Estoy de prisa,</i>	I <i>am</i> in haste.
<i>Estoy del mismo parecer,</i>	I <i>am</i> of the same opinion.

Note a.—The last of these sentences is often found with *ser* ; but the observation already made on the different meaning of the two verbs is equally applicable in this instance ; and if we examine the expression, we shall find that *ser* denotes my way of thinking in a more general, and *estar* in a more limited point of view ; and that *soy de este parecer*, means, this is the way I have always thought ; and *estoy de este parecer*, this is my present opinion.

RULE 106. *Ser* requires the same case before as after it ; as

<i>Si yo fuera tú,</i>	If <i>I</i> were <i>thou</i> .
<i>Si tú fueras ella,</i>	If <i>thou</i> wert <i>she</i> .

Note a.—The objective case of the neuter pronoun *ello* is fre-

quently used with *ser*, and then it is generally translated *so* ; as, *vm. dice que es viejo, pero ni vm. ni yo lo somos*, you say that you are old, but neither you nor I are *so* ; *vm. piensa que ella es rica, pero no lo es*, you think that she is rich, but she is not *so* ; *crée que estoy enojado, y á la verdad lo estoy*, he thinks that I am angry, and *so* indeed I am. Sometimes it may be omitted ; as, *vm. es rico, pero yo no, or pero yo no lo soy*, you are rich, but I am not, or but I am not *so*.

Note b.—Although the verbs *ser* and *estar*, as has been observed, may be used sometimes with the same adjective ; yet this cannot always be done, therebeing some adjectives which vary their meaning according as they are coupled with *ser* or *estar* ; as, *ser bueno*, to be good ; *estar bueno*, to be well ; *ser malo*, to be wicked ; *estar malo*, to be ill ; *ser cansado*, to be tiresome ; *estar cansado*, to be tired ; *ser vivo*, to be lively ; *estar vivo*, to be alive or living, &c.

Observation

The verb *estar* is often followed by infinitives, which are preceded by the preposition *para* or *por* : with *para* it denotes that the action or energy of the verb, which is in the infinitive, is about to take place ; as, *estaba el brazo para descargar el golpe*, the arm was ready or was about to strike the blow : with *por* it describes the said action, &c. as not having taken place, or expresses an inclination on the part of the agent to execute it ; as, *la casa está por acabar*, the house is to finish, or is not yet finished ; *estoy por ir á verle*, I have a mind to go and see him.

Tener and *Haber*, To have.

Both the above verbs imply possession ; but the employment of the latter is now limited to that of an auxiliary, in order to form the compound tenses of other verbs.

RULE 107. *To have*, used as an active verb, is translated *tener* ; and, as an auxiliary, *haber* ; as

<i>To have</i> friends,	<i>Tener amigos.</i>
<i>I have</i> relations,	<i>Tengo parientes.</i>
<i>To have</i> said,	<i>Haber dicho.</i>
<i>We had</i> spoken,	<i>Habíamos hablado.</i>

Note.—The verb *tener* is sometimes found apparently used as an auxiliary. See Rule 138, *note a*.

Observation.

When in English the verb *to be* precedes the adjectives *hungry, thirsty, afraid, ashamed*, it is changed into the Spanish verb *tener*, and the adjective into a corresponding substantive: as, are you hungry? ¿*tiene vm. hambre?* i. e. have you hunger? we were thirsty, teníamos *sed*, i. e. we had thirst; he was not ashamed, no tuvo *vergüenza*, i. e. he had not shame; art thou afraid? ¿*tienes miedo?* i. e. hast thou fear? The adjective *old* when equivalent to *of age* in English is also changed into a substantive; as, he was eighty years *old* when he died, *tenia ochenta años de edad quando murió*. It may also be omitted in Spanish: as, Hark ye, Gil Blas, you are seventeen years old, ; *Ola! Gil Blas, tienes diez y siete años*. The adjectives *hot* and *cold* admit also the same construction provided they are applied to a sentient being; as, *we shall be hot*, tendríamos *calor*; *he was so cold that he could not move himself*, *tenia tanto frio que no podia moverse*. But if the being be supposed insensible, we use *estar* instead of *tener*; as, *he was so cold (to the touch) that I thought he was dead*, *estaba tan frio que pensé que se habia muerto*.—N. B. See *To be in the right*, and *To be in the wrong*, in Colloquial Idioms, Exercises, p. 107.

RULE 108. When the auxiliaries *to have* and *to be*, followed by an infinitive, denote some future action, the former is translated *tener que*, and the latter *haber de*; as

We had to write,	<i>Teníamos que escribir.</i>
He was to come,	<i>Habia de venir.</i>

Note a.—The verb *haber* when used impersonally requires also *que* before the following infinitive; as, *no hay que temer*, there is nothing to fear.

A VIEW OF THE REGULAR TERMINATIONS.

First Conjugation.

Indicative Mood.			Imperat.		Subjunctive Mood.			Infinitive.	
Present.	Imperf.	Perf.	Future.	Pres. Present.	1.	2.	Imperfect.	Future.	
Sing. 1. o.	aba.	é.	aré.	—	e.	ara.	ase.	aria.	ar.
2. as.	abas.	aste.	arás.	a.	es.	aras.	ases.	arias.	Gerund.
3. a.	aba.	b.	ará.	e.	e.	ara.	ase.	aria.	ando.
Plur. 1. amos.	ábamos.	amos.	arémos.	emos.	emos.	áramos.	ásemos.	ariámos.	Particip.
2. ais.	ábais.	ásteis.	aréis.	ad.	eis.	árais.	áseis.	ariáis.	ado.
3. an.	aban.	áron.	arán.	en.	en.	aran.	asen.	arian.	

Second Conjugation.

Sing. 1. o.	ia.	i.	eré.	—	a.	*iera.	*iese.	eria.	*iere.	Infinitive.
2. es.	ias.	iste.	erás.	e.	as.	*ieras.	*ieses.	erias.	*ieres.	er.
3. e.	ia.	*ib.	erá.	a.	a.	*iera.	*iese.	eria.	*iere.	Gerund.
Plur. 1. emos.	tamos.	imos.	erémos.	amos.	amos.	*iéramos.	*iésemos.	eríamos.	*iéremos.	*iendo.
2. eis.	tais.	isteis.	eréis.	ed.	ais	*iérais.	*iéseis.	eráis.	*iéreis.	Participle.
3. en.	ian.	*iéron.	erán.	an.	an.	*ieran.	*iesen.	erian.	*ieren.	ido.

Third Conjugation.

	Present.	Imperf.	Perf.	Future.	Pres.	Present.	1.	Imperfect.	Future
Sing.	1. II.	II.	II.	<i>iré.</i>	—	II.	II.	2. II.	II. Infinitive.
	2. II.	II.	II.	<i>irás.</i>	II.	II.	II.	II.	II. <i>ir.</i>
	3. II.	II.	II.	<i>irá.</i>	II.	II.	II.	II.	II. Gerund.
Plur.	1. <i>imos.</i>	II.	II.	<i>irémos.</i>	II.	II.	II.	II.	II. II.
	2. <i>is.</i>	II.	II.	<i>iréis.</i>	<i>id.</i>	II.	II.	II.	II. Participle.
	3. II.	II.	II.	<i>irán.</i>	II.	II.	II.	II.	II. II.

N B. The terminations marked thus (*) change the first *i* into *y*, if the last letter of the root be either *a*, *e*, *o*, or *u*; † as, from *caer*, *cayó*; from *creer*, *creyó*; from *oir*, *oyeron*; from *huir*, *huyesen*; and from *argüir*, *arguyó*.

In order to point out the similarity which exists between the Second and Third Conjugations, those terminations which are alike in both have in the latter been omitted.

† Except when the *u* of the root and the *i* of the termination belong to the same syllable; as, *seguir*, *siguió*.

Explanation of the foregoing Table.

In order to understand the use of the annexed view of the terminations, it is necessary to observe, that all those letters which precede the termination of the infinitive, in all verbs, are called the root of the verb, and that these radical letters are invariably preserved in the conjugation of regular verbs through all their tenses and persons ; as, *am-ar*, *am-aron*, *am-arian* ; *vend-er*, *vend-ian*, *vend-erán* ; *sufr-ir*, *sufr-iéren*, *sufr-iésemos*, &c.

Observation.

There are some regular verbs which require a change in their radical letters, in order that the final consonant of their root may retain, in all the tenses, the harsh or soft pronunciation which it has before the infinitive : this alteration cannot occur unless the root of the verb end in *c*, in *g*, in *gu*, and in *qu*, and the changes which then take place are as follow :

Final	before termina- changes into		Conjug.	Examples.
	into	tions begin- ning with		
c	qu	e	I.	<i>buscar, busquemos.</i>
c	z	a or o,	II. III.	<i>vencer, venza, zurcir,</i> <i>zurzo.</i>
g	gu	e	I.	<i>llegar, lleguen.</i>
g	j	a or o,	II. III.	<i>coger, cojan, fingir,</i> <i>finjo.</i>
gu	g	a or o,	III.	<i>seguir, sigo, sigan.</i>
qu	c	a or o,	III.	<i>delinquir, delinco, de-</i> <i>lincamos.</i>

The first column points out how the root of the verb must end to require the alteration ; the second, the letters substituted ; the third, what letters must begin the termination to admit the change ; and the fourth, the conjugations wherein these several deviations are found.

PASSIVE VOICE.

This voice is supplied by adding the past participle of the active verb to the auxiliary *ser*, through all its moods, tenses, and persons, making the said participle agree with the person in gender and number; as, *ella es amada*, she is beloved; *serémos premiados*, we shall be rewarded; *las mugeres han sido alabadas*, the women have been praised.

The passive voice, in English, is very frequently expressed in Spanish, by prefixing the pronoun *se* to the third persons of verbs, in their active voice; as, *se oyó una voz*, a voice was heard; *se han mandado tropas*, troops have been sent, &c. Great attention is requisite not to employ this method with such nouns as would render the verb reflective, in lieu of expressing its passive voice: for example; *Pedro es amado*, means Peter is beloved; but *Pedro se ama*, signifies Peter loves himself; but where no ambiguity can arise, either of the methods may be adopted; as, *la virtud es amada*, or *se ama la virtud*, virtue is beloved. If the agent be mentioned, the latter method can seldom be employed; therefore, Virtue is beloved by the good, should be rendered, *La virtud es amado por los buenos*.

ON IRREGULAR VERBS.

These verbs may be divided into three classes.

First, Irregulars in the root: this class comprises verbs which in some tenses increase, diminish, or exchange, radical letters; as, *ca-er*, to fall; *cayg-o*, I fall; *dec-ir*, to say; *d-irémos*, we shall say; *ped-ir*, to ask; *pid-o*, I ask.

Secondly, Irregulars in the termination. To this class are referred all such verbs as have the letters of their termination either increased, diminished, or exchanged; as, *d-ar*, to give; *d-oy*, I give, &c.

Thirdly, Irregulars in the root and termination. Under this class are comprehended all those verbs, which, in the course of their conjugation, are susceptible of any of the variations above mentioned, both in their radical letters and in those of the termination: as, *tra-er*, to bring; *trax-o*, he brought; *sab-er*, to know; *s-é*, I know; *quer-er*, to be willing; *quer-ré*, I shall be willing; *quis-o*, he was willing; *quis-imos*, we were willing.

N.B. In the following examples of the Irregular verbs, that part of the verb wherein the irregularity occurs, will be printed in italics; as, *aciert-o*, *est-oy*, *v-oy*.

It is to be observed, that when any Irregular verb is used reflectively, it retains its irregularity. The letters *i. p.* being marked after any of the following verbs, denote that it has an irregular participle, which must be looked for in the List which is given after the Irregular Verbs.

FIRST CLASS.

IRREGULARS IN THE ROOT.

1. Verbs of the Second or Third Conjugation whose root ends in *c*, preceded by a vowel, require a *z* before it, when the termination begins with either *a* or *o*; Example:

	Infinitive			Gerund			Participle			to grow.			growing.		
	crec-er,			crec-iendo,			crec-ido,			grown.			grown.		
	3			3			3			Plur. 1			2		
	1			2			3			1			2		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		
	3			3			3			3			3		

II. The following verb requires the letter *i* before the last *e* of the root, when the accent falls not on the termination. (See page 25.) Example :

Infinitive neg-ar, *to deny.*
 Gerund neg-ando, *denying.*
 Participle neg-ado, *denied.*

	Sing. 1	2	3	Plur. 1	2	3
Indicative						
<i>Præsent</i>	<i>neg-o</i>	<i>neg-as</i>	<i>neg-a</i> ;	<i>negamos</i>	<i>negais</i>	<i>neg-au.</i>
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>negaba</i>	<i>negabas</i>	<i>negaba</i> ;	<i>negábamos</i>	<i>negábais</i>	<i>negaban.</i>
<i>Preterite</i>	<i>negué</i>	<i>negaste</i>	<i>negó</i> ;	<i>negamos</i>	<i>negásteis</i>	<i>negáron.</i>
<i>Future</i>	<i>negaré</i>	<i>negarás</i>	<i>negará</i> ;	<i>negaremos</i>	<i>negaréis</i>	<i>negarán.</i>
Imperative	—	<i>neg-a</i>	<i>negu-e</i> ;	<i>neguemos</i>	<i>negad</i>	<i>negu-en.</i>
Subjunctive						
<i>Present</i>	<i>negu-e</i>	<i>negu-es</i>	<i>negu-e</i> ,	<i>neguemos</i>	<i>negueis</i>	<i>negu-en.</i>
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>negara</i>	<i>negaras</i>	<i>negara</i> ;	<i>negáramos</i>	<i>negárais</i>	<i>negaran.</i>
	<i>negase</i>	<i>negases</i>	<i>negase</i> ;	<i>negásemos</i>	<i>negáseis</i>	<i>negasen.</i>
<i>Future</i>	<i>negaria</i>	<i>negarias</i>	<i>negaria</i> ;	<i>negáramos</i>	<i>negaríais</i>	<i>negarian.</i>
	<i>negare</i>	<i>negares</i>	<i>negare</i> ;	<i>negáremos</i>	<i>negaréis</i>	<i>negaren.</i>

N. B. The *u* introduced here before some of the terminations constitutes no irregularity in the verb. The Observation given at page 144 will account for its introduction.

III. Verbs of the Third Conjugation whose root ends in a *u*, which is the end of a syllable, require a *y* before terminations beginning with either *a*, *e*, or *o*. Example :

Infinitive conclu-ir, *to conclude.*

Gerund conclu-yendo, *concluding.*

Participle conclu-ido, *concluded.*

	Sing. 1	2	3	Plur. 1	2	3
Indicative Present	<i>conchuy-o</i>	<i>conchuy-es</i>	<i>conchuy-e</i> ;	concluimos	concluis	<i>conchuy-en.</i>
Imperfect	concluía	concluías	concluía;	concluíamos	concluís	concluían.
Preterite	concluí	concluiste	concluyó;	concluimos	concluisteis	concluyéron.
Future	concluiré	concluirás	concluirá;	concluirémos	concluiréis	concluirán.
Imperative	—	conchuy-e	conchuy-a;	conchuy-amos	concluid	<i>conchuy-an.</i>

Subjunctive Present *conchuy-a* *conchuy-as* *conchuy-a*; *conchuy-amos* *conchuy-ais* *conchuy-an.*
Imperfect { *concluyera* *concluyeras* *concluy-e*; *concluyéramos* *concluyérais* *concluyeran.*
concluyese *concluyeses* *concluyese*; *concluyésemos* *concluyéseis* *concluyesen.*
concluyera *concluyeras* *concluy-a*; *concluyéramos* *concluyérais* *concluyeran.*
Future *concluyere* *concluyeres* *concluyere*; *concluyéremos* *concluyéreis* *concluyeren.*

N. B. The irregularity of these verbs does not consist in their having the first *i* of their terminations changed sometimes into a *y*; * as, *conclu-yéron*, *conclu-yeses*; but in the additional *y* which is introduced before terminations beginning with *a*, *e*, or *o*; as, *conchuy-o*, *conchuy-amos*.

* See N. B. page 143.

IV. *Jugar* takes an *e* before the *g* when the accent falls not on the termination. (See page 25.) Example :

	Infinitive jug-ar, to play.		
	Gerund jug-ando, playing.		
	Participle jug-ado, played.		
	Sing. 1 2 3 Plur. 1 2 3		
Indicative	<i>Present</i> <i>jueg-o</i>	<i>jueg-as</i>	<i>jueg-a</i> ;
	<i>Imperfect</i> jugaba	jugabas	jugaba,
	<i>Preterite</i> jugué	jugaste	jugó;
	<i>Future</i> jugaré	jugarás	jugará;
Imperative	—	<i>jueg-a</i>	<i>juegu-e</i> ;
Subjunctive	<i>Present</i> <i>juegu-e</i>	<i>juegu-es</i>	<i>juegu-e</i> ;
	<i>Imperfect</i> { jugara	jugaras	jugara;
	jugase	jugases	jugase;
	<i>Future</i> { jugaria	jugarias	jugaria;
	jugare	jugares	jugare;
			jugaréis
			jugarán.
			<i>juegu-en.</i>
			<i>juegu-en.</i>
			jugaran.
			jugasen.
			jugarian.
			jugaren.

N. B. The second *u* is introduced for the reasons already given after the verb *negar*.

VI. *Asir** requires a *g* after the *s*, before terminations beginning with *a* or *o*; as

		Infinitive					
		as-ir,		<i>to seize.</i>			
		as-iendo,		<i>seizing.</i>			
		as-ido,		<i>seized.</i>			
		Participle					
Indicative	Present	Sing. 1	2	3	Plur. 1	2	3
	Imperfect	<i>asg-o</i>	ases	ase;	asimos	asis	asen.
	Preterite	asia	asias	asia;	asíamos	asíais	asian.
	Future	así	asiste	asíó;	asimos	asísteis	asíeron.
Imperative		asire	asirás	asirá;	asirémos	asiréis	asirán.
		—	ase	<i>asg-a</i> ;	<i>asg-amos</i>	asid	<i>asg-an.</i>
	Subjunctive Present	<i>asg-a</i>	<i>asg-as</i>	<i>asg-a</i> ;	<i>asg-amos</i>	<i>asg-ais</i>	<i>asg-an.</i>
	Imperfect	{ asiera asiese asiria	asieras asieses asirias	asiera; asiese; asiria;	asieramos asiesemos asiríamos	asieraís asieseís asiriaís	asieran. asiesen. asirian.
Future		asiero	asieres	asiere;	asierémos	asieraís	asieren.
						asieraís	

* See *Agarrer* and *Asir*, Synonyms, Exercises, page 114.

VIII. *Oir* and its compound require sometimes *yg*, and at other times *y* alone, after the *o* of the root ; as

		Infinitive		Gerund		Participle							
		o-ir,		o-yendo,		o-ido,							
		<i>to hear.</i>		<i>hearing.</i>		<i>heard.</i>							
Indicative	Present	Sing. 1		2		3		Plur. 1		2		3	
	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>oyg-o</i>		<i>oy-es</i>		<i>oy-e ;</i>		<i>oimos</i>		<i>ois</i>		<i>oy-en.</i>	
	<i>Preterite</i>	<i>oia</i>		<i>oias</i>		<i>oia ;</i>		<i>oíamos</i>		<i>oíais</i>		<i>oían.</i>	
	<i>Future</i>	<i>oí</i>		<i>oiste</i>		<i>oyó ;</i>		<i>oimos</i>		<i>oísteis</i>		<i>oyéron.</i>	
Imperative		<i>oiré</i>		<i>oirás</i>		<i>oirá ;</i>		<i>oirémos</i>		<i>oiréis</i>		<i>oirán.</i>	
		—		<i>oy-e</i>		<i>oyg-a ;</i>		<i>oyg-amos</i>		<i>oid</i>		<i>oyg-an.</i>	
Subjunctive	Present	<i>oyg-a</i>		<i>oyg-as</i>		<i>oyg-a ;</i>		<i>oyg-amos</i>		<i>oyg-ais</i>		<i>oyg-an.</i>	
	<i>Imperfect</i>	{ <i>oyera</i>		{ <i>oyeses</i>		{ <i>oyera ;</i>		{ <i>oyéramos</i>		{ <i>oyérais</i>		{ <i>oyeran.</i>	
	<i>Future</i>	{ <i>oyese</i>		{ <i>oyeras</i>		{ <i>oyese ;</i>		{ <i>oyésemos</i>		{ <i>oyéseis</i>		{ <i>oyesen.</i>	
		{ <i>oiria</i>		{ <i>oyeres</i>		{ <i>oiria ;</i>		{ <i>oiríamos</i>		{ <i>oiríais</i>		{ <i>oirían.</i>	
		{ <i>oyere</i>		{ <i>oyeres</i>		{ <i>oyere ;</i>		{ <i>oyéremos</i>		{ <i>oyéreis</i>		{ <i>oyeren.</i>	

Its compound is *entreoir*, to hear indistinctly.

X. This verb changes into *i* the last *e* of its root in the tenses and persons noticed in the annexed example.

	Infinitive			to conceive.				
	Gerund			conceiving.				
	Participle			conceived.				
	Sing.	1	2	3	Plur.	1	2	3
Indicative Present	<i>conceb-o</i>		<i>conceb-es</i>	<i>conceb-e</i> ;	<i>concebimos</i>		<i>conceb-is</i>	<i>conceb-en.</i>
Imperfect	<i>conceb-ia</i>		<i>conceb-ias</i>	<i>conceb-ia</i> ,	<i>concebíamos</i>		<i>conceb-iais</i>	<i>conceb-ian.</i>
Preterite	<i>conceb-i</i>		<i>conceb-iste</i>	<i>conceb-ió</i> ;	<i>concebimos</i>		<i>conceb-isteis</i>	<i>conceb-iéron.</i>
Future	<i>conceb-iré</i>		<i>conceb-irás</i>	<i>conceb-irá</i> ;	<i>concebiremos</i>		<i>conceb-iréis</i>	<i>conceb-irán.</i>
Imperative	—			<i>conceb-e</i>	<i>conceb-a</i> ;	<i>conceb-amos</i>	<i>conceb-id</i>	<i>conceb-an.</i>
Subjunctive Present	<i>conceb-a</i>	<i>conceb-as</i>	<i>conceb-a</i> ;	<i>conceb-amos</i>	<i>conceb-ais</i>	<i>conceb-an.</i>		
Imperfect	<i>conceb-iera</i>	<i>conceb-ieras</i>	<i>conceb-iera</i> ;	<i>conceb-iéramos</i>	<i>conceb-iérais</i>	<i>conceb-ieran.</i>		
	<i>conceb-iese</i>	<i>conceb-ieses</i>	<i>conceb-iese</i> ;	<i>conceb-iésemos</i>	<i>conceb-iéseis</i>	<i>conceb-iesen.</i>		
Future	<i>conceb-iria</i>	<i>conceb-irias</i>	<i>conceb-iria</i> ;	<i>conceb-iríamos</i>	<i>conceb-iríais</i>	<i>conceb-irian.</i>		
	<i>conceb-iere</i>	<i>conceb-ieres</i>	<i>conceb-iere</i> ;	<i>conceb-iéremos</i>	<i>conceb-iéreis</i>	<i>conceb-ieren.</i>		

XI. This verb has the *e* of its root changed into an *i* in some tenses, and in others it requires an *i* before the said radical *e*; as

		Infinitive		Gerund		Participle			
		her-ir,		<i>hir-iendo</i> ,		her-ido,			
		<i>to wound.</i>		<i>wounding.</i>		<i>wounded.</i>			
Indicative	Present <i>Imperfect</i> <i>Preterite</i> <i>Future</i>	Sing. 1		2		3		Plur. 1	
		<i>hier-o</i>		<i>hier-es</i>		<i>hier-e</i> ;		herimos	
		heria		herias		heria;		heriamos	
		herí		heriste		<i>hir-ió</i> ;		herimos	
		heriré		herirás		herirá;		heriremos	
Imperative		—		<i>hier-e</i>		<i>hier-a</i> ;		<i>hir-amos</i>	
								<i>herid</i>	
Subjunctive	Present <i>Imperfect</i> <i>Future</i>	<i>hier-a</i>		<i>hier-as</i>		<i>hier-a</i> ;		<i>hir-amos</i>	
		{ <i>hir-iera</i>		<i>hir-ieras</i>		<i>hir-iera</i> ;		<i>hir-iéramos</i>	
		{ <i>hir-iese</i>		<i>hir-ieses</i>		<i>hir-iese</i> ;		<i>hir-iésemos</i>	
		{ heriria		heririas		heriria;		heriríamos	
		{ <i>hir-iere</i>		<i>hir-ieres</i>		<i>hir-iere</i> ;		<i>hir-iéremos</i>	
		</							

XII. The following verbs, *dormir*, to sleep, and *morir* i. p. *to die*, change the *o* of their root sometimes into *u*, and at others into *ue* ; as

Infinitive *dorm-ir*, *to sleep*.
Gerund *durm-iendo*, *sleeping*.
Participle *dorm-ido*, *sleept*.

	Sing. 1	2	3	Plur. 1	2	3
Indicative Present	<i>durm-o</i>	<i>durm-es</i>	<i>durm-e</i> ;	<i>dormi-mo</i>	<i>dormis</i>	<i>durm-en</i> .
Imperfect	<i>dormia</i>	<i>dormias</i>	<i>dormia</i> ;	<i>dormía-mos</i>	<i>dormíais</i>	<i>dormían</i> .
Preterite	<i>dormí</i>	<i>dormiste</i>	<i>durm-ió</i> ;	<i>dormimos</i>	<i>dormísteis</i>	<i>durm-iéron</i> .
Future	<i>dormiré</i>	<i>dormirás</i>	<i>dormirá</i> ;	<i>dormiré-mos</i>	<i>dormiréis</i>	<i>dormirán</i> .
Imperative	—	<i>durm-e</i>	<i>durm-a</i> ;	<i>durm-amos</i>	<i>dormid</i>	<i>durm-an</i> .
Subjunctive Present	<i>durm-a</i>	<i>durm-as</i>	<i>durm-a</i> ;	<i>durm-amos</i>	<i>durm-ais</i>	<i>durm-an</i> .
Imperfect	<i>durm-iera</i>	<i>durm-ieras</i>	<i>durm-iera</i> ;	<i>durm-iéramos</i>	<i>durm-iérais</i>	<i>durm-ieran</i> .
	<i>durm-iese</i>	<i>durm-ieses</i>	<i>durm-iese</i> ;	<i>durm-iésemos</i>	<i>durm-iéseis</i>	<i>durm-iesen</i> .
Future	<i>dormiria</i>	<i>dormirias</i>	<i>dormiria</i> ;	<i>dormiríamos</i>	<i>dormiríais</i>	<i>dormirían</i> .
	<i>durm-iere</i>	<i>durm-ieres</i>	<i>durm-iere</i> ;	<i>durm-iéremos</i>	<i>durm-iéreis</i>	<i>durm-ieren</i> .

SECOND CLASS.

IRREGULAR IN THE TERMINATION.

XIII. The following verb is irregular because it takes a *y* after the first person of the indicative, and also forms some of its tenses with the terminations belonging to the second conjugation; as

Infinitive	d-ar,	to give.
------------	-------	----------

	Sing.	1	2	3	Plur.	1	2	3
Indicative	<i>Present</i>	d-o-y	das	da ;	damos	dais	dan.	
	<i>Imperfect</i>	daba	dabas	daba ;	dábamos	dábais	daban.	
	<i>Preterite</i>	d-i	d-i-ste	d-i-b ;	d-i-mos	d-i-steis	d-iéron.	
	<i>Future</i>	daré	darás	dará ;	darémos	daréis	darán.	
Imperative		—	da	de ;	demos	dad	den.	
Subjunctive	<i>Present</i>	de	des	de ;	demos	deis	den.	
	<i>Imperfect</i>	d-i-er-a	d-i-er-as	d-i-er-a ;	d-i-é-r-a-mos	d-i-é-r-a-is	d-i-er-an.	
		d-i-er-e	d-i-er-es	d-i-er-e ;	d-i-é-s-e-mos	d-i-é-s-e-is	d-i-er-en.	
		daria	darias	daria ;	daríamos	daríais	darian.	
	<i>Future</i>	d-i-er-e	d-i-er-es	d-i-er-e ;	d-i-é-r-e-mos	d-i-é-r-e-is	d-i-er-en.	

Observation.

Under this class may also be comprehended such verbs as change the first *i* of the termination (when-
ever it is followed by *e* or *o*) into a *y*, provided that the last letter of the root be likewise the end of a
syllable; as, *argü-ir*, *argu-yó*, *cre-er*, *cre-yesen*, &c. See View of the Regular Terminations, p. 142.

XVI. *Hacer* and its compounds have the following tenses irregular.

	Sing.			Plur.			
Infinitive	hacer,	haces	hace;	hacemos	haceis	hacen.	
Gerund	haciendo,	hacías	hacia;	haciámos	hacíais	hacían.	
Participle	hecho,	hic-iste	hiz-o;	hic-imos	hic-ísteis	hic-ieron.	
		ha-rás	ha-rá;	ha-rémos	ha-réis	ha-rán.	
Imperative	—	haz	hag-a;	hag-amos	haced	hag-an.	

Subjunctive Present	hag-a	hag-as	hag-a;	hag-amos	hag-ais	hag-an.
Imperfect	{	hic-iera	hic-iera;	hic-iéramos	hic-iérais	hic-ieran.
		hic-iese	hic-iese;	hic-iésemos	hic-iéseis	hic-iesen.
Future	{	ha-ria	ha-ria;	ha-ríamos	ha-ríais	ha-rían.
		hic-iere	hic-iere;	hic-iéremos	hic-iéreis	hic-ieren.

The compounds of *hacer* are *contrahacer*, i. p. to counterfeit. | *rehacer*, i. p. to do over again.
deshacer, i. p. to undo. | *satisfacer*,* i. p. to satisfy.

* The second person singular of the imperative may be expressed irregularly, as *satisfaz*, or regularly, as *satisface*.

XVII. *Poder* changes the *o* sometimes into *u*, and at others into *ue*, and also omits in some tenses the *e* of the termination, as may be seen by the annexed example.

		Infinitive		Gerund		Participle			
		pod-er,		<i>to be able.</i>		<i>being able.</i>			
		<i>pud-iendo,</i>		<i>being able.</i>		<i>been able.</i>			
		pod-ido,							
Indicative	Present	Sing. 1	2	3	Plur. 1	2	3		
	Imperfect	<i>pued-o</i>	<i>pued-es</i>	<i>pued-e;</i>	<i>podemos</i>	<i>podeis</i>	<i>pued-en.</i>		
	Preterite	<i>podia</i>	<i>podias</i>	<i>podia;</i>	<i>podíamos</i>	<i>podíais</i>	<i>podían.</i>		
	Future	<i>pud-e</i>	<i>pud-iste</i>	<i>pud-o;</i>	<i>pud-imos</i>	<i>pud-isteis</i>	<i>pud-iéron.</i>		
Imperative		<i>pod-ré</i>	<i>pod-rás</i>	<i>pod-rá;</i>	<i>pod-rémos</i>	<i>pod-réis</i>	<i>pod-rán.</i>		
Subjunctive	Present	<i>pued-a</i>	<i>pued-as</i>	<i>pued-a ;</i>	<i>podamos</i>	<i>podais</i>	<i>pued-an.</i>		
	Imperfect	<i>pud-iera</i>	<i>pud-ieras</i>	<i>pud-iera ;</i>	<i>pud-iéramos</i>	<i>pud-iérais</i>	<i>pud-ieran.</i>		
		<i>pud-iese</i>	<i>pud-ieses</i>	<i>pud-iese ;</i>	<i>pud-iésemos</i>	<i>pud-iéseis</i>	<i>pud-iesen.</i>		
	Future	<i>pod-ria</i>	<i>pod-rias</i>	<i>pod-ria ;</i>	<i>pod-ríamos</i>	<i>pod-ríais</i>	<i>pod-rían.</i>		
Imperative		<i>pud-iere</i>	<i>pud-ieres</i>	<i>pud-iere ;</i>	<i>pud-iéremos</i>	<i>pud-iéreis</i>	<i>pud-ieren.</i>		

XVIII. *Caber* is irregular in the following tenses and persons.

Infinitive	cab-er,	<i>to be capable of being contained.</i>			
Gerund	cab-iendo,	<i>being capable of being contained.</i>			
Participle	cab-ido,	<i>been capable of being contained.</i>			
Sing. 1.	2	3	Plur. 1	2	3
Indicative					
Present	quep-o	cabe	cabemos	cabeis	caben.
Imperfect	cabia	cabia	cabíamos	cabíais	cabían.
Preterite	cup-e	cup-iste	cup-imos	cup-ísteis	cup-ieron.
Future	cab-ré	cab-rás	cab-rá	cab-réis	cab-rán.
Imperative	---	cabe	quep-a;	quep-amos	cabed
Subjunctive	quep-a	quep-as	quep-a;	quep-amos	quep-ais
	cup-iera	cup-ieras	cup-iera;	cup-iéramos	cup-iérais
Imperfect	cup-iese	cup-ieses	cup-iese;	cup-iésemos	cup-iéseis
	cab-ria	cab-rias	cab-ria;	cab-ríamos	cab-ríais
Future	cup-iere	cup-ieres	cup-iere;	cup-iéremos	cup-iéreis
					cup-ieren.

N. B. This verb cannot be used in the imperative according to the meaning given above ; but as it sometimes signifies simply *to be contained*, as well as *to fall to a person's lot*, the insertion of the imperative has been thought necessary.

Observation.—When the verb *to contain*, or *to hold*, &c. is translated with the foregoing verb, the objective case in English becomes the subject in Spanish : therefore such expressions as these ; *that sack holds four bushels* ; *the church contained a hundred persons*, &c. must be thus altered ; four bushels may be contained in that sack, *quatro fanegas caben en ese saco* ; a hundred persons might be contained in the church, *cien personas cabían en la iglesia*.

XIX. *Poner* and its compounds are irregular in the following tenses and persons.

Infinitive	pon-er,	<i>to place.</i>			
Gerund	pon-iendo,	<i>placing.</i>			
Participle	puést-o,	<i>placed.</i>			
	2	3	Plur. 1	2	
Indicative	Present	pones	ponemos	ponéis	ponen.
	Imperfect	ponia	ponías	poníais	ponían.
	Preterite	pus-e	pus-iste	pus-ísteis	pus-iéron.
	Future	pon-dré	pon-drás	pon-drá;	pon-dréis
		—	pon—	pong-a;	pong-an.
Imperative					
Subjunctive	Present	pong-a	pong-as	pong-a;	pong-an.
	Imperfect	pus-iera	pus-ieras	pus-iera;	pus-ieran.
		pus-iese	pus-ieses	pus-iese;	pus-iesen.
	Future	pon-dria	pon-drias	pon-dria;	pon-drian.
		pus-iere	pus-ieres	pus-iere;	pus-ieren.
	The compounds of <i>poner</i> are				
<i>Anteponer</i> i. p.	to prefer	<i>exponer</i> i. p.	to expose	<i>proponer</i> i. p.	to propose
	to compose	<i>imponer</i> i. p.	to impose	<i>reponer</i> i. p.	to replace
	to depose	<i>oponer</i> i. p.	to oppose	<i>sobreponer</i> i. p.	to place over
	to decompose	<i>preponer</i> i. p.	to prepose	<i>suponer</i> i. p.	to suppose
	to dispose	<i>presuponer</i> i. p.	to presuppose	<i>trasponer</i> i. p.	to transpose.

XX. *Querer* is irregular in the following tenses and persons.

		Infinitive <i>quar-er,</i> <i>to be willing.</i> Gerund <i>quer-iendo,</i> <i>being willing.</i> Participle <i>quer-ido,</i> <i>been willing.</i>					
		Sing.			Plur.		
Indicative	Present	1	2	3	1	2	3
	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>quier-o</i>	<i>quier-es</i>	<i>quier-e;</i>	<i>queremos</i>	<i>quereis</i>	<i>quier-en.</i>
	<i>Preterite</i>	<i>queria</i>	<i>querias</i>	<i>queria;</i>	<i>queríamos</i>	<i>queríais</i>	<i>querían.</i>
	<i>Future</i>	<i>quis-e</i>	<i>quis-iste</i>	<i>quis-o;</i>	<i>quis-imos</i>	<i>quis-ísteis</i>	<i>quis-ieron.</i>
Imperative		<i>quer-ré</i>	<i>quer-rás</i>	<i>quer-rá;</i>	<i>quer-rémos</i>	<i>quer-réis</i>	<i>quer-rán.</i>
		—	<i>quier-e</i>	<i>quier-a;</i>	<i>queramos</i>	<i>quered</i>	<i>quier-an.</i>
Subjunctive	Present	<i>quier-a</i>	<i>quier-as</i>	<i>quier-a;</i>	<i>queramos</i>	<i>querais</i>	<i>quier-an.</i>
	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>quis-iera</i>	<i>quis-ieras</i>	<i>quis-iera;</i>	<i>quis-iéramos</i>	<i>quis-iérais</i>	<i>quis-ieran.</i>
	<i>Future</i>	<i>quis-iese</i>	<i>quis-ieses</i>	<i>quis-iese;</i>	<i>quis-iésemos</i>	<i>quis-iéseis</i>	<i>quis-iesen.</i>
		<i>quer-ria</i>	<i>quer-rias</i>	<i>quer-ria;</i>	<i>quer-ríamos</i>	<i>quer-ríais</i>	<i>quer-rian.</i>
		<i>quis-iere</i>	<i>quis-ieres</i>	<i>quis-iere;</i>	<i>quis-iéremos</i>	<i>quis-iéreis</i>	<i>quis-ieren.</i>

XXI. *Saber has the following irregularities.**

[illegible]

* See Colloquial Idioms, Exercises, page 112.

XXII. *Traer* and its compounds have the annexed irregularities

		Infinitive		Gerund		Participle			
		tra-er,		tra-yendo,		tra-ido,			
		<i>to bring.</i>		<i>bringing.</i>		<i>brought.</i>			
Indicative	Present	Sing. 1	2	3	Plur. 1	2	3		
	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>traigo-o</i>	traes	trae;	traemos	traéis	traen.		
	<i>Preterite</i>	traía	traías	traía;	traíamos	traíais	traían.		
	<i>Future</i>	<i>traer-e</i>	<i>traer-iste</i>	<i>traer-o</i> ;	<i>traer-imos</i>	<i>traer-ísteis</i>	<i>traer-éron.</i>		
Imperative			traerás	traerá;	traerémos	traeréis	traerán.		
		—	trae	trae	trae	trae	trae		
			trae	trae	trae	trae	trae		
			trae	trae	trae	trae	trae		

Subjunctive	Present	<i>traiga-a</i>	<i>traiga-a</i>	<i>traiga-a</i>	<i>traiga-a</i>	<i>traiga-a</i>	<i>traiga-a</i>		
	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>traiga-er-a</i>	<i>traiga-er-a</i>	<i>traiga-er-a</i>	<i>traiga-er-a</i>	<i>traiga-er-a</i>	<i>traiga-er-a</i>		
	<i>Future</i>	<i>traiga-ere</i>	<i>traiga-ere</i>	<i>traiga-ere</i>	<i>traiga-ere</i>	<i>traiga-ere</i>	<i>traiga-ere</i>		
		<i>traiga-ere</i>	<i>traiga-ere</i>	<i>traiga-ere</i>	<i>traiga-ere</i>	<i>traiga-ere</i>	<i>traiga-ere</i>		

The compounds of *traer* are

<i>Abstract</i>	to abstract	<i>detraer</i>	to detract	<i>retraer</i>	to retract
	to attract	<i>distracer</i>	to distract	<i>retrotraer*</i>	to bring back
	to contract	<i>extraer</i>	to extract	<i>subtraer</i>	to subtract.

* In allusion to past events detailed as if they were actually happening, in order to describe them in a more impressive manner.

XXIV. Verbs of the third conjugation which have *duc* for the last three letters of their root, are subject to the irregularities exhibited in the annexed example.

	Infinitive	Gerund	Participle	Sing. 1	2	3	Plur. 1	2	3
	traduc-ir,	traduc-iendo,	traduc-ido,				<i>to translate.</i>		
							<i>translating.</i>		
							<i>translated.</i>		
Indicative	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Preterite</i>	<i>Future</i>					
	<i>traduc-o</i>	<i>traducias</i>	<i>traduc-iste</i>	<i>traducirás</i>					
	<i>traduc-e</i>	<i>traduc-eras</i>	<i>traduc-eras</i>	<i>traduc-eres</i>					
	<i>traduc-ia</i>	<i>traduc-ias</i>	<i>traduc-ies</i>	<i>traduc-ieris</i>					
	<i>traduc-iré</i>	<i>traduc-irás</i>	<i>traduc-iréis</i>	<i>traduc-irán</i>					
Imperative	—	—	—	—					
Subjunctive	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>						
	<i>traduc-a</i>	<i>traduc-as</i>	<i>traduc-eras</i>	<i>traduc-eres</i>					
	<i>traduc-ia</i>	<i>traduc-ias</i>	<i>traduc-ies</i>	<i>traduc-ieris</i>					
	<i>traduc-iré</i>	<i>traduc-irás</i>	<i>traduc-iréis</i>	<i>traduc-irán</i>					

XXV. *Ha*ber has the following tenses irregular:

	Sing.			Plur.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Indicative						
Present	<i>he</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>ha</i> ;	<i>h-emos</i> *	<i>habeis</i>	<i>han.</i>
Imperfect	<i>habia</i>	<i>habias</i>	<i>habia</i> ;	<i>habíamos</i>	<i>habíais</i>	<i>habían.</i>
Preterite	<i>hub-e</i>	<i>hub-iste</i>	<i>hub-o</i> ;	<i>hub-imos</i>	<i>hub-ísteis</i>	<i>hub-iéron.</i>
Future	<i>hab-ré</i>	<i>hab-rás</i>	<i>hab-rá</i> ;	<i>hab-rémos</i>	<i>hab-réis</i>	<i>hab-rán.</i>
Imperative						
Subjunctive						
Present	<i>hay-a</i>	<i>hay-as</i>	<i>hay-a</i> ;	<i>hay-amos</i>	<i>hay-ais</i>	<i>hay-an.</i>
Imperfect	<i>hub-iera</i>	<i>hub-ieras</i>	<i>hub-iera</i> ;	<i>hub-iéramos</i>	<i>hub-iérais</i>	<i>hub-ieran.</i>
	<i>hub-iese</i>	<i>hub-ieses</i>	<i>hub-iese</i> ;	<i>hub-iésemos</i>	<i>hub-iéseis</i>	<i>hub-iesen.</i>
Future	<i>hab-ria</i>	<i>hab-rias</i>	<i>hab-ria</i> ;	<i>hab-ríamos</i>	<i>hab-ríais</i>	<i>hab-rían.</i>
	<i>hub-iere</i>	<i>hub-ieres</i>	<i>hub-iere</i> ;	<i>hub-iéremos</i>	<i>hub-iéreis</i>	<i>hub-ieren.</i>

* This person is also regularly formed; as, *hab-emos*, but such a formation is now obsolete.

XXVI. *Tener* and its compounds have the following irregularities.

		Infinitive					
		ten-er, to have.					
		ten-iendo, having.					
		ten-ido, had.					
Indicative	Present	Sing. 1	2	3	Plur. 1	2	3
	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>teng-o</i>	<i>tien-es</i>	<i>tien-e</i> ;	tenemos	teneis	<i>tien-en.</i>
	<i>Preterite</i>	<i>tenia</i>	<i>tenias</i>	<i>tenia</i> ;	teníamos	teníais	tenían.
	<i>Future</i>	<i>tuv-e</i>	<i>tuv-iste</i>	<i>tuv-o</i> ;	<i>tuv-imos</i>	<i>tuv-ísteis</i>	<i>tuv-ieron.</i>
		<i>ten-dré</i>	<i>ten-drás</i>	<i>ten-drá</i> ;	<i>ten-drémos</i>	<i>ten-dréis</i>	<i>ten-drán.</i>
Imperative		—	ten	<i>teng a</i> ;	<i>teng-amos</i>	tened	<i>teng-an.</i>
Subjunctive	Present	<i>teng-a</i>	<i>teng-as</i>	<i>teng-a</i> ;	<i>teng-amos</i>	<i>teng-ais</i>	<i>teng-an.</i>
	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>tuv-iera</i>	<i>tuv-ieras</i>	<i>tuv-iera</i> ;	<i>tuv-iéramos</i>	<i>tuv-iérais</i>	<i>tuv-ieran.</i>
	<i>Future</i>	<i>tuv-iese</i>	<i>tuv-ieses</i>	<i>tuv-iese</i> ;	<i>tuv-iésemos</i>	<i>tuv-iéseis</i>	<i>tuv-iesen.</i>
		<i>ten-dria</i>	<i>ten-drias</i>	<i>ten-dria</i> ;	<i>ten-dríamos</i>	<i>ten-dríais</i>	<i>ten-drían.</i>
		<i>tuv-iere</i>	<i>tuv-ieres</i>	<i>tuv-iere</i> ;	<i>tuv-iéremos</i>	<i>tuv-iéreis</i>	<i>tuv-ieren.</i>

The compounds of *tener* are

<i>Abstenerse</i>	to abstain	<i>detener</i>	to detain	<i>obtener</i>	to obtain
<i>atenerse</i>	to adhere to	<i>entretener</i>	to entertain	<i>retener</i>	to retain
<i>contener</i>	to contain	<i>mantener</i>	to maintain	<i>sostener</i>	to sustain.

XXXVII. *Venir* and its compounds have the following irregularities :

	Sing.		Plur.		Infinitive	
	1	2	3	2	3	
Indicative Present	<i>veng-o</i>	<i>vién-es</i>	<i>vién-e</i>	<i>venimos</i>	<i>vién-en.</i>	
Imperfect	<i>venia</i>	<i>venias</i>	<i>venia</i>	<i>veníamos</i>	<i>venían.</i>	
Preterite	<i>vin-e</i>	<i>vin-iste*</i>	<i>vin-o</i>	<i>vin-imos*</i>	<i>vin-ísteis*</i>	
Future	<i>ven-dré</i>	<i>ven-drás</i>	<i>ven-drá</i>	<i>ven-dréis</i>	<i>ven-drán.</i>	
Imperative	—	<i>ven</i>	<i>veng-a</i>	<i>veng-amos</i>	<i>veng-an.</i>	
Subjunctive Present	<i>veng-a</i>	<i>veng-as</i>	<i>veng-a</i>	<i>veng-amos</i>	<i>veng-an.</i>	
	<i>vin-iera</i>	<i>vin-ieras</i>	<i>vin-iera</i>	<i>vin-iéramos</i>	<i>vin-ieran.</i>	
Imperfect	<i>vin-iese</i>	<i>vin-ieses</i>	<i>vin-iese</i>	<i>vin-iésemos</i>	<i>vin-iesen.</i>	
Future	<i>ven-dría</i>	<i>ven-drias</i>	<i>ven-dría</i>	<i>ven-dríamos</i>	<i>ven-drían.</i>	
	<i>vin-iere</i>	<i>vin-ieres</i>	<i>vin-iere</i>	<i>vin-iéremos</i>	<i>vin-ieren.</i>	

The compounds of *venir* are

<i>Avenir</i> to agree	<i>desavénir</i> to disagree	<i>provenir</i> to emanate
<i>contravénir</i> to infringe	<i>intervenir</i> to intervene	<i>sobrevénir</i> { to come upon sud-
<i>convénir</i> to convene	<i>prevénir</i> to prepare	denly.

* These three persons are also found regularly formed ; *as, veniate, venimos, venisteis.*

XXIX. *Ser* is irregular in the following tenses:

	Sing.		Plur.		to be.	
Indicative	Present	s-oy	3	s-omos	s-er,	3
	Imperfect	era	es;	éramos	s-iendo,	s-on.
	Preterite	fu-í	era;	érais	being.	éran.
	Future	seré	fu-é;	fu-ísteis	been.	fu-éran.
Imperative		seré	será;	seréis		serán.
		—	se-a;	sed		se-an.
Subjunctive	Present	se-a	se-a;	se-amos	se-ais	se-an.
	Imperfect	{ fu- <i>era</i> fu- <i>ese</i>	fu- <i>era</i> ; fu- <i>ese</i> ;	fu- <i>éramos</i> fu- <i>ésemos</i>	fu- <i>érais</i> fu- <i>éseis</i>	fu- <i>éran</i> . fu- <i>esen</i> .
	Future	seria	seria;	seríamos	seriais	serían.
		fu- <i>ere</i>	fu- <i>ere</i> ;	fu- <i>éremos</i>	fu- <i>érais</i>	fu- <i>eren</i> .

XXX. The verb *ir*, as well as the foregoing verb, is subject to irregularities of such a peculiar nature, that it is difficult to determine sometimes, whether the irregularity belongs to a root, or to a termination.

		Infinitive		ir, yendo, ido,		to go. going. gone.	
		Gerund	Participle	3	Plur. 1	2	3
Indicative	Present	Sing. 1 <i>voy</i>	2 <i>vas</i>	<i>va-a</i> ;	<i>v-amos</i>	<i>v-ais</i>	<i>v-an.</i>
	Imperfect	<i>i-ba</i>	<i>i-bas</i>	<i>i-ba</i> ;	<i>i-bamos</i>	<i>i-bais</i>	<i>i-ban.</i>
	Preterite	<i>fu-i</i>	<i>fu-iste</i>	<i>fu-é</i> ;	<i>fu-imos</i>	<i>fu-isteis</i>	<i>fu-éron.</i>
	Future	<i>i-ré</i>	<i>i-rás</i>	<i>i-rá</i> ;	<i>i-rémos</i>	<i>i-réis</i>	<i>i-rán.</i>
Imperative	—	<i>v-e</i>		<i>vay-a</i> ;	<i>vay-amos*</i>	<i>i-d</i>	<i>vay-an.</i>
Subjunctive	Present	<i>vay-a</i>	<i>vay-as</i>	<i>vay-a</i> ;	<i>vay-amos</i>	<i>vay-ais</i>	<i>vay-an.</i>
	Imperfect	<i>fu-era</i>	<i>fu-eras</i>	<i>fu-era</i> ;	<i>fu-éramos</i>	<i>fu-érais</i>	<i>fu-eran.</i>
		<i>fu-ese</i>	<i>fu-eses</i>	<i>fu-ese</i> ;	<i>fu-ésemos</i>	<i>fu-éscis</i>	<i>fu-esen.</i>
Future		<i>i-ria</i>	<i>i-rias</i>	<i>i-ria</i> ;	<i>i-riamos</i>	<i>i-riais</i>	<i>i-rian.</i>
		<i>fu-ere</i>	<i>fu-eres</i>	<i>fu-ere</i> ;	<i>fu-éremos</i>	<i>fu-éreis</i>	<i>fu-eren.</i>

* Custom has almost entirely exploded the use of this person, for which is substituted the same person of the present, indicative; thus we say, *vamos*, let us go, instead of *vayamos*.

A List of all the Irregular Verbs, numbered according to the Examples which have been given for their Conjugation.

When any verb belonging to the first class is not of the same conjugation as the example by which it is to be conjugated, the terminations must be borrowed from the View of the Regular Terminations, page 142 : hence the verb *volv*-er must be conjugated thus ; *vuelv*-o, *vuelv*-es, *vuelv*-e, *volv*-emos, *volv*-eis, *vuelv*-en, although *vol*-ar, the example to which it is referred, is conjugated thus, *vuel*-o, *vuel*-as, *vuel*-a ; *vol*-amos, *vol*-ais, *vuel*-an.

<i>Abastecer</i> I	{ to furnish provisions	<i>amol</i> ar IX	to whet
<i>aborre</i> cer I	to hate	<i>andar</i> XIV	to walk
<i>abr</i> ir i. p.	to open	<i>anoch</i> ecer I	to grow dark
<i>absolv</i> er IX.i.p.	to absolve	<i>antepon</i> er	{ to prefer
<i>abstra</i> er XXII	to abstract	XIX. i. p.	
<i>aca</i> ecer I	to happen	<i>antev</i> er v. i. p.	to foresee
<i>acert</i> ar II	to guess	<i>apacent</i> ar II	to feed cattle
<i>acord</i> ar IX	to agree	<i>apare</i> cer I	to appear
<i>acord</i> arse IX	to remember	<i>aperce</i> bir X	to provide
<i>acost</i> arse IX	to lie down	<i>apete</i> cer I	to long for
<i>acrecent</i> ar II	to increase	<i>aporcar</i> † IX	{ to cover with earth
<i>adestr</i> ar II	{ to make dex- terous	<i>aport</i> ar IX	{ to arrive at a port
<i>adher</i> ir XI	to adhere	<i>apost</i> ar IX	to lay wagers
<i>adole</i> cer I	to sicken	<i>apret</i> ar II	to tighten
<i>adormec</i> er- se I	{ to grow drowsy	<i>aprobar</i> IX	to approve
<i>adqu</i> erir* XI	to acquire	<i>argü</i> ir III	to argue
<i>advert</i> ir XI	to advert	<i>arrecir</i> se X	{ to become numb with cold.
<i>agor</i> ar IX	to augur	<i>arrend</i> ar II	to hire
<i>agrade</i> cer I	to thank	<i>arrepentir</i> se XI	to repent
<i>ahit</i> ar i. p.	{ to overload the stomach	<i>asentar</i> II	to set down
<i>alent</i> ar II	to encourage	<i>asentir</i> XI	to assent
<i>almorzar</i> IX	to breakfast	<i>aserr</i> ar II	to saw
<i>aman</i> ecer I	to dawn	<i>asest</i> ar II	to take aim

* *Adquirir* takes an *e* after the *i* ; as, *adquiero*, &c.

† A term used among gardeners

<i>asir</i> VI	to seize	<i>colgar</i> IX	to hang up
<i>asolar</i> IX	to raze	<i>comedirse</i> X	{ to grow moderate
<i>asoldar</i> IX	{ to keep troops in pay	<i>comenzar</i> II	to commence
<i>asonar</i> IX	{ to make sounds agree	<i>compadecerse</i> I	{ to pity
<i>atender</i> II	to attend	<i>comparecer</i> I	{ to come before
<i>atenerse</i> XXVI	to stand to	<i>compeler</i> i. p.	to compel
<i>atentar</i> II	to attempt	<i>competir</i> X	to contend
<i>aterrar</i> II	to terrify	<i>complacer</i> I	{ to give pleasure
<i>atestar</i> * II	to cram	<i>componer</i>	{ to compose
<i>atraer</i> XXII	to attract	XIX. i. p.	
<i>atravesar</i> II	to cross	<i>comprobar</i> IX	to corroborate
<i>atribuir</i> III	to attribute	<i>concebir</i> X	to conceive
<i>atronar</i> IX	to thunder	<i>concertar</i> II	to agree
<i>avenirse</i> XXVII	to agree	<i>concluir</i> III. i. p.	to conclude
<i>aventar</i> II	to fan	<i>concordar</i> IX	to agree
<i>avergonzarse</i> IX	{ to be ashamed	<i>condescender</i> II	{ to condescend
<i>bendecir</i> I. p.	{ to bless	<i>condoler</i> IX	to condole
XXVIII		<i>conducir</i> XXIV	to conduce
<i>bregar</i> II	to contend	<i>conferir</i> XI	to confer
<i>caber</i> XVIII	to contain	<i>confesar</i> II	to confess
<i>caer</i> VII	to fall	<i>confundir</i> i. p.	to confound
<i>calentar</i> II	to warm	<i>conmover</i>	{ to excite
<i>canecer</i> I	{ to become gray†	IX	{ commotions
<i>carecer</i> I	to be deprived	<i>conocer</i> I	{ to be acquainted
<i>cegar</i> II	to blind	<i>conseguir</i> X†	to obtain
<i>ceñir</i> X	to gird	<i>consentir</i> § XI	to consent
<i>cerner</i> II	to sift	<i>consolar</i> IX	to console
<i>cerrar</i> II	to shut	<i>consonar</i> IX	{ to agree in tone
<i>cimentar</i> II	{ to lay foundations	<i>constituir</i> III	to constitute
<i>cocer</i> IX	to cook	<i>constreñir</i> X	to constrain
<i>colar</i> IX	to strain		
<i>colegir</i> X	to collect		

* When it signifies *to attest*, it is regular.

† In allusion to the hair.

‡ See the author's *Synonyms*, page 172.

§ See *Colloquial Idioma*, Exercises, page 110.

<i>construir</i> III	to construe	<i>derretir</i> X	to melt
<i>contar</i> IX	to relate	<i>desacertar</i> II	to mistake
<i>contender</i> II	to contend	<i>desacordar</i> IX	{ to be discor- dant
<i>contener</i> XXVI	to contain	<i>desalentar</i> II	to discourage
<i>contradecir</i> } XXVIII. i. p.	to contradict	<i>desaparecer</i> I	to disappear
<i>contrahacer</i> } XVI. i. p.	to counter- feit	<i>desapretar</i> II	to loosen
<i>contraer</i> XXII	to contract	<i>desaprobar</i> IX	to disapprove
<i>contravenir</i> } XXVII	to oppose	<i>desasosegar</i> II	to disturb
<i>contribuir</i> III	to contribute	<i>desatender</i> II	to neglect
<i>contronertir</i> XI	to controvert	<i>desatentar</i> II	to perplex
<i>convale-</i> } <i>cer</i> I	to recover from sickness	<i>desavenir</i> } XXVII	to disagree
<i>convencir</i> i. p.	to convince	<i>descacer</i> I	to-droop
<i>convenir</i> XXVII	to suit	<i>descender</i> II	to descend
<i>convertir</i> XI } i. p.	to convert	<i>desceñir</i> X	to ungird
<i>corregir</i> X	to correct	<i>descolgar</i> IX	{ the reverse of <i>colgar</i>
<i>costar</i> IX	to cost	<i>descollar</i> IX	{ to be a neck taller
<i>crecer</i> I	to grow	<i>descomedirse</i> X	to grow rude
<i>cubrir</i> i. p.	to cover	<i>descomponer</i> } XIX. i. p.	to discom- pose
<i>dar</i> XIII	to give	<i>desconcertar</i> } II	to disarrange
<i>decaer</i> VII	to decay	<i>desconsentir</i> } XI	to dissent
<i>decentar</i> II	{ to make the first cut	<i>desconocer</i> I	to disown
<i>decir</i> XXVIII } i. p.	to say	<i>desconsolar</i> IX	to afflict
<i>deducir</i> XXIV	to infer	<i>descontar</i> IX	to discount
<i>defender</i> II	to defend	<i>descubrir</i> i. p.	to discover
<i>deferir</i> XI	to defer	<i>desdecirse</i> } i. p. XXVIII	to retract
<i>degollar</i> IX	to behead	<i>desempedrar</i> II	to unpave
<i>demoler</i> IX	to demolish	<i>desencerrar</i> II	to let loose
<i>demonstrar</i> IX	to demonstrate	<i>desengrosar</i> } IX	to diminish in thickness
<i>denegar</i> II	to refuse	<i>desenten-</i> } <i>derse</i> II	to feign ig- norance
<i>denostar</i> IX	to revile	<i>desenterrar</i> } II	to take up a corpse
<i>deponer</i> XIX } i. p.	to depose		
<i>derrengar</i> II	{ to break the back		

<i>desentorpe-</i>	}	to free from	<i>detener</i> XXVI	to detain
<i>cer</i> I			<i>devolver</i> IX	to restore
<i>desenvolver</i>	}	to unroll	<i>dezmar</i> II	to tithe
IX. i. p.			<i>diferir</i> XI	to differ
<i>desfallecer</i> I		to pine	<i>digerir</i> XI	to digest
<i>desflaque-</i>	}	to become	<i>discordar</i> IX	to disagree
<i>cerse</i> I			<i>disminuir</i> III	to diminish
<i>desflocar</i> IX		to ravel out	<i>disolver</i> IX. i. p.	to dissolve
<i>desfogarse</i>	}	to give vent	<i>disponer</i> XIX	to dispose
IX				
<i>desguarne-</i>	}	to take off	i. p.	
<i>cer</i> I			<i>distraer</i> XXII	to distract
<i>deshacer</i>	}	trimmings	<i>distribuir</i> III	to distribute
XVI. i. p.			<i>divertir</i> XI	to divert
<i>deshelar</i> II		to thaw	<i>doler</i> IX	to ache
<i>desherrar</i> II	}	to unshoe	<i>dormir</i> XII	to sleep
			<i>elegir</i> X. i. p.	to elect
<i>desleir</i> X		horses	<i>embestir</i> X	to assail
<i>deslucir</i> I		to dilute	<i>embravecer-</i>	to become
<i>desmembrar</i> II		to tarnish	<i>se</i> I	
<i>desmentir</i> XI		to dismember	<i>embrutecerse</i>	to become
<i>desobedecer</i> I		to give the lie	I	brutal
<i>desolar</i> IX		to disobey	<i>emendar</i> II	to amend
<i>desollar</i> IX		to desolate	<i>empedrar</i> II	to pave
<i>desovar</i> IX		to flay	<i>empezar</i> II	to begin
<i>desovar</i> IX		to spawn	<i>emplumecer</i>	to become
<i>despedir</i> X		to dismiss	I	
<i>despernar</i> II	}	to take off	<i>empobrecer</i> I	to impoverish
			<i>emporcar</i> IX	to soil
<i>despertar</i> II	}	legs	<i>encalvecer</i> I	to become
i. p.				
<i>desplacer</i> I		to awake	<i>encallecer</i> I	bald
<i>desplegar</i> II		to displease		to render
<i>despoblar</i> IX		to unfold		callous
<i>desteñir</i> X		to depopulate	<i>encanecer</i>	same as <i>ca-</i>
<i>desterrar</i> II		to discolour		
<i>destorcer</i> IX		to exile	<i>encarecer</i> I	to become
<i>destrocar</i> IX		to untwist		dearer
<i>destruir</i> III		to re-exchange	<i>encender</i> II	to light
<i>desvanecerse</i> I		to destroy	<i>encensar</i> II	to cense
<i>desvergon-</i>	}	to vanish away	<i>encerrar</i> II	to shut up
<i>zarse</i> IX			<i>encomendar</i>	to recom-
		to grow im-	II	
		pudent		mend

<i>encontrar</i> IX	to find	<i>ensangren-</i>	} to stain with
<i>encordar</i> IX	{ to string musical instruments	<i>tar</i> II	
<i>enrudecerse</i> I		<i>ensoberberse</i> I	} to become haughty
<i>encrueler-</i>	{ to instigate	<i>entallecer</i> I	
<i>cer</i> I		<i>entender</i> II	to understand
<i>encubertar</i>	{ to cover with	<i>enternecer</i> I	to soften
II		<i>enterrar</i> II	to bury
<i>encubrir</i> i. p.	to conceal	<i>entumecer</i> I	to swell
<i>endentecer</i> I	to cut the teeth	<i>entreoir</i> VIII	{ to hear indistinctly
<i>endurecer</i> I	to harden	<i>entretener</i>	
<i>enflaquecer</i> I	to grow lean	XXVI	{ to entertain
<i>enfurecerse</i>	{ to become	<i>entristecerse</i> I	
I		<i>entullecer</i> I	{ to become crippled
<i>engrandecer</i> I	to aggrandize	<i>entumecer</i> I	
<i>engreirse</i> X	to grow vain	{ same as <i>entumecer</i>	
<i>engrosar</i> IX	to engross	<i>envejecer</i> I	
<i>enloquecer</i> I	{ to become	<i>enverdecer</i> I	to grow green
<i>enlucir</i> I		<i>envestir</i> X	to invest
<i>enmohecerse</i>	{ to grow	<i>envolver</i> IX	{ to wrap
I		i. p.	
<i>enmudecer</i> I	{ to become	<i>enrugar</i> i. p.	to dry
<i>ennegrecer</i> I		<i>equivaler</i>	{ to be equivalent
<i>ennoblecer</i> I	to ennoble	XXIII	
<i>enrarecer</i> I	to rarefy	<i>erguir</i> * XI	{ to hold up the head
<i>enriquecer</i> I	to enrich	<i>errar</i> † II	
<i>enrodar</i> IX	{ to break on the wheel	<i>escarmentar</i>	{ to learn by experience
		II	

All the irregular persons of this verb must be written with an *h*; as, *hiergo*, *hierva*, &c.

† The irregular persons of this verb are sometimes found written with an *h*, as, *hierro*, *hierra*; and at others with a *y*; as, *yerro*, *yerra*; the latter way seems preferable, because it prevents ambiguity by forming a distinction between the irregular persons of *errar*, to err; and *herrar*, to shoe horses; and more especially as the Spanish Academy always write *hierro*, for iron; and *yerro*, for error.

<i>escarnecer</i> I	to scoff	<i>holgar</i> IX	{ to rest from
<i>escocer</i> IX	to smart		labour
<i>escribir</i> i. p.	to write	<i>kollar</i> IX	to trample
<i>esforzarse</i> IX	{ to make ef-	<i>huir</i> III	to flee
	forts	<i>humedecer</i> I	to moisten
<i>establecer</i> I	to establish	<i>imbuir</i> III	to imbue
<i>estar</i> XV	to be	<i>impedir</i> X	to impede
<i>estregar</i> II	to scour	<i>imponer</i>	{ to impose
<i>estremecerse</i> I	to shudder	XIX. i. p.	
<i>estrenir</i> X	{ to produce	<i>imprimir</i> i. p.	to print
	astringency	<i>incluir</i> III. i. p.	to include
<i>excluir</i> III. i. p.	to exclude	<i>incurrir</i> i. p.	to incur
<i>expedir</i> X	to expedite	<i>indisponer</i>	{ to indispose
<i>expelir</i> i. p.	to expel	XIX. i. p.	
<i>exponer</i>	{ to expose	<i>inducir</i> XXIV	to induce
XIX. i. p.		<i>inferir</i> XI	to infer
<i>expresar</i> i. p.	to express	<i>infernar</i> II	to damn
<i>extender</i> II	to extend	<i>insertar</i> i. p.	to insert
<i>extinguir</i> i. p.	to extinguish	<i>intervenir</i>	{ to intervene
<i>extraer</i> XXII	to extract	XXVII	
<i>fallecer</i> I	to die	<i>instituir</i> III	to institute
<i>favorecer</i> I	to favour	<i>instruir</i> III	to instruct
<i>fenecer</i> I	to terminate	<i>introducir</i>	{ to introduce
<i>fixar</i> i. p.	to fix	XXIV	
<i>fluir</i> III	to flow	<i>invernar</i> II	to winter
<i>fortalecer</i> I	to fortify	<i>invertir</i> XI.	{ to invert
<i>forzar</i> IX	to force	i. p.	
<i>fregar</i> II	to scrub	<i>investir</i> X	to invest
<i>freir</i> X. i. p.	to fry	<i>inxerir</i> XI. i. p.	to graft
<i>gemir</i> X	to moan	<i>ir</i> XXX	to go
<i>gobernar</i> II	to govern	<i>jugar</i> IV	to play
<i>guarnecer</i> I	to garnish	<i>juntar</i> i. p.	to join
<i>haber</i> XXV	to have	<i>lucir</i> I	to shine
<i>hacer</i> XVI. i. p.	to make	<i>luir</i> III	{ to wear by
<i>hartar</i> i. p.	to satiate		friction
<i>heder</i> II	to stink	<i>llover</i> IX	to rain
<i>helar</i> II	to freeze	<i>maldecir</i>	{ to curse
<i>hender</i> II	to cleave	XXVIII. i. p.	
<i>herir</i> XI	to wound	<i>manifestar</i>	{ to manifest
<i>herrar</i> II	to shoe horses	II. i. p.	
<i>hervir</i> XI	to boil		

<i>mantener</i> XXVI	} to maintain	<i>perecer</i> I	to perish
<i>marchitar</i> i p.		<i>perfeccionar</i> i. p.	} to perfect
<i>medir</i> X	to measure	<i>perniquebrar</i> II	
<i>mentar</i> II	to mention	<i>perseguir</i> X	to persecute
<i>mentir</i> XI	to lie	<i>pertenecer</i> I †	to belong
<i>merecer</i> I	to merit	<i>pervertir</i> XI	to pervert
<i>merendar</i> II	{ to take a luncheon	<i>plegar</i> II	to plait
<i>mohecerse</i> I		<i>poblar</i> IX	to people
<i>moler</i> IX	to grind	<i>poder</i> XVII	to be able
<i>morder</i> IX	to bite	<i>poner</i> XIX. i. p.	to place
<i>morir</i> XII. i. p.	to die	<i>predecir</i> XXVIII. i. p.	} to predict
<i>mostrar</i> IX	to show	<i>preferir</i> XI	to prefer
<i>mover</i> IX	to move	<i>prender</i> i. p.	to seize
<i>muir</i> * III	to milk	<i>preponer</i> XIX i. p.	} to place before
<i>nacer</i> I	to be born	<i>prescribir</i> i. p.	to prescribe
<i>negar</i> II	to deny	<i>presentir</i> XI	{ to have a pre-sentiment
<i>negrecer</i> I	to grow black	<i>presuponer</i> XIX. i. p.	
<i>nevar</i> II	to snow	<i>prevalecer</i> I	to prevail
<i>obedecer</i> I	to obey	<i>prevenir</i> XXVII	} to prevent
<i>obscuracer</i> I	to darken	<i>prever</i> v. i. p.	to foresee
<i>obstruir</i> III	to obstruct	<i>probar</i> IX	to prove
<i>obtener</i> XXVI	to obtain	<i>producir</i> XXIV	to produce
<i>ofrecer</i> I	to offer	<i>proferir</i> XI	to utter
<i>oír</i> VIII	to hear	<i>promover</i> IX	to promote
<i>oler</i> † IX	to smell	<i>proponer</i> XIX. i. p.	} to propose
<i>omitir</i> i. p.	to omit	<i>proscribir</i> i. p.	to proscribe
<i>oponer</i> XIX. i. p.	to oppose	<i>proseguir</i> X	to prosecute
<i>oprimir</i> i. p.	to oppress	<i>prostituir</i> III	to prostitute
<i>pacer</i> I	to graze	<i>proveer</i> i. p.	to provide
<i>padecer</i> I	to suffer		
<i>parecer</i> I	to seem		
<i>pedir</i> X	to demand		
<i>pensar</i> II	to think		
<i>perder</i> II	to lose		

* A term peculiar to the province of Arragon.

† The irregular persons of this verb are written with an *h*; as, *huelo, huela*, &c.

‡ See Synonyms, by the author, page 171.

<i>provenir</i> XXVII	to originate	<i>reñir</i> X	to quarrel
<i>quebrar</i> II	to break	<i>repetir</i> X	to repeat
<i>querer</i> XX	to like	<i>replegar</i> II	to fall back*
<i>recaer</i> VII	to relapse	<i>reponer</i> XIX	} to replace
<i>recluir</i> III. i. p.	to cloister	i. p.	
<i>recocer</i> IX	{ to boil over again	<i>reprobar</i> IX	to reprove
<i>recomendar</i> II	to recommend	<i>reproducir</i> XXIV	} to produce afresh
<i>reconocer</i> I	{ to acknow- ledge	<i>requerir</i> XI	to require
<i>reconvale- cer</i> I	} same as <i>con- valecer</i>	<i>resentirse</i> XI	to resent
<i>recordar</i> IX		<i>rescontar</i> IX	} to balance accounts
<i>recostar</i> IX	to recline	<i>resollar</i> IX	to breathe
<i>recrer</i> I	to grow again	<i>resolver</i> IX. i. p.	to resolve
<i>reducir</i> XXIV	to reduce	<i>resonar</i> IX	to resound
<i>referir</i> XI	to refer	<i>restablecer</i> I	to reestablish
<i>reflorece</i> I	{ to blossom again	<i>restituir</i> III	to restore
<i>reforzar</i> IX	to reinforce	<i>retemblar</i> II	to vibrate
<i>regar</i> II	to water	<i>retener</i> XXVI	to retain
<i>regir</i> X	to rule	<i>retentar</i> II	} to threaten a relapset
<i>regoldar</i> IX	to belch	<i>reteñir</i> X	to dye again
<i>rehacer</i> XVI	} to do over again	<i>retorcer</i> IX	to twist
i. p.		<i>retraer</i> XXII	to retract
<i>reir</i> X	to laugh	<i>retrotraer</i> †	} to bring back
<i>relucir</i> X	same as <i>lucir</i>	XXII	
<i>remanecer</i> I	to remain	<i>retribuir</i> III	to compensate
<i>remendar</i> II	{ to mend clothes	<i>reventar</i> II	to burst
<i>remorder</i> IX	} to bite re- peatedly	<i>rever</i> V. i. p.	to review
<i>remover</i> IX		<i>reverdecir</i> I	} to grow green again
<i>renacer</i> I	{ to be born again	<i>reverter</i> II	to overflow
<i>rendir</i> X	to yield	<i>revestir</i> X	to revest
<i>renegar</i> II	to abjure	<i>revolar</i> IX	to fly again
<i>renovar</i> IX	to renew	<i>revolcarse</i> IX	to wallow
		<i>revolver</i> IX	} to revolve
		i. p.	

* Speaking of the former position of an army.

† Alluding to illness.

‡ See page 168.

<i>rodar</i> IX	{ to move on wheels	<i>substituir</i> III	to substit
<i>rogar</i> IX	to pray	<i>sugerir</i> XI	to suggest
<i>romper</i> i. p.	to break	<i>substraer</i> XXII	to subtract
<i>saber</i> * XXI	to know	<i>suponer</i> XIX. }	to suppose
<i>salir</i> XXIII	to go out	i. p.	
<i>satisfacer</i>	{ to satisfy	<i>suprimir</i> i. p.	to suppress
XVI. i. p.		<i>temblar</i> II	to tremble
<i>seducir</i> XXIV	to seduce	<i>tender</i> II	to spread out
<i>segar</i> II	to reap corn	<i>tener</i> XXVI	to hold
<i>seguir</i> X	to follow	<i>teñir</i> X	to dye
<i>semparar</i> II	to sow	<i>tentar</i> II	to tempt
<i>sentarse</i> II	to sit	<i>torcer</i> IX	to twist
<i>sentir</i> XI	to feel	<i>tostar</i> IX	to toast
<i>serrar</i> II	to saw	<i>traducir</i> XXIV	to translate
<i>ser</i> XXIX	to be	<i>traer</i> XXII	to bring
<i>servir</i> X	to serve	<i>transcendar</i> II	to transcend
<i>sobreponer</i>	{ to place over	<i>trascollar</i> IX	to percolate
XIX. i. p.		<i>trascordarse</i> IX	to forget
<i>sobresalir</i>	{ to surpass	<i>trasegar</i> II	to decant
XXIII		<i>trasonar</i> IX	to dream
<i>sobrevenir</i>	{ to happen	<i>trasponer</i>	{ to transpose
XXVII		XIX. i. p.	
<i>solar</i> IX	to sole	<i>trocar</i> IX	to barter
<i>soldar</i> IX	to solder	<i>tronar</i> IX	to thunder
<i>soler</i> IX	to be wont	<i>tropezar</i> II	to stumble
<i>soltar</i> IX. i. p.	to let go	<i>valer</i> XXIII	to be worth
<i>sonar</i> IX	to sound	<i>venir</i> XXVII	to come
<i>soñar</i> IX	to dream	<i>ver</i> v. i. p.	to see
<i>sonreírse</i> X	to smile	<i>verter</i> II	to shed
<i>sosegar</i> II	{ to become tranquil	<i>vestir</i> X	to clothe
<i>sostener</i> XXVI	to sustain	<i>volar</i> IX	to fly
<i>soterrar</i> II	to bury	<i>volcar</i> IX	to upset
		<i>volver</i> IX. i. p.	to return
		<i>zahir</i> XI	to upbraid

N. B. Most of the verbs inserted in the foregoing list have other meanings than the one annexed to them; but the verb *atestar* only (as has been observed) loses its irregularity when it varies its signification.

A List of Verbs having the Participle irregularly formed.

Infinitive.	Meaning.	Irreg. Participle.	Reg. Participle.
<i>Abrir</i>	to open	<i>abierto</i>	_____
<i>absolver</i>	to absolve	<i>absuelto</i>	_____
<i>ahitar</i>	{ to overload the stomach }	{ <i>ahito</i>	<i>ahitado</i>
<i>anteponer</i>			_____
<i>antever</i>	to foresee	<i>antevisto</i>	_____
<i>bendecir</i>	to bless	<i>bendito</i>	<i>bendecido</i>
<i>compeler</i>	to compel	<i>compulso</i>	<i>compelido</i>
<i>componer</i>	to compose	<i>compuesto</i>	_____
<i>concluir</i>	to conclude	<i>concluso</i>	<i>concluido</i>
<i>confundir</i>	to confound	<i>confuso</i>	<i>confundido</i>
<i>contradecir</i>	to contradict	<i>contradicho</i>	_____
<i>contrahacer</i>	to counterfeit	<i>contrahecho</i>	_____
<i>convencer</i>	to convince	<i>convicto</i>	<i>convencido</i>
<i>convertir</i>	to convert	<i>converso</i>	<i>convertido</i>
<i>cubrir</i>	to cover	<i>cubierto</i>	_____
<i>decir</i>	to say	<i>dicho</i>	_____
<i>deponer</i>	to depose	<i>depuesto</i>	_____
<i>descomponer</i>	to discompose	<i>descompuesto</i>	_____
<i>descubrir</i>	to discover	<i>descubierto</i>	_____
<i>desdecirse</i>	to retract	<i>desdicho</i>	_____
<i>desenvolver</i>	to unroll	<i>desenvuelto</i>	_____
<i>deshacer</i>	to undo	<i>deshecho</i>	_____
<i>despertar</i>	to awake	<i>despierto</i>	<i>despertado</i>
<i>disolver</i>	to dissolve	<i>disuelto</i>	_____
<i>disponer</i>	to dispose	<i>dispuesto</i>	_____
<i>elegir</i>	to elect	<i>electo</i>	<i>elegido</i>
<i>encubrir</i>	to conceal	<i>encubierto</i>	_____
<i>envolver</i>	to wrap	<i>envuelto</i>	_____
<i>enrugar</i>	to dry	<i>enruto</i>	<i>enxugado</i>
<i>escribir</i>	to write	<i>escrito</i>	_____
<i>excluir</i>	to exclude	<i>excluso</i>	<i>excluido</i>
<i>expeler</i>	to expel	<i>expulso</i>	<i>expelido</i>
<i>exponer</i>	to expose	<i>expuesto</i>	_____
<i>expresar</i>	to express	<i>expreso</i>	<i>expresado</i>
<i>extinguir</i>	to extinguish	<i>extinto</i>	<i>extinguido</i>
<i>fixar</i>	to fix	<i>fixo</i>	<i>fixado</i>
<i>freir</i>	to fry	<i>frito</i>	<i>freido</i>
<i>hacer</i>	to make	<i>hecho</i>	_____

Infinitive.	Meaning.	Irreg. Particip.	Reg. Particip.
<i>hartar</i>	to satiate	<i>harto</i>	<i>hartado</i>
<i>imponer</i>	to impose	<i>impuesto</i>	_____
<i>imprimir</i>	to print	<i>impreso</i>	_____
<i>incluir</i>	to include	<i>incluso</i>	<i>incluido</i>
<i>incurrir</i>	to incur	<i>incurso</i>	<i>incurrido</i>
<i>indisponer</i>	to indispose	<i>indispuerto</i>	_____
<i>insertar</i>	to insert	<i>inserto</i>	<i>insertado</i>
<i>invertir</i>	to invert	<i>inverso</i>	<i>invertido</i>
<i>inxerir</i>	to graft	<i>inxerto*</i>	<i>inxerido</i>
<i>juntar</i>	to join	<i>junto</i>	<i>juntado</i>
<i>maldecir</i>	to curse	<i>maldito</i>	<i>maldecido</i>
<i>manifestar</i>	to manifest	<i>manifiesto</i>	<i>manifestado</i>
<i>marchitar</i>	to fade	<i>marchito</i>	<i>marchitado</i>
<i>morir</i>	to die	<i>muerto</i>	_____
<i>omitir</i>	to omit	<i>omiso</i>	<i>omitido</i>
<i>oponer</i>	to oppose	<i>opuesto</i>	_____
<i>oprimir</i>	to oppress	<i>opreso*</i>	<i>oprimido</i>
<i>perfeccionar</i>	to perfect	<i>perfecto</i>	<i>perfeccionado</i>
<i>poner</i>	to place	<i>puesto</i>	_____
<i>predecir</i>	to predict	<i>predicho</i>	_____
<i>prender</i>	to seize	<i>preso*</i>	<i>prendido</i>
<i>preponer</i>	to place first	<i>prepuesto</i>	_____
<i>prescribir</i>	to prescribe	<i>prescrito*</i>	<i>prescrito</i>
<i>presuponer</i>	to presuppose	<i>presupuesto</i>	_____
<i>prever</i>	to foresee	<i>previsto</i>	_____
<i>proponer</i>	to propose	<i>propuesto</i>	_____
<i>proscribir</i>	to proscribe	<i>proscrito</i>	_____
<i>proveer</i>	to provide	<i>provisto*</i>	<i>proveido</i>
<i>recluir</i>	to shut up	<i>recluso</i>	<i>recluido</i>
<i>rehacer</i>	to do over again	<i>rehecho</i>	_____
<i>reponer</i>	to replace	<i>repuesto</i>	_____
<i>resolver</i>	to resolve	<i>resuelto</i>	_____
<i>rever</i>	to review	<i>revisto</i>	_____
<i>revolver</i>	to revolve	<i>revuelto</i>	_____
<i>romper</i>	to break	<i>roto*</i>	<i>rompido</i>
<i>satisfacer</i>	to satisfy	<i>satisfecho</i>	_____
<i>sobreponer</i>	to place over	<i>sobrepuesto</i>	_____
<i>soltar</i>	to let go	<i>suelto</i>	<i>soldido</i>
<i>suponer</i>	to suppose	<i>supuesto</i>	_____
<i>suprimir</i>	to suppress	<i>supreso*</i>	<i>suprimido</i>
<i>trasponer</i>	to transpose	<i>traspuesto</i>	_____
<i>ver</i>	to see	<i>visto</i>	_____
<i>volver</i>	to return	<i>vuelto</i>	_____

Observation on such of the foregoing verbs as have two participles.

The irregular participles belonging to these verbs partake more of the nature of verbal adjectives than of that of participles ; and therefore are never made use of to form the compound tenses of the said verbs ; as, *el suelo está enxuto por que el sol le ha enxugado*, the floor is dry because the sun has dried it. The participles marked thus * are excepted, as they are often found forming the compound tenses of their verbs, especially the participles *preso*, *prescrito*, *provisto*, *roto*, the latter of which the Spanish Academy observes is oftener used to form the compound tenses of *romper* than its own regular participle.

Impersonal Verbs, or Verbs which are conjugated in the Third Person Singular of each Tense only.

Amanec-er, To grow light.

Indicat. Present	amanece, it grows light.
Imperfect	amanecia, it did grow light.
Perf. Indef.	amaneció, it grew light.
Perf. def.	ha amanecido, it has grown light.
Pluperf.	habia or hubo amanecido, it had grown light.
Fut. imp.	amanecerá, it will grow light.
perf.	habrá amanecido, it will have grown light.
Imperative	amanecz-a, let it grow light.
Subjunct. Present	aunque, &c. amanezc-a, although &c. it may grow light.
Imperfect	amaneciera, amaneciese, it {should could might} grow light.
Perfect	amaneceria aunque, &c. haya amanecido, though &c. it may have grown light.
Pluperf.	{hubiera hubiese habria} amane- cido, it {should have could have might have} grown light.

Subjunc. *Fut. imp.* si amaneciere, *if it should grow light.*

perf. si hubiere amanecido, *if it should have grown light.*

Infinit. *Present* amanecer, *to grow light.*

Perfect haber amanecido, *to have grown light.*

Gerund amaneciendo, *growing light.*

Comp. of ger. habiendo amanecido, *having grown light.*

Participle amanecido, *grown light.*

N.B. *Anohecer*, to grow dark, is conjugated in the same manner, and has the same irregularity : example ; *anohezc-a*, it may grow dark, &c.

Observation.

These two verbs are sometimes used with all the persons, and in such instances they may be considered as neuter-passive verbs, denoting merely the situation or condition of their subject at the time ; as, *anohecimos en el campo*, that is, night closed in upon us whilst we were in the country ; or, we were in the country when it grew dark : *amanecimos en Londres*, that is, the day broke upon us when we were in London, or, we were in London when it grew light, or, at break of day : *amaneci6 el campo de batalla cubierto de heridos*, the wounded were seen covering the field of battle at break of day. In some phrases *amanecer* may be properly translated to awake, or, to arise ; and *anohecer*, to go to sleep, or, to lie down ; as, *anoheci bueno, amaneci malo*, I went to sleep well, I awoke ill ; *mi padre anoheci6, pero no amaneci6*, my father lay down, but he rose no more.

Neu-ar.

Indicat. *Present* niev-a, *it snows.*

Imperfect nevaba, *it did snow.*

Perf. indef. nev6, *it snowed.*

Perf. def. ha nevado, *it has snowed.*

Pluperfect habia or hubo nevado, *it had snowed.*

<i>Fut. imp.</i>	nevará, <i>it will snow.</i>
<i>Fut. perf.</i>	habrá nevado, <i>it will have snowed.</i>
Imperative	niev-e, <i>let it snow.</i>
Subjunc. Present	aunque, &c. niev-e, <i>though, &c. it may snow.</i>
<i>Imperfect</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{nevara,} \\ \text{nevase,} \\ \text{nevaria,} \end{array} \right\} \text{it } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{should} \\ \text{might} \\ \text{would} \end{array} \right\} \text{snow.}$
<i>Perfect</i>	aunque, &c. haya nevado, <i>although &c. it may have snowed.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{hubiera} \\ \text{hubiese} \\ \text{habria} \end{array} \right\} \text{nevado, it } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{should have} \\ \text{might have} \\ \text{would have} \end{array} \right\} \text{snowed.}$
<i>Fut. imp.</i>	si nevare, <i>if it should show.</i>
<i>perf.</i>	si hubiere nevado, <i>if it should have snowed.</i>
Infinit. Present	nevar, <i>to snow.</i>
<i>Perfect</i>	haber nevado, <i>to have snowed.</i>
<i>Gerund</i>	nevando, <i>snowing.</i>
<i>Comp. of the ger.</i>	habiendo nevado, <i>having snowed.</i>
<i>Participle</i>	nevado, <i>snowed.</i>

N. B. *Helar*, to freeze, is conjugated in the same manner, and has the same tenses irregular: example; *hiel-a*, it freezes; *hiel-e*, it may freeze, &c.

Tron-ar.

Indicat. Present	truen-a, <i>it thunders.</i>
<i>Imperfect</i>	tronaba, <i>it did thunder.</i>
<i>Perf. indef.</i>	tronó, <i>it thundered.</i>
<i>Perf. def.</i>	ha tronado, <i>it has thundered.</i>
<i>Pluperfect</i>	habia or hubo tronado, <i>it had thundered.</i>
<i>Fut. imp.</i>	tronará, <i>it will thunder.</i>
<i>perf.</i>	habrá tronado, <i>it will have thundered.</i>
Imperative	truen-e, <i>let it thunder.</i>
Subjunc. Present	aunque, &c. truen-e, <i>though, &c. it may thunder.</i>

Imperfect { tronara,
tronase, it { *should*
tronaria { *might* } thunder.
 { *would* }

Perfect aunque, &c. haya tronado, *though,*
 &c. *it may have thundered.*

Pluperf. { hubiera } tro- { *should have* } thun-
 { hubiese } na- it { *might have* } der-
 { habria } do { *would have* } ed.

Fut. imp. si tronare, *if it should thunder.*

perf. si hubiere tronado, *if it should*
 have thundered.

Infinit. Present tronar, *to thunder.*

Perfect haber tronado, *to have thundered.*

Gerund tronando, *thundering.*

Comp. of the ger. habiendo tronado, *having thun-*
 dered.

Participle tronado. *thundered.*

N. B. *Llover*, to rain, is conjugated like this verb, and changes also the *o* into *ue* in the same tenses: example; *lluev-e*, it rains; *lluev-a*, it may rain, &c. *Escarchar*, to freeze; *granizar*, to hail; *loviznar*, to mizzle; and *relampaguear*, to lighten, are all regular.

Hab-er

Indicat. Present ha-y, *there is, or there are.*

Imperfect habia, *there was, or there were.*

Perf. indef. hub-o, *there was, or there were.*

Perf. defin. ha habido, *there has or have been.*

Pluperfect habia or hubo habido, *there had*
 been.

Fut. imp. hab-rá, *there will be.*

perf. hab-rá habido, *there will have been.*

Imperative hay-a, *let there be.*

Subjunc. Present aunque, &c. hay-a, *though, &c.*
 there may be.

Imperfect { hub-iera, *there should be.*
 { hub-iese, *there might be.*
 { hab-ria, *there would be.*

Perfect aunque, &c. hay-a habido, *though,*
 &c. *there may have been.*

Pluperf. { *hub-iera*
hub-iese
hab-ria } *habi-* { *there should have*
do, { *there might have*
there would have } *been*
Fut. imp. *si hub-iere,* *if there should be.*
perf. *si hubiere habido,* *if there should*
have been.

Infinit. Present *haber.**
Perfect *haber habido.**
Gerund *habiendo, there being.*
Comp. of the ger. *habiendo habido, there having been.*
Participle *habido, been.*

Examples ; *there is an author who says, hay un autor que dice ; there are philosophers who deny it ; hay filósofos que lo niegan ; there have been men who have believed it, ha habido hombres que lo han creído.*

Hac-er.

Indicat. Present *hace, it ts.*
Imperfect *hacia, it was.*
Perf. indef. *hiz-o, it was.*
Perf. defin. *ha hecho, it has been.*
Pluperfect *habia or hubo hecho, it had been.*
Fut. imp. *ha-rá, it will be.*
perf. *habrá hecho, it will have been.*
Imperative *hag-a, let it be.*
Subjunc. Present *aunque, &c. hag-a, though, &c. it*
may be.

Imperfect { *hic-iera, it should be.*
hic-iese, it might be.
haria, it would be.
Perfect *aunque, &c. haya hecho, though,*
&c. it may have been.

Pluperf. { *hubiera*
hubiese
habria } *hecho, it* { *should have*
might have
would have } *been.*
Fut. imp. *si hic-iere, if it should be.*
perf. *si hubiere hecho, if it should have*
been

* These two tenses cannot be construed in English without circumlocution.

Infinitive *Present* hacer, *to be.*
Perfect haber hecho, *to have been.*
Gerund haciendo, *being.*
Comp. of the Ger. habiendo hecho, *having been.*
Particip. hecho, *been.*

N. B. This verb is used with nouns of number, in chronological calculations; * as, Is it ten years since his father died? *¿hace diez años que murió su padre?* it will be ten years to-morrow, *mañana hará diez años.* It is also employed to express the state of the weather; as, it is cold, *hace frío*; though it may be warm to-morrow, *aunque haga calor mañana*; it has been very windy to-day, *ha hecho mucho viento hoy.*

Observation.

There are several personal verbs which are frequently conjugated impersonally: example; From this instant I receive this young man, *it suffices* that thou present him to me, *Desde luego recibo á este mozo, basta que tú me le presentes*, Gil Blas, b. ii. ch. 1. The verb *ser* is also conjugated impersonally, and very frequently employed with the noun *menester*, &c. or with the adjectives *preciso*, *necesario*, to denote necessity; as, it must be granted, *es menester† concederlo*: to melt wax it must be warmed, *para derretir la cera es preciso† calentarla.* When the second verb has its subject expressed or understood in English, the said verb is put in the subjunctive with *que*; as, it will be requisite for us to see him, or, it will be requisite that we should see him, *será necesario que le veamos.* The same construction takes place when the verb *must* has its subject expressed; as, we must go, *es preciso que vayamos.* N. B. When *to be* (being used impersonally) is followed by a noun or pronoun, the verb *ser* must agree with the said noun or pronoun in number and person; as, it is I who wrote, *yo soy quien escribí*; it is riches I hate, *son las riquezas las que aborrezco.*

* The impersonal *haber* is sometimes found used in these species of calculations: as, And that *it was* fifteen months since he had retired to marry a girl of Castropol, *Y que se había retirado quince meses habia por casarse con una moza de Castropol.* Gil Blas, ch. 2.

† See the author's Synonyms, page 115.

DEFECTIVES.

The following verbs are found used in those tenses and persons only noticed in the annexed examples.

Podrir.

Imperat.	2d person plural	podrid, rot ye.
Subjunc.	imp. 3d pers. sing.	podriria, he would rot.
Infinit.	Present	podrir, to rot.
	Particip.	podrido, rotten.

Placer.

Indicat.	Pres. 3d. pers. sing.	place, it pleases.
	Imperf.	placia, it did please.
	Perf. ind.	plugo, it pleased.
Subjunc.	Present	plegue,* it may please.
	Imperf. {	plugiera,* it would please.
		plugiese,* it might please.
	Fut. imp.	plugiere,* it should please.

* The Spanish Academy observes that these persons are used in the following expressions only; *plegue*, or *plugiera*, or *plugiese á Dios*, would to God; and *si me plugiere*, if it should please me.

Yacer, To lie dead.

No part of this verb is made use of except the third persons of the present indicative, *yace* and *yacen*, which are generally inscribed on tombstones.

Sol-er.

Indicat.	Present	suel-o, I am wont.
		suel-es, thou art wont.
		suel-e, he is wont.
		solemos, we are wont.
		soleis, ye are wont.
		suel-en, they are wont.
Imperf.		solia, I was wont.
		solias, thou wast wont.
		solia, he was wont.
		solíamos, we were wont.
		soliais, ye were wont.
		solian, they were wont.

USE OF THE TENSES.

All the tenses of verbs are said to denote action or existence, as *going on*; as *being completed*; or as *not yet begun*: this is done by means of the three principal tenses of the Spanish verbs; the present, the preterite, and the future; as, *yo soy, yo fui, yo seré, I am, I was, I shall be*; *yo escribo, yo escribí, yo escribiré, I write, I wrote, I shall write*. Again, verbs are capable of describing more minutely the time at which an action was, has been, or will be present; and this they do by pointing out the state of one action at the commencement of another; and for this more circumstantial description we make use chiefly of what some grammarians call the compound tenses of verbs; as, *yo habia escrito antes que ella llegase, I had written before she arrived*; *yo habré escrito antes que ella llegue, I shall have written before she arrives*.

This is the definition of tenses in general. It remains now to show the peculiar purposes to which the tenses of the Spanish verbs are applied. In doing this I shall adopt as much as possible the same phraseology with every tense, believing that this method will render the distinction of each tense more conspicuous as well as more easily remembered.

PRESENT OF THE INDICATIVE.

1. This tense denotes the actual state of existence; as, *estoy malo, I am ill*; or that an action is going on; as, *hablo, or estoy hablando, I am speaking*.

2. Customs or habits still existing are expressed with this tense; as, *los Españoles duermen despues de comer, the Spaniards sleep after dinner*; *Sin embargo se debe confesar que son mas humanos*

que nosotros ; porque nosotros muchas veces por el dinero quitamos la vida á los inocentes, y ellos por él mismo no pocas se la perdonan á los culpados, It must however be acknowledged that they are more humane than we ; because we often for lucre *take away* the life of the innocent, and they for the very same thing often *spare* that of the guilty. Gil Blas, ch. v.

3. The present character, disposition, or occupation, is also expressed by this tense ; as, *Necesita lacayo el Capitan Torbellino, hombre colérico, fantástico y brutal ; gruñe sin cesar, jura, pateo, y suele estropear á los criados,* Gil Blas, b. i. ch. 17. Capain Torbellino *wants* a footman ; he is a choleric, fantastic, and brutal man, *scolds* incessantly, *swears at*, *kicks*, and is *apt* to maim, his domestics.

4. Axioms or general truths are declared in this tense ; as, *lo que es indivisible es incorruptible*, what is indivisible is incorruptible ; *todo es vanidad en este mundo*, all is vanity in this world.

Observation.

The present tense which is formed with the gerund always, denotes in a more forcible manner, an action or event as passing at the time it is mentioned ; yet even this tense is sometimes employed when the action is considered only as in a state of progression, and therefore we often say *el está escribiendo un libro*, he is writing a book ; meaning only that the action of writing the book is in a state of progression, although the individual at the time might be walking about.

Historians often use the present tense in order to give animation to their relations, by representing the events as happening at the time ; as, *Detenido por la primera guardia, insiste en ver al monarca ; corren á obtener su licencia, y vuelven á conducirle á su presencia,* Being stopped by the first guard, he insists on seeing the monarch ; they run to obtain his permission, and return in order to conduct him into his presence.

This tense is sometimes joined to expressions denoting futurity ; as, (1st,) *si yo salgo mañana*, If I go out to-morrow ; (2d,) *él se va esta semana*, he goes this week ; (3d,) *me voy el mes que viene*, I go away next month. But if we examine these sentences deliberately, we shall discover that the verb in these instances denotes present intention or resolution, and not future execution, and that the meaning is this, (1st,) If my present intention of going should be realized to-morrow ; (2d,) he intends (now) to go this week ; (3d,) I am (now) resolved to go away next month. See Observation after the Future Perfect.

IMPERFECT OF THE INDICATIVE.

1. This tense denotes former but progressive state of existence ; as, *yo estaba malo entonces*, I was ill then ; or that an action was going on at the time that another took place ; as, *yo escribía cuando entró*, I was writing when he came in.

2. Former customs or habits are expressed with this tense ; as, *veníamos amenudo aquí*, we often came here ; that is, we were wont to come, or we were in the habit of coming, often here. *En Atenas lloraban los niños cuando los azotaban*, At Athens the children used to cry when they were whipped. *Gil Blas*, b. ii. ch. 9.

3. The character, disposition, or occupation of individuals no longer living, or which formerly belonged to persons now alive, is described in this tense ; as, *mi padre era teniente general cuando murió*, my father was lieutenant-general when he died ; *su abuela era muy bonita en su mocedad*, his grandmother was very pretty in her youth.

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

1. This tense also denotes former, but not progressive state of existence ; as, *estuve malo*, I was ill ; or that an action took place at a certain period

of time, of which the present makes no part; as, vine *la semana pasada*, *I came* last week; escribí *ayer*, *I wrote* yesterday; hablé *anoche*, *I spoke* last night: wherein it is evident that the time at which the affirmation is made forms no part of the period within which the several actions took place.

Observation.

Historians generally make use of this tense, which has occasioned its being called by some grammarians the historical preterite; as, *yo le ví morir*, *I saw* him die; *atravesó el pecho el dardo de un Fenicio*, the dart of a Phœnician pierced his breast; *fuéronsele las riendas de la mano*, the reins dropped from his hand; *y cayó del carro á los pies de los caballos*, and he fell from the car at the horses' feet. (Telem. b. ii.)

The difference between this tense and the imperfect consists in this, that the imperfect describes an action, &c. in a state of progression, at some period of time prior to the present moment, necessarily implying its commencement before the said period of time, and leaving the mind generally unconscious whether the progression does or does not continue still; whereas the perfect indefinite, on the contrary, describes an action as having commenced at a former period of time, and implies its having ceased before the present moment: thus, if we say *él la amaba entonces*, he loved her then; we point out with the tense the affection of the man as in a state of progression, and which, for aught we know, may still be going on; for we may add, *y él la ama todavía*, and he loves her still. Let us now change the imperfect for the perfect indefinite, and say, *él la amó entonces*, he loved her then; the idea is not the same, for the probability of the man's affections continuing still is entirely done away: again, if I say, *yo iba ayer al campo*, *I was going* yesterday into the country, the perfecting of the action remains doubtful; for I may add *pero un aguacero me lo estorbó*, but a shower prevented me: but if I say, *yo fui ayer al campo*, *I went* yester-

day into the country, no doubt remains respecting the action being completed within the period of yesterday.

It is necessary to understand clearly the distinction which we make between these two tenses, in order not to misapply them, especially as this distinction is not so striking in the English as in the Spanish imperfect, unless the English tense be formed with the imperfect of the auxiliary *to be*, and the present participle of the verb ; as, *I loved*, or *was loving* ; *I preached*, or *was preaching* ; the latter of which expressions approaches more than the former to the meaning of the imperfect tense in Spanish.

PERFECT DEFINITE.

1. This tense describes a state of existence as being protracted to the time of the affirmation ; as, *ha estado malo hasta ahora*, *he has been* ill till now ; or as having terminated within a period bounded by the present ; as, *ha estado malo hoy*, *he has been* ill to-day : in like manner it denotes that an action which took place some time ago has continued uninterrupted till now ; as, *la he querido desde que la ví*, *I have loved* her ever since I saw her : or that an action took place within a certain period of which the present instant forms a part ; as, *hemos visto muchas maravillas en este siglo*, *we have seen* many wonders this century ; *no ha llovido mucho este año*, there *has not fallen* much rain this year ; *el pan ha estado caro este mes*, bread *has been* dear this month ; *no hemos ayunado esta semana*, *we have not fasted* this week ; *lo he oído hoy*, *I have heard* it to-day ;—wherein it is evident the words century, year, month, week, and day, must include the present instant.

2. It is also used to describe former actions of individuals now living, which were not reiterated or habitual ; as, *ha viajado mucho*, *he has travelled* a great deal ; *ha escrito muchas obras*, *he has written* many works ; *ha leído mucho en su mocedad*,

he *has read* a great deal in his youth. N.B. As a particular season of life is here mentioned, the indefinite might be used, as, *leyó mucho*, &c. he read, &c.

Observation.

In some instances the English perfect is translated by the present in Spanish; and whenever this happens, the action or the state of being which is described as having commenced some time back is supposed to be going on at present; as, *hace dos horas que está lloviendo*, it *has been* raining for these two hours; *hace dos años que estoy en Londres*, I *have been* in London these two years, *desde que vivimos juntos*, since we have lived together. It is not necessary that the progression of the action shall have been uninterrupted, provided there has been some regularity in the repetition kept up to the present time: as, *hace dos meses que yo escribo á mi hermana todos los días*, I *have written* to my sister every day the two last months.

The distinction which exists between this tense and the indefinite, should also be particularly noticed: because although, in almost every instance wherein the definitive is used, the indefinite may be employed, yet the reverse is never admissible, and therefore the former never can be a substitute for the latter. It is a characteristic of the perfect definite (as may be seen by the foregoing examples) to describe an event as having happened within a period of which the present instant always forms one boundary; whereas the present instant is never included in the time denoted by the perfect indefinite: hence, though we may say *hoi le'*, or *he leído, un libro*, to-day I have read a book; *escribi, or he escrito, una carta esta semana*, I have written a letter this week; because both the abovementioned periods reach to the present time; yet we can say only *leí un libro ayer*, I read a book yesterday; *escribí una carta la semana pasada*, I wrote a letter last week; because the present is excluded, both from yesterday and from last week. See Observation after the Future Perfect.

PLUPERFECT.

1. This tense denotes that a state of existence terminated before a certain period of time, which now is elapsed, had commenced; as, *habia estado malo antes*, *he had been* ill before; or, that an action was completed previously to the commencement of a former period; or before another action, which is now also finished, was begun; as, *yo habia leido el libro antes que le compré*, *I had read* the book before I bought it; *yo le habia escrito antes que llegó*, *I had written* to him before he arrived.

Observation.

The English pluperfect is translated by the imperfect in Spanish, whenever the first action, &c. is described as still going on at the time when the second took place; as, *habia dos horas que yo estaba escribiendo quando llegó mi padre*, *I had been* writing two hours when my father arrived: in which example, the verb being in the imperfect tense denotes that I was actually employed in writing at the time of my father's arrival.

When we wish to express not only that an action was completed before another, which now is finished, was begun, but also that they rapidly succeeded each other, we use generally the termination *hube*; as, *Quando los hube á todos oido, no me admiré de verlos juntos*. (Gil Blas.) When I *had* heard them all, I did not wonder at seeing them together; wherein the opinion of Gil Blas respecting the highwaymen is described as being formed immediately upon hearing their several histories. This termination is never employed except after the words *despues que, así que, luego que, quando, no bien, &c.*; as, *No bien lo hube dicho, quando todo el pueblo exclamó, &c.* I *had* no sooner said it, than all the people exclaimed, &c. (Telemach. b. i.)

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

1. This tense expresses that a state of existence will commence when the present time shall be past ; as, *entonces seré yo feliz*, I shall then be happy ; or that an action will be going on at a future period : as, *cenaré á las ocho*, I shall sup at eight o'clock ; or that an action will commence, or will be going on, at the time that another action will take place ; as, *cenaremos luego que vm. venga*, we shall sup immediately on your arrival, that is, we shall begin supper ; *estaremos cenando quando vm. llegue*, we shall be at supper when you arrive ; that is, supper will be going on.

FUTURE PERFECT.

1. This tense denotes that a state of existence will be terminated at or before a future period ; as, *habrémos sido felices*, we shall have been happy ; or that an action will be perfected at some future time, or before another action will be completed : in other words, this tense generally includes two future actions, denoting at the same time, that the completion of the first will precede that of the other ; as, *yo le habré escrito antes de ese dia*, I shall have written to him before that day ; *él habrá comido antes que lleguemos á su casa*, he will have dined before we reach his house.

Observation.

This English future is in some instances rendered by the present tense in Spanish, when the completion of the first action, &c. seems to take place at the very point of time which is mentioned in the sentence ; as, to-morrow I shall have lived in London two years, *mañana hará dos años que yo vivo en Londres* ; that is, the completion of my two years' actual residence in London will take place to-morrow : *el año que viene hará cinco años que estan casados*, next year they will have been married five years.

The Spaniards sometimes employ the *future imperfect* instead of the *present*, and the *future perfect* instead of the *perfect definite*, when they affirm something, either as present or past, of which they are not quite certain ; as, *Ahora vendrá de cenar con su Belica, donde él y el que le guía se habrán emborrachado*, He comes now (perhaps) from supping with his Betsey, where he and the one that conducts him *have* (probably) *got drunk*. (Gil Blas, b. iv. ch. 6.) Had the person who made the assertion been quite certain, he would have expressed himself thus, *Ahora viene de cenar con su Belica, donde él y el que le guía se han emborrachado*. The same construction takes place in asking a question, when the mind is as it were persuaded that the interrogatory is almost unnecessary ; thus, Gil Blas, conceiving his situation to be one of the most unhappy, puts the question with the future instead of the present ; as, ¡ *O Cielo ! exclamé, ¿ habrá situacion mas infeliz que la mia ?* O Heaven ! I exclaimed, *is there* a condition more wretched than mine ? (*Ibid.*)

PRESENT IMPERATIVE.

This tense is used first to command ; as, *confíesalo*, acknowledge it ; secondly, to entreat ; as, *concédeme el favor*, grant me the favour ; thirdly, to exhort ; as, *venzamos*, let us conquer ; fourthly, to permit ; as, *venga*, or *que venga*, let him come.

Observation.

It is necessary to observe that this tense cannot be used with a verb which is preceded by a negative ; but that in such cases the present subjunctive is employed : as, *nunca lo digas*, never say it ; *no vayais*, go ye not. The second person in both numbers is the only one wherein this deviation is conspicuous ; for the third person of both numbers, as well as the first person plural, are alike in both tenses : in fact, the Spanish Academy, justly considering the latter as inconsistent in an imperative mood, have uniformly rejected it in their Grammar.

N. B. The future of the indicative is sometimes used

for this tense ; as, *quien hubiere hallado un manojo de llaves* acudirá al Correo, let whoever has found a bunch of keys, *apply* at the Post-office.

SUBJUNCTIVE; OR POTENTIAL MOOD.*

The tenses of this mood have the same import as the tenses of the indicative ; but as the subjunctive is always connected with, and dependent on, some verb generally expressed in the sentence, its tenses cannot, like those of the indicative, denote action or existence as certain and positive, but only as doubtful and contingent. For example, *aunque viene mañana no le verá*, although he comes, shall come, or is coming to-morrow, I will not see him : here the verb *viene*, being in the indicative, denotes that the action of coming will take place positively on the following day ; but if, changing the verb to the subjunctive, we say *aunque venga mañana no le hablará ella*, although he may come, or he should come, to-morrow, she will not speak to him : the verb being here in the subjunctive marks his coming as more doubtful and contingent. Again, *aunque mi hermano ha leído mucho, sabe muy poco*, though my brother has read a great deal, he knows very little : here the verb *ha leído* being in the indicative, affirms positively my conviction respecting the extent of my brother's reading ; and although the two sentences are connected, yet they are not dependent on each other ; for, dismiss the connexive word *aunque*, and they will form two distinct complete sentences : that is, my brother has read much ; he knows very little ; but if we say, *aunque tu hermano haya leído mu-*

* When the second form of the verb is interpreted by such words as *might, could, would, &c.*, the mood, strictly speaking, is potential. When, on the contrary, it is similar in signification to the indicative, the mood is then said to be subjunctive. But, as in both cases the form of the mood is one and the same, these two terms are commonly employed indiscriminately.

cho, sabe muy poco, although thy brother *may have read* a great deal, he knows very little; we point out with the subjunctive, the doubt or suspicion which we entertain respecting his reading; and the last sentence is so dependant on the first, that it can scarcely form without it any sense.

PRESENT.

1. This tense marks a contingent action as going on now, or at some future time, and therefore in many instances it is used for the future imperfect of this mood; as, *aunque esté leyendo, como vm. dice, yo quiero hablarle*, although he *may be* reading, as you say, I wish to speak to him: *yo le hablaré mañana, aunque esté ocupado*, I will speak to him to-morrow, though *he may be* busy.

N. B. Another use of this tense has been already noticed when treating on the imperative.

IMPERFECT.

1. This tense denotes a contingent action as going on now, or as going on some time ago, or as going on some time hence; as, *aunque yo la amara ahora*, though I *were* to love her now; *queria que su hermano viniera*, I wished that his brother *should come*; that is, I wished (*at that time*) the arrival of his brother; *le agradeceríamos que viniera mañana*, we *should thank* him if he would come to-morrow. See Observations inserted after the Future of this mood.

PERFECT TENSE.

The perfect denotes a contingent action as completed some time ago, or as being finished some time hence; as, *aunque me haya escrito tantas cartas como dice, yo no he recibido ninguna*, although he *may have written* to me as many letters as he says, I have received none; *examinaremos las cuentas, y admitiremos á todos los que hayan pagado entonces*, we shall examine the accounts,

and we will admit all those who *may* then *have paid*.

PLUPERFECT.

The pluperfect represents a contingent action as completed before some period of time already past, or before some other action which is now also completed, or which would be now completed had it taken place ; as, *yo le hubiera escrito ántes, I would have written* to him before ; *te hubiera venido á ver ántes que salí de aquí, pero no tuve tiempo, I would have come* to see you before I went from here, but I had not leisure ; *si me lo hubiera preguntado, se lo hubiera contado, had he asked me, I would have related* it to him.

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

This tense represents a contingent action as taking place some time hence ; as, *le escribiré á vm. lo que me dixere, I will write* to you what he *may* (happen to) *say* to me ; *le perdonarán todo lo que hiciere, they will forgive him* every thing he *may do* (in future) ; *si escribiere quando lleguemos, if he write, or should write, or be writing, when we arrive.*

N.B. Except after the conjunction *si*, the present of the subjunctive may, in most instances, be used for this tense ; as, *le escribiré á vm. lo que diga, le perdonarán lo que haga.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

The perfect future denotes a contingent action or event as having taken place, or been completed some time hence ; as, *si hubiere mandado su carta antes que reciba la mia, se enojará mucho, should he have sent* his letter before he receives mine, he will be very angry ; *aunque hubiere llegado ayer, although he may have come* yesterday ; *no obstante*

que él lo hubiere comprado, notwithstanding he may have bought it.

N. B. This tense may be changed for the perfect of the subjunctive, except after the conjunction *si*; as, *aunque haya llegado ayer; no obstante que lo haya comprado.*

Observations on the Tenses of the Subjunctive or Potential Mood.

The definition which has been already given of this mood must be attentively observed, in order to avoid the error of substituting, for these tenses, those of the indicative; an error to which we are sometimes liable, because the English verb is not always sufficient to direct us in the choice of moods.

Neither can English conjunctions assist us, on account of their not being restricted to any mood in particular. For instance, when I say, if *he had gained* a suit, he also *had lost* a friend, and therefore *he had reason* to complain:—the English pluperfect of the indicative is preceded by the conjunction *if*; but as it denotes no contingency, the sentence is expressed with the like tense and mood in Spanish; and we should say, *si habia ganado el pleyto, tambien habia perdido un amigo, y así tenia razon de quejarse.* On the contrary, in this sentence, if *he had gained* (that is, had he gained) the suit, he *would have lost* a friend, and therefore he had no reason to be sorry,—the English pluperfect is in the subjunctive mood, and preceded by the same conjunction as in the last sentence; but it denotes a contingent event, as may be seen by the context, and is consequently resolved into the pluperfect of the subjunctive in Spanish: thus, *si hubiera ganado el pleyto, hubiera perdido un amigo, y así no tenia razon de afligirse.* Again, although I *had been* there often, I had never *seen* her; here a conjunction is again joined to the indicative, but the verbs contain two positive assertions: first, that I frequently visited the place; secondly, that I never saw the person: therefore the Spanish construction requires both verbs in the indicative; as, *aunque habia estado amenudo allí, nunca la habia visto.* Change

the verb to the subjunctive mood, and say, although I *had been* (or had I been) there often, I never *should have seen* her; the certainty of my having been at the place is done away, and resolved into a mere supposition; and hence both the verbs must be expressed with the subjunctive in Spanish; as, *aunque* hubiera estado allí *amenudo, nunca la* hubiera visto.—Having sufficiently guarded the learner against a misconception of the subjunctive, I shall proceed to show those tenses wherein greater difficulties are encountered.

No part of the subjunctive or potential mood is, unquestionably, more puzzling or perplexing to foreigners, or even to Spaniards, than are the imperfect and pluperfect tenses, on account of their triple termination.

The terminations *ra*, *se*, and *ria*, belonging to these tenses, cannot always be indiscriminately used; for, although in the examples given of the conjugations, &c. in Part I. it was found expedient to allot only one English sign of the subjunctive to every Spanish termination, we must not therefore conclude that *ra* is always the only equivalent to *should*; *se* to *might*; or *ria* to *would*: this is so far from being the fact, that every one of the three terminations may be made to correspond to any of the signs, according to circumstances.

Concerning the import of the three terminations *ra*, *se*, and *ria*, I shall observe, that in general *se* is used to denote ability, and *ria* inclination; and that *ra* may be occasionally made to express either ability or inclination, according to the framing of the sentence in which it is employed: thus, I may say, *le di dinero para que comprara* or *comprase el libro, y me prometió que le compraria* (but not *comprara*.) I gave him money that he might buy the book, and he promised me that he would buy it; *yo comprara* or *compraria el libro, pero no tengo dinero*, I would buy the book, but I have no money: in the first sentence, as may be seen, *would* can be expressed by the termination *ria* only, whilst in the second either *ra* or *ria* may be used.

The Spanish Academy remarks, concerning the terminations *ra*, *se*, and *ria*, that the first may, in most instances, be substituted for either of the others; I shall

therefore confine my observations chiefly to the second and third terminations, believing that the remark of the Academy sufficiently denotes the extensive uses of the first, and warning the reader at the same time, that in the subsequent examples the termination *ra* must always be deemed implied, unless the necessity for its rejection should be pointedly noticed.

Of the terminations *ra*, *se*, *ria*.

Of *ra*.

This termination is generally used in ejaculations; as, ; *quien lo hubiera pensado!* who *would have thought it!* ; *Dichosa yo si el exceso de mi dolor me hubiera quitado la vida!* Happy me if the excess of my grief *had* taken away my life! ; *Que de penas y tormentos me hubiera ahorrado!* How many afflictions and torments it *would have* spared me! (Gil Blas, ch. 11.)

Of *se* and *ria*.

1. If the imperfect or pluperfect of the subjunctive be preceded in English by a conjunction, *se* should generally be employed ; as, although he *might come*, *aunque viniese* ; unless he *would have come*, *amenos que no hubiese venido* ; provided he *would come*, *con tal que viniese*, if he *would come*, *si él viniese*.

2. When instead of expressing the conjunction *if*, in English, the order is inverted, the same termination must generally be used ; as, *were we to practise* (or if we were to practise) *virtue*, *si nosotros practicasemos la virtud* ; *had she* (or if she had) *written*, &c. *si ella hubiese escrito*, &c.

N.B. For *if*, when it means the same as *whether*, see the remarks on the termination *ria*, No. 8.

3. If the imperfect or pluperfect be preceded by a relative, we generally employ the termination *se* ; as, we *sent money* for all those who *might want it*,

mandamos dinero para todos los que lo necesitasen ; he sent money for all those who *might have* arrived before last month, *mandó dinero para todos los que hubiesen llegado antes del mes pasado*.

4. *As much as*, or *as many as*, preceding the subjunctive in English, likewise generally requires the termination *se* ; as, I gave you money to buy as many as we *might want*, *le dí á vm. dinero para comprar quantos necesitasemos* ; I gave them leave to eat as much as they *would*, *les dí licencia para comer quanto quisiesen*.

5. If any of the preterites of the indicative govern the imperfect or pluperfect of the subjunctive in English, with the sign *might*, the termination *se* ought generally to be used ; but if the sign be *would*, we must use the termination *ria* ; as, I wrote to him immediately, in order that he *might arrive* in time, and he answered that he *would set out* last night, *le escribí inmediatamente para que llegase á tiempo, y me respondió que partiría anoche*.

N. B. In this sentence *ria* could not be changed to *ra*.

Observation.

The Spanish Academy says, that, if the governing verb be *decir*, or any other of like import, the terminations *se* or *ria* may be used. This is certainly true, but their use is by no means arbitrary ; their meaning, as before observed, being widely different : thus, *el rey dijo que el embajador viniese*, means, the king said that the ambassador *might come*, or he ordered the ambassador to come ; but *el rey dijo que el embajador vendría*, the king said that the ambassador *would come*, denotes merely an assurance on the part of his majesty, implying at the same time inclination on the part of the ambassador. N. B. In this last sentence the termination *ra* could not be substituted for *ria*, therefore we could not have said *viniera* for *vendría*.

The Spanish Academy further adds, that if the governing verb denote *to wish*, or the like, the termination

se must be used. This is obvious ; for, as the termination *ria* implies inclination, and as the governing verb already expresses that inclination, *se* must be employed to denote the ability or possibility, which forms the object of the wish : thus, if I say, *mi madre queria que le escribiese*, my mother wished me *to write* to her (or wished that I *might write* to her,) the verb *queria* expresses that my mother had a wish ; and the termination *se* the object of that wish : viz. that I should possess ability to write.

N.B. *Se* is also for the same reason used with the expression *oxalá*, would to God ! as, would to God he might come, *oxalá viniese*.

6. When the imperfect or pluperfect of the subjunctive is not preceded by any conditional conjunction, the termination *ria* should generally be employed ; as, I *would go*, but I am afraid, *yo iria, pero tengo miedo* ; we *would pay* our debts, but we have no money, *pagaríamos nuestras deudas, pero no tenemos dinero*.

7. If the nature of the sentence should require that the imperfect or pluperfect be again used in the context, we do not in general repeat the same termination ; as, I *would go*, if I were not afraid, *yo iria, si no tuviese miedo* ; though I were not afraid, I *would not go* there, *aunque no tuviese miedo, no iria allá*.

N.B. *Ra* may be repeated in the context ; as, *pagaríamos* or *pagaríamos, si tuviéramos* or *tuviésemos dinero*, we *would pay*, had we money.

8. It is necessary to observe that whenever the conjunction *if*, in English, is used in the sense of *whether*, the termination *ria* is the only one that can be employed ; as, I asked him *if* his father, or *whether* his father, would come to-morrow, *le pregunté si su padre vendria mañana* ; she wrote to us to know *if we would* buy the house, *ella nos escribió para saber si compraríamos la casa*.

N.B. When the verb by which the imperfect of the

subjunctive is governed denotes *promise* or *assurance*, the termination *ria* is the only one which can be used ; as, *me prometió que vendría*, he promised me that he *would come* ; *te aseguré que saldría*, I assured thee that he *would go out*.

The termination *ria* is the only one used to denote a supposed action, &c. done within a period of time not including the present moment ; as, *Pero le parecería que dándole su mula gastaría menos en el viage*, But (I suppose) it seemed to him, that by giving me his mule the journey would cost him less. Gil Blas, ch. 2.

9. When *were* is used in English for *would be*, and *had* for *would have*, the former is expressed with *ria*, and the latter with *ra* ; as, it *were* (that is, it would be) the greatest folly to believe all that is said, *sería la mayor locura creer todo lo que dicen* ; many crimes which *had been* (that is, which would have been) punished at other times, were then committed with impunity, *muchos delitos que hubieran sido castigados en otros tiempos, se cometían impunemente entonces*.

10. It is almost unnecessary to observe, that, when in English, *would*, *should*, *might*, are not employed as signs of the subjunctive mood, but as verbs, they must be translated by *querer*, *deber*, *poder* ; as, he *would* not go, that is, he was unwilling to go, *no quiso ir* ; we *should* forgive our enemies, that is, we ought to forgive, *debemos perdonar á nuestros enemigos* ; I know he *might* have, that is, he had it in his power to have, written before, *sé que pudo haber escrito antes*.

Different Significations of the Preterimperfect and the Imperfect Future of this Mood.

Having observed that both the above tenses are capable of expressing a future contingent action

or event ; in order that they may not be, as too frequently they are, misapplied, the following distinction must be attentively preserved.

1st. That all future actions or events, denoted with the imperfect tense, are future only in reference to some other time, either expressed or only implied in the sentence ; but always past with regard to the present moment, that is, to the time at which we make the affirmation.

2dly. That the imperfect future expresses the contingent action or event, as future with regard to the present moment. For example ; the general ordered that all those who *might (happen to) desert*, should be shot. In this sentence the act of deserting is certainly future with regard to the period at which the general issued his orders ; but preterite or past in reference to the present time : therefore the future desertion of the soldiers must be expressed with the imperfect of the subjunctive : thus, *el general mandó que todos los que desertaran, fuesen arcabuceados*. On the contrary the general has ordered that all those who *may desert*, (that is, *may happen to desert*,) should be shot, implies that the act of deserting is future, as to the present moment, because it extends beyond it ; and consequently the future imperfect must be employed, *el general ha mandado que todos los que desertaren, sean arcabuceados*.

N. B. The same distinction must also be noticed in the use of the pluperfect and the future perfect of this mood ; as, the general ordered that all those who *might have deserted*, should be shot, *el general mandó que todos los que hubieran desertado, fuesen arcabuceados*, the general has ordered that all those who *may have deserted*, be shot, *el general ha mandado que todos los que hubieran desertado, sean arcabuceados*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

This tense denotes an action as present, without any distinction of persons, and at an indefinite time, which time is defined by the verb that generally governs this mood ; as, *le oí cantar* ; *le oygo cantar* ; *le oíré cantar*, I heard him sing ; I hear him sing ; I shall hear him sing.

PERFECT.

This tense denotes an action as past, without distinction of persons, and indefinitely in regard to time ; as, *me acordé de haber cantado*, *me acuerdo de haber cantado*, *me acordaré siempre de haber cantado*, I remembered to have sung ; I remember to have sung ; I shall always remember to have sung.

Observation.

The infinitive partakes so much of the nature of a verbal noun in Spanish, that it admits even to be declined with the definite article ; as, *á veces es fortuna el ser pobre*, sometimes it is lucky to be poor ; *al volver de Londres me encontré con tus dos cartas*, on my return from London I found your two letters. The infinitive is also used in an absolute manner, (chiefly at the beginning of a sentence,) and then it is equivalent to some tense of the verb with the conjunction *si* ; as, *á saber yo que no hubiera venido*, had I known that he would not have come ; which is the same as, *si yo hubiera sabido que*, &c., if I had known that, &c.

GERUND.

The gerund describes an action in a state of progression at a certain time, defined either by

some verb which governs the gerund, or by some circumstances expressed in the sentence ; as, *iba, va, or irá cantando por las calles*, he went, goes, or will go, singing through the streets ; *temiendo que se lo rehusen, no se atreverá á pedirlo*, fearing that they will refuse it to him, he will not dare to ask for it.

COMPOUND OF THE GERUND.

The compound of the gerund denotes the action as perfected ; as, *habiendo escrito la carta, la embie*, having written the letter, I sent it ; *habiendo leído el libro, se le volvió*, having read the book, I returned it to him.

PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

This participle when joined to the verb *haber* denotes time past ; as, *habíamos escrito*, we had written : * when joined to the verb *ser*, in order to form what is called the passive voice, it denotes the time represented by the tense of the verb : as, *era, es, or será amada*, she was, is, or will be, loved ; but in all cases it denotes the action as perfected.

AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS SUBJECT.

RULE 109. The verb and its subject agree in number and person ; as

<i>El maestro enseña,</i>	The master teaches.
<i>Nosotros obedecemos,</i>	We obey.
<i>Los soldados pelearon,</i>	The soldiers fought.

RULE 110. If the subject of the verb be a collective noun, the verb may be put in the plural ; as

* See what has been said on the Use of the Compound Tenses, page 195.

Una multitud entráron, A multitude entered.
Una tropa salieron, A crowd went out.

Note a.—It is to be observed that all collective nouns do not admit the verb in the plural; regard must be had to the nature of their signification, concerning which the Spanish Academy has given the following directions.

Collectives Definite,* or nouns which denote a number of determinate persons or things, must have the verb in the singular; as, *el exercito venció*, the army conquered; *el rebaño perecerá*, the flock will perish; *la arboleda nos abrigó*, the grove sheltered us.

Collectives Indefinite, or nouns which signify a number of indeterminate persons or things, may have the verb in the plural, as may be seen in the foregoing examples.

RULE 111. A verb having different persons for its subjects, agrees with the pronoun understood; as

<i>El rey y la reyna (ellos)</i>	The king and queen
<i>entraron</i>	(they) came in.
<i>Tus hermanas y yo (no-)</i>	Thy sisters and I (we)
<i>sotros) iremos allá</i>	will go there to-
<i>mañana,</i>	morrow.
<i>Es preciso que sus hijas</i>	It is necessary that
<i>y tu (vosotros) vayais</i>	his daughters and
<i>allá,</i>	you (ye) may go
	there.

RULE 112. If a verb has several subjects not connected by a conjunction, it agrees generally with the last; as

<i>Esquadras, exércitos, di-</i>	Fleets, armies, money,
<i>nero, todo se sacrificó,</i>	all was sacrificed.
<i>Humillaciones, condes-</i>	Humiliations, submis-
<i>condencias, todo se</i>	sions, every thing
<i>sufrió,</i>	was endured.

* See page 30.

Note a.—If a verb has two or more subjects, and the said subjects be connected by any other conjunctive conjunction than *y*, the verb generally agrees in number with the last; as, *no solamente la madre y las hijas, sino tambien el padre habia muerto entonces*, not only the mother and daughters, but the father also *was* then dead; *no solamente el padre y la madre, sino tambien las hijas habian muerto*, not only the father and mother, but also the daughters *were* dead.

Note b.—If a verb has two subjects, joined by the conjunction *y*, and postponed, it is commonly put in the singular; as, *Nunca me ha sido mas necesario tu auxilio y tu asistencia*, Never *have* your assistance and help been more necessary to me. If the subjects are in different numbers, the verb agrees with the one which is nearest to it; as, *la entrada solo la conozco yo y mis camaradas*, only I and my comrades *are acquainted with* the entrance.

Note c.—Verbs agree with the first person plural when their subject is a common noun in which the speaker is included; as, *los Romanos amamos la libertad*, we Romans love liberty.

Observation.

When the verb *to like* is rendered by *gustar*, or *to want* by *faltar*, the objective case of the verb in English becomes the subject of it in Spanish, and the subject of the English verb is changed into the first objective case of the corresponding personal pronoun, according to Rules 49 and 51; as, *The congregation did not like the preacher*, *no le gustó al auditorio el predicador*: they do not like his style, *no les gusta su estilo*: children like better to play than to study, *mas les gusta á los niños jugar que estudiar*: she will never like novels, *nunca le gustarán á ella las novelas*: the poor always want riches, and the rich often want charity, *á los pobres les faltan siempre riquezas, y á los ricos les falta amenudo caridad*.—N. B. The verb *gustar* may be made to retain sometimes the same subject, as in English, but then the regimen must be preceded by the preposition *de*; as, *los niños gustan mas de jugar que de estudiar*. See also Observation after *Caber*, page 164; and *to fancy*, Colloquial Idioms, Exercises, page 109.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

RULE 113. An active transitive verb governs the noun to which its energy passes, in the objective case; as

El la mató,

He killed her.

Escribirémos cartas, We shall write letters.
Ella desprecia las riquezas, She despises riches.

RULE 114. Active verbs govern their objective case with the preposition *á*, if it is a person; as
Venció al enemigo, He conquered the enemy.
Mataron al gefe, They killed the chief.
Mandó al ambaxador, He sent the ambassador.
Empleó á su ministro, He employed his minister.
El desprecia á su padre, He despises his father.

Observation.

The foregoing rule is given here as it is stated by the Spanish Academy, and as it has been copied by all the writers on Spanish grammar with whom I am acquainted. It seems to me, nevertheless, that the preposition *á* is not introduced, because the objective case does represent a person; but in order to point out the objective case of the verb, because it cannot in general be discovered in Spanish by its place in the sentence; thus, Hercules killed *Anteus*, may correctly be expressed in the six following ways; (1st) *Hércules mató á Anteon*; (2d) *Mató á Anteon Hércules*; (3d) *á Anteon Hércules mató*; (4th) *Mató Hércules á Anteon*; (5th) *Hércules á Anteon mató*; (6th) *á Anteon mató Hércules*. It is evident that in this sentence, were it not for the preposition *á*, the objective case of *matar* could not possibly be discovered.

This being, in my opinion, the only reason for introducing the said preposition, it necessarily follows; *First*, that the preposition *á* may be dispensed with before persons whenever the objective case of the verb is sufficiently conspicuous without it; as, *Acabó disciendome que si queria vender mi mula, él conocia un mulatero que acaso la compraria*, He concluded, saying, that if I wished to sell my mule, he knew a jockey who perhaps would buy it. (Gil Blas, ch. 2.) *Secondly*, That the preposition *á* ought to be used when the subject and objective case represent inanimate substances, and both are in the same number; as, *la preposicion rige al nombre*, the preposition governs the noun; *los verbos rigen*

á sus acusativos, verbs govern *their accusatives*. (Grammar of the Academy.) *Thirdly*, That it ought likewise to be used when the subject of the verb is a person, and the objective case an inanimate substance, provided they are both in the same number, and the subject is only understood in Spanish; as, *respetaba en aquella fuga al sagrado derecho, que la hacia lícita y aun necesaria*, I respected in that flight *the sacred right*, which made it lawful and even necessary. (Gil Bl. ch. 14.) *Fourthly*, That in order to prevent ambiguity it is better to omit the said preposition, when the sentence contains two objective cases of persons in the same number, one of which is governed in English by the verb, and the other by the preposition *to*; as, we shall introduce *the earl* to the marchioness, *introduciremos el conde á la marquesa*; we shall introduce *the marchioness* to the earl, *introduciremos la marquesa al conde*. *Al oír semejante tasa dí á todos los Diablos la Sobrina del Gobernador de Filipinas*. (Gil Bl. ch. 18.)

RULE 115. Passive verbs require the preposition *de* or *por** before the noun which denotes the agent; as

Dios es temido de or por los malos, God is feared by the wicked.

La virtud es amada de or por los buenos, Virtue is beloved by the good.

Ella es estimada de or por su hermano, She is esteemed by her brother.

El es aborrecido de or por todos, He is detested by all.

El fué herido por su antagonista, He was wounded by his antagonist.

El reo fué sentenciado por el juez, The culprit was sentenced by the judge.

La casa fué derribada por el viento, The house was overthrown by the wind.

Note a.—The prepositions *de* or *por* cannot be indiscriminately

* See page 145.

applied to the agent of a passive verb, as may be seen in the foregoing examples: regard must be had to the nature of the action signified by the verb. If the action implies simply an effort of the mind, the preposition *de* or *por* may in general be indifferently used; See the first four examples of this rule: but in all other cases the preposition *por* only should be generally employed; See the last three examples.

RULE 116. Neuter verbs, active intransitive, as well as some reflective verbs, have a regimen with *de*, which denotes what causes their effects; as

<i>Bramar de corage,</i>	To roar with passion.
<i>Enfermar de calentura,</i>	To sicken with a fever.
<i>Correrse de la pregunta,</i>	To blush at the question.
<i>Perecer de hambre,</i>	To perish with hunger.
<i>Reventar de risa,</i>	To burst with laughter.
<i>Saltar de gozo,</i>	To leap for joy.
<i>Tiritar de frio,</i>	To shiver with cold.

To these the following may be also added :

<i>Adolecer de enfermedad,</i>	To be seized with illness.
<i>Agraviarse de algo,</i>	To take offence at something.
<i>Alegrarse de las nuevas,</i>	To rejoice at the news.
<i>Avergonzarse de la respuesta,</i>	To be ashamed at the answer.
<i>Calarse de agua,</i>	To be wet through.
<i>Disgustarse de alguna cosa,</i>	To be disgusted at something.
<i>Fastidiarse de algo,</i>	To be cloyed with something.
<i>Morir de dolor,</i>	To die of grief.
<i>Convencerse de lo contrario,</i>	To be convinced of the contrary.
<i>Comerse de envidia,</i>	To be gnawed with envy.
<i>Bufar de ira,</i>	To swell with rage.
<i>Atemorizarse de algo,</i>	To be frightened at something.
<i>Confundirse de lo que se ve,</i>	To be confounded at what one sees.
<i>Espantarse de la pregunta,</i>	To be astonished at the question.
<i>Aírarse de la respuesta,</i>	To be angry at the answer.

Llevarse de alguna pasión, To be led away by some passion.

Ofenderse de la conducta, To be affronted at the conduct.

Abochornarse de la conversacion, To blush at the conversation.

Note a.—If the regimen of these verbs is an infinitive, the same preposition is placed before it; as, *cansarse de trabajar*, to tire one's self with labour; *me alegraré de saberlo*, I shall rejoice to know it.

Note b.—The verb *sentirse* as well as the impersonal *pesar* may be added to this rule; as, *ella se sintió mucho de su modo de pensar*, she was exceedingly hurt at his way of thinking: *le pesó mucho de la muerte de su marido*, she was much afflicted at her husband's death; *me pesa mucho de habértelo dicho*, I regret greatly that I told it to thee.

RULE 117. Verbs implying motion to, towards, or from, a place, govern the noun denoting whence the motion proceeds with *de*, the noun which points out its direction with *á*, and the noun expressing the space through which it passes with *por*: example;

Fueron de Londres á Chelsea, por el Parque, They went from London to Chelsea, through the Park.

Vengo de la comedia, y me voy adonde estuve anoche, y donde* pienso quedarme hasta mañana,* I come from the play, and am going whither I was last night, and where I think I shall stay till to-morrow.

Note a.—When we mean to denote the place to which the moving body seems directed only, we use *hacia* or *para* instead of *á*; as, *vá hacia el Parque, pero no creo que llegue allá*, he is going towards the Park, but I do not imagine he will reach it; *salí para Londres*, he set out for London.

Note b.—Verbs of motion have their regimen governed, in Spanish by the preposition *en* or *por*, when it implies the space within which the motion is repeated; thus we say, *volar por el ayre*, to fly through the air; and *columpiarse en el ayre*, to swing in the air, &c.

The following verbs belong to this rule:
Abalanzarse á los peligros, To rush on danger.

* See the author's Synonyms, page 11.

<i>Abordar una nave á otra,</i>	To bring one ship alongside of another.
<i>Apelar á otro tribunal,</i>	To appeal to another court.
<i>Apropiquarese á alguno,</i>	To draw nigh any one.
<i>Arrojarse á la batalla,</i>	To dart forwards at the battle.
<i>Ausentarse de Madrid,</i>	To quit Madrid.
<i>Balancear á tal parte,</i>	To vibrate towards such a side.
<i>Caminar por el monte,</i>	To travel the mountain.
<i>Ladearse á tal parte,</i>	To incline to such a side.
<i>Acercarse á la lumbre,</i>	To draw nigh the fire.
<i>Convertirse á Dios,</i>	To turn to God.
<i>Concurrir á la junta,</i>	To attend the meeting.
<i>Mandar la carta á España,</i>	To send the letter to Spain.
<i>Traer vinos de Francia,</i>	To bring wines from France.
<i>Embiar á las Indias,</i>	To send to the Indies.

Observation.

When verbs implying motion *to* or *from* a place have an infinitive for their regimen, this is always preceded by the prepositions *de* or *á*; examples, *iré á verla*, I shall go and see her; *vaya vm. á buscarle*, go and find him; *vengo de ver á mi padre*, I come from seeing my father; *volví á preguntarselo, pero ya se habia ido á visitar sus enfermos*, I came back to ask him about it, but he was already gone to visit his patients. N.B. The verb *volver* is also used before an infinitive, when we mean to denote the repeating of the action implied in the infinitive; as, *volví á leer la carta*, I read the letter over once more; *volverá á pedirlo*, he will ask for it again; *volvimos á entrar en la casa*, we re-entered the house.

RULE 118. Verbs of *demanding*, and of *granting*, or *refusing*, generally govern the person to whom their energy is directed with the preposition *á*; as

<i>Pide perdon á Dios,</i>	Ask pardon <i>from</i> God.
<i>El amo negó la licencia al criado,</i>	The master denied leave <i>to the</i> servant.
<i>Los mil ducados, no me los pida vm. á mí,</i>	The thousand ducats, do not ask them <i>of</i> me,

<i>pídase los</i> al Traidor	ask them of the Trai-
Don Rafael. Gil Blas,	tor Don Raphael.
book xi.	

Under this Rule are comprehended verbs of *bor-*
rowing and *lending*; as

<i>Pidió prestado el dinero</i> á su	He borrowed the money
tio,	from his uncle.
<i>Prestaré mi bolsa</i> á tu hijo,	I will lend my purse to thy
	son.

Verbs of *buying* and *selling*.

<i>Compré la casa</i> á su mari-	I bought the house of her
do,	husband.
<i>Vendió el cortijo</i> á su cuña-	He sold the farm to his
do,	brother in law.

Verbs of *promising* and *offering*.

<i>Prometió su hija</i> al conde,	He promised his daughter
	to the earl.
<i>Ofreció* su casa</i> al embaxa-	He offered his house to
dor,	the ambassador.

Verbs of *giving* and *taking away*; as

<i>Dió el memorial</i> al rey,	He gave the memorial to
	the king.
<i>Legó una manda</i> á la her-	He bequeathed a legacy
mandad,	to the society.
<i>Robé todas sus pedrerías</i> á	I stole all the jewels from
la muger de Don Rodrigo,	the wife of Don Roderic.

Verbs of *owing* and *paying*; as

<i>Debo mucho</i> á mi amigo,	I owe a great deal to my
	friend.
<i>Pagó la deuda</i> á los alba-	He paid the debt to the
céas,	executors.
<i>Volveré el dinero</i> al banque-	I shall return the money
ro,	to the banker.

* *Ofrecer* is often used in the sense of promising; as, *Te ofrezco guardarle, me respondió ella prontamente*, I promise thee to keep it, she answered me immediately. Gil Blas, b. iv. ch. 5.

Verbs of *questioning, declaring, recommending,*
and *thanking* ; as

<i>Pregunté al mesonero si</i>	<i>I asked the innkeeper</i>
<i>tenia algun pescado,</i>	<i>whether he had any fish.</i>
<i>El juez declaró la sentencia</i>	<i>The judge pronounced the</i>
<i>al reo,</i>	<i>sentence on the criminal.</i>
<i>Escribí á mi madre lo que</i>	<i>I wrote what he said to my</i>
<i>dixo,</i>	<i>mother.</i>
<i>Encomendará mi negocio</i>	<i>He will recommend my bu-</i>
<i>á un amigo suyo,</i>	<i>siness to a friend of his.</i>
<i>Agradezco á vm. este favor,</i>	<i>I thank you for this favour.</i>

Note a.—If the person to whom the energy of the verb is directed is represented by a pronoun of the third person, it is translated *te, les,* for both genders ; as, *el le dió un libro,* he gave to her a book ; *ella les concedió el favor,* she granted the favour to them. See Rule 51.

Note b.—When the person represents not only to whom the action is directed, but to whom the advantage or disadvantage accrues, we use *para* instead of *á* ; as, *mandé el libro para ella,* I sent the book for her ; *entregaré al criado las cartas para su amo,* I shall deliver the letters to the servant for his master.

Note c.—When the verb *preguntar* is used in the sense of *to inquire for,* or *to inquire after,* it requires *por* before its regimen ; as, *pregunté al hijo por su padre,* I asked the son for his father ; *preguntarémos por él,* we shall ask after him.

Note d.—Verbs of *answering* and *replying* govern with *á* the noun to which their energy passes, whether it be of a person or thing ; as, *repliqué al juez,* I replied to the judge ; *responderé á su carta,* I shall answer his letter.

Note e.—*Hablar* has its regimen either with *con* or *á* ; as, *he hablado al or con el sujeto sobre el asunto,* I have spoken to or with the person on the subject.

Note f.—*Distribuir* is followed by *entre* ; as, *distribuyó su cauda entre los pobres,* he distributed his wealth among the poor.

The following and similar verbs belong to this Rule :

<i>Comunicar luz á otra parte,</i>	<i>To give light to another place.</i>
<i>Inspirar la venganza á alguno,</i>	<i>To inspire some one with vengeance.</i>
<i>Participar algo á muchos,</i>	<i>To impart something to many.</i>
<i>Permitir mucho á alguno,</i>	<i>To allow a great deal to some one</i>

Restituir lo robado á su dueño, To restore what was stolen to its owner.
Consagrarse á Dios, To consecrate one's self to God.

RULE 119. Verbs implying *yielding*, or *resistance*, generally require *á* before the regimen to which their energy is directed; as

Aunque declare ella su parecer, yo no soy uno de los que someten su opinion* al dictámen* de otros,* Although she may declare her opinion, I am not one of those who submit their opinion to the opinion of others.
Me opondré á las leyes, I shall oppose *the laws*.

Under this Rule the following and similar verbs may be comprehended :

Abandonarse á su suerte, To abandon one's self to one's fate.
Acceder á la propuesta, To accede to the proposal.
Acogerse á alguno, To have recourse to somebody.
Acomodarse al reglamento, To conform with the regulation.
Acostumbrarse al trabajo, To become used to labour.
Adherir al mismo dictámen, To adhere to the same opinion.
Agregarse á otros, To aggregate one's self to others.
Ajustarse á la razon, To conform to reason.
Apegarse á algo, To adhere to something.
Arreglarse á lo justo, To regulate one's self by what is just.
Ceder á los ruegos, To yield to the entreaties.
Ceñirse á poco, To limit one's self to little.
Condescender á los ruegos, To condescend to the entreaties.
Humillarse á alguno, To humble one's self to somebody.
Rendirse á la razon, To yield to reason.

* See the author's Synonyms, page 177.

Sujetarse á las leyes, To subject one's self to the laws.

RULE 120. Verbs of *comparing* generally require *á** before the noun with which the comparison is made ; as

El hijo se parece al padre, The son resembles *the father.*

La hija se semeja á la madre, The daughter is like *the mother.*

Se ha comparado el mundo á un teatro, The world has been compared *to a stage.*

Note a.—*Comparar* requires *con* when the resemblance is tried ; as, *Comparemos el tiempo con la eternidad y veremos la diferencia,* let us compare *time with eternity* and we shall see the difference.

RULE 121. Verbs implying *to belong, to concern, to happen, to play, to suit,* as well as most of the impersonal verbs, generally require *á** before the noun to which their energy is directed ; as

Pertenecemos† á la tierra, We belong *to the earth.*

Los bienes de un deudor corresponden† á sus acreedores, The property of a debtor belongs *to his creditors.*

Importa á los Cristianos, It concerns *Christians.*

Desgracias acontecen á los incautos, Misfortunes happen *to the unwary.*

Jugará á los naipes, He will play *at cards.*

Todo le parecia á ella un sueño, Every thing seemed *to her a dream.*

Le convenia á ella la propuesta, The proposal was *advantageous to her.*

Note a.—*Ser*, when used in the sense of *to belong*, requires *de* instead of *á* before the possessor ; as, *la casa es de mi tío*, the house belongs *to my uncle.* See Rule 95.

The following and similar verbs are comprised in this Rule :

Aparecerse á muchos, To become suddenly visible to many.

* See Rule 118, note *a.*

† See the author's Synonyms, page 171.

<i>Arrogarse algo á sí,</i>	To arrogate something to one's self.
<i>Atribuirlo á otros,</i>	To attribute it to others.

RULE 122. Verbs of *condemning* require the punishment preceded by the preposition *á*; as

<i>Condenarán al reo á galeras,</i>	They will condemn the culprit <i>to the galleys</i> .
<i>Sentenciaron al desertor á ser arcabuceado,</i>	They sentenced the deserter <i>to be shot</i> .

RULE 123. Verbs implying *plenty* or *want*, *remembrance* or *oblivion*, have a regimen generally preceded by *de*; as

<i>Llenó la casa de gente,</i>	He filled the house <i>with people</i> .
--------------------------------	--

<i>Acuerdate de tu Criador,</i>	Remember <i>thy Creator</i> .
<i>Se ha olvidado de mí,*</i>	He has forgotten <i>me</i> .

To these the following may be added:

<i>Abundar de riquezas,</i>	To abound in riches.
<i>Ahitar de manjares,</i>	To be surfeited with meats.
<i>Apercibirse de armas,</i>	To provide one's self with arms.
<i>Armarse de paciencia,</i>	To arm one's self with patience.
<i>Bordar de oro,</i>	To embroider in gold.
<i>Cargar de trigo,</i>	To load with wheat.
<i>Abstenerse de la fruta,</i>	To abstain from fruit.
<i>Ahorrar de razones,</i>	To spare words.
<i>Descargarse de algo,</i>	To exonerate one's self from something.
<i>Deshacerse de la casa,</i>	To get rid of the house.
<i>Desnudarse del vestido,</i>	To pull off the suit.
<i>Despoblarse de gente,</i>	To depopulate.

RULE 124. Verbs implying *praising*, *blaming*,

* *Traer á la memoria*, to remind, and *olvidar*, to forget, do not admit *de* with their regimen; as, *le traxé á la memoria la promesa*, I reminded him of the promise; *olvidó la respuesta*, he forgot the answer.

absolving, using, repenting, jeering, and pitying, generally have a regimen also with *de* ; as

No te alabes de valiente, Do not extol thy courage.

El se gloria de sabio, He makes a boast of his wisdom.

Se arrepentió de sus delitos, He repented his crimes.

Por la noche nos juntabamos, y nos réamos de los que *se habían compadecido* de nosotros *por el día*. Gil Blas, ch. 5. At night we met, and used to laugh at those who had pitied us in the course of the day.

Note a.—When the regimen of the above verbs is an infinitive, it requires the same preposition before it ; as, *se arrepentió mucho de no haberme pedido mas*, he repented greatly not having asked me more. (Gil Blas, ch. 15.)

RULE 125. Verbs implying *distance* or *separation* generally require *de* before the noun which is not their own direct regimen ; as

Me alejaré de mi tierra, I shall remove far from my country.

Apártate de la ocasion, Avoid the opportunity.

Quando despertó del sueño, When he awoke from his sleep.

Escaparon de la prision, They escaped from the prison.

N. B. All verbs denoting motion from a place are also comprehended here. See Rule 117.

The following verbs may likewise be added :

Apearse del caballo, To alight from the horse.

Apearse de su opinion, To alter one's opinion.

Apelar de la sentencia, To appeal from the sentence.

<i>Asegurarse del peligro,</i>	To shelter one's self from the danger.
<i>Bazar de su autoridad,</i>	To recede from one's authority.
<i>Convalecer de enfermedad,</i>	To recover from sickness.
<i>Degenerar de su nacimiento,</i>	To degenerate from one's ancestors.
<i>Deponer de un empleo,</i>	To depose from an employment.
<i>Derivar de otra autoridad,</i>	To derive from another's authority.
<i>Descansar del trabajo,</i>	To rest from labour.
<i>Descender de buen linage,</i>	To come from a good family.
<i>Desconfiar de alguno,</i>	To mistrust any one.
<i>Desertar del regimiento,</i>	To desert from the regiment.
<i>Desembarcar de la nave,</i>	To disembark from the vessel.
<i>Extraer una cosa de otra,</i>	To extract one thing from another.
<i>Mudarse de casa,</i>	To change one's dwelling.
<i>Salir del peligro,</i>	To come out safe from danger.
<i>Zafarse de alguno</i>	To get one's self away from any one.

RULE 126. Most verbs admit a regimen with *en*, denoting wherein the meaning of the said verbs is conspicuous ; as

<i>Los condenarán en las costas,</i>	They will be condemned <i>in the costs.</i>
<i>Ella crece en virtudes,</i>	She increases <i>in virtue.</i>
<i>Dividió el sermón en tres puntos,</i>	He divided the sermon <i>into three parts.</i>
<i>Siempre pensaré en ti,</i>	I shall always think <i>on thee.</i>

The following verbs may be included :

<i>Abrasarse en deseos,</i>	To burn with desires.
<i>Abundar en riquezas,</i>	To abound in riches.

<i>Aferrarse en su opinion,</i>	To be tenacious of one's opinion.
<i>Andar en pleytos,</i>	To be engaged in lawsuits.
<i>Barar en tierra,</i>	To run aground.
<i>Consentir en la propuesta,</i>	To consent to the proposal.
<i>Dar en manias,</i>	To be seized with some mania.
<i>Encenagarse en vicios,</i>	To wallow in vice.
<i>Esmerarse en algo,</i>	To exert one's self in any thing.
<i>Hallarse en la fiesta,</i>	To be present at the feast.
<i>Imponer en algo,</i>	To instruct in any thing.
<i>Prorumpir en lágrimas,</i>	To burst into tears.
<i>Redundar en beneficio de otro,</i>	To redound to another's benefit.

Note a.—If these verbs have for their regimen an infinitive, it must be preceded also by *en*; as, *deleytarse en oír*, to take delight in hearing; *ocuparse en leer*, to employ one's self in reading; *Hemos menester pensar en ayudarte*, We must think on helping thee. (Gil Blas, b. i. ch. 1.)

RULE 127. Verbs denoting *behaviour* generally require *con* before the persons towards whom it is directed; as

<i>Ella se ha airado con su hermano,</i>	She is affronted with her brother.
<i>El se casó con su prima,</i>	He married his cousin.
<i>Me desahogaré con mi padre,</i>	I will unbosom myself to my father.
<i>Ajustarse con alguno,</i>	To settle with any one.

Note a.—When the verb *meterse* is used in the sense of *to meddle*, or *to interfere*, it requires *con* before the noun if it be a person, and *en* if it be a thing; as, *Aconsejote, amigo Blas, que en adelante no te vuelvas á meter con frayles*, I advise thee, friend Blas, not to meddle in future with friars. (Gil Blas, ch. 3.) *No te metas en negocios ajenos*, Do not interfere with the affairs of others.

Observation.

When there is a noun in the sentence denoting the means whereby the action of the verb is effected, it may

be governed with *con*, *de*, or *á*, according to the following rules :—1st, If the noun signifies the instrument or weapon with which the action was done, it requires *con* before it ; as, *él la mató con el pié*, he killed her *with the foot* ; *con un puñal*, *with a poniard* ; *con un martillo*, *with a hammer*. 2d, If the noun is the name of the injury or blow given with the weapon or instrument, it requires to be preceded by *de* or *con* when used in the singular number, and by *á* when in the plural ; as, *él la mató de*, or, *con un puntapie*, he killed her *with a kick* ; *á puntapies*, *with kicks* ; *de*, or, *con una puñalada*, *with a stab* of a poniard ; *á puñaladas*, *by several stabs* with a poniard ; *de*, or, *con un martillazo*, *with the blow of a hammer* ; *á martillazos*, *by giving several blows with a hammer* ; *Oyes, Gil Blas, trata de hacer tu deber, por que te advierto que si te acobardas con un pistoletazo, te levanto la tapa de los sesos.* (Gil Blas, b. i. ch. 9.) *Decia él que el Cid Ruidiaz habia sido muy buen caballero, pero que no tenia que ver con el caballero de la ardiente espada, que de solo un revés habia partido por medio dos fieros y descomunales gigantes*, He used to say that Cid Ruidiaz had been a very brave knight, but that he was not to be compared to the knight of the burning sword, who *with a single back stroke* had cut in halves two fierce and monstrous giants. (Don Quixote, b. i. ch. 1.)

ON VERBAL REGIMEN.

Government, as has been already defined, is the power which one word has over another, when it determines its case, tense, or mood : therefore, when one verb requires another in any mood in particular, the second verb is said to be the Regimen or Government of the first verb.

A verb may have its regimen in the infinitive, indicative, or subjunctive mood ; as, *No me podía mi tío proponer cosa mas de mi gusto*, My uncle *could not propose* to me any thing more to my taste. (Gil Blas, ch. 1.) *Díxome este que pensaba*

partir antes de amanecer, The latter said to me that he meant to set out before daybreak. (Ibid. ch. 2.) *Pensé que nunca acabase*, I thought that he never would have finished. (Ibid.)

The regimen of a verb sometimes admits a preposition, whether it is governed in the infinitive or subjunctive mood ; as, *Apliquéme despues á la lógica*, que me enseñó á discurrir y á argumentar *sin término*, I applied myself afterwards to logic, which taught me to reason, and to argue without bounds. (Ibid. ch. 1.) *Y me dió tantas gracias como yo espolazos á la mula*, para que quanto ántes me alejase de él, And he gave me as many thanks, as I kicks to the mule, that she might remove me from him as soon as possible. (Ibid.)

REGIMEN IN THE INFINITIVE.

RULE 128. If two verbs come together in English, and the second is in the infinitive, this mood is in general likewise used in Spanish ; as

<i>Quiero aprender,</i>	<i>I wish to learn.</i>
<i>Debemos obedecer,</i>	<i>We ought to obey.</i>

N. B. If the English infinitive can be resolved with a conjunction into another mood, the Spanish infinitive should seldom be used. See Observation after Rule 132.

RULE 129. Verbs denoting *to dare*, *to begin*, *to teach*, *to learn*, *to compel*, generally require á before the infinitive which they govern ; as

<i>No me atrevo á salir,</i>	<i>I dare not go out.</i>
<i>Empezó á llover,</i>	<i>It began to rain.</i>
<i>Se puso á hacerlo,</i>	<i>He set about it.</i>
<i>Aprenderá á escribir,</i>	<i>He will learn to write.</i>
<i>Me enseña á baylar,</i>	<i>He teaches me to dance.</i>

RULE 130. Verbs implying *to submit*, *to oppose*

to exhort, or invite, to prepare, to assist, to be destined, and to accustom one's self, generally require á before the infinitive which they govern; as

Me consideré obligado á responder. I considered myself obliged to answer.

Gil Blas, ch. 1.

Y así le convidé á cenar conmigo, And so I invited him to sup with me.

Ibid. ch. 2.

Exhortaronme á vivir Cristianamente, They exhorted me to live like a Christian.

Ibid. ch. 1.

Yo seguí al capitán, y mientras le ayudaba á desnudar, I followed the captain, and whilst I helped him to undress.

Ibid. ch. 5.

Y disimulando mi sentimiento, me dispuse á servir á una gente tan honrada, And disguising my feelings, I prepared myself to wait on such honourable folks.

Ibid. ch. 5.

Note a.—Many verbs govern with the preposition *á* an infinitive, when it denotes the means whereby is effected whatever the governing verb signifies; as, *él se mata á trabajar*, he kills himself with working; *ella se destriza á llorar*, she wears herself out with weeping.

RULE 131. Verbs signifying *to abstain, to cease, to deprive, to finish*, govern the infinitive with *de*; as

Se abstiene de beber vino, He abstains from drinking wine.

Me has privado de verla, Thou hast deprived me of her sight.

Acabaré de escribir á la una, I shall leave off writing at one.

Cesaron de atormentarme, They ceased to torment me,

Note a.—The verb *acabar* is always used to translate the English expressions *to have just*, or *to be just*; as, I have just read your letter, *acabo de leer su carta de vm.*; his father is just arrived, *acaba de llegar su padre.*

Note b.—The verb *servirse* in the sense of *to be pleased*, or *to condescend*, requires *de* before the infinitive following; as, *servase vm. de echar algunos reales en ese sombrero*, Be pleased to throw some reals into that hat. Gil Blas, b. i. ch. 1.

Note c.—The verb *guardarse* requires *de* before the following infinitive, and has the peculiar property of imparting a negative quality to the said infinitive: as, *yo me guardaré bien de hacerlo*, I shall take care *not* to do it; *Y yo me guardé bien de quejarme*, &c. And I took good care *not* to complain. Gil Blas, ch. 10.

Note d.—When the infinitive follows a noun which it serves as it were to qualify, it requires to be preceded by the preposition *de*; as, do me the favour to send me, *hágame vm. el favor de mandarme*; *no tenia gana de reir*, I had no inclination to laugh; *tuvo la curiosidad de preguntarmelo*, he had the curiosity to ask me about it; *si tenia la dicha de llegar á aquel lugar*, if I had the happiness to reach that place. For other infinitives requiring *á* or *de* before them, see Observation after Rule 117.

Note e.—When, in Spanish, the verb which governs the infinitive is a reflexive verb, the Spanish infinitive generally remains in the active voice, although in English the sentence may require a passive construction; as, *Mientras los disponian trabé conversacion con la mesonera, que hasta entonces no se habia dexado ver*, Whilst they prepared them I entered into conversation with the landlady, who until then had not suffered herself *to be seen*. (Gil Blas, ch. 2.) But a reflexive verb may have another reflexive verb for its government in the infinitive; as, *Y así no me atrevi á exponerme á una accion tan poco segura*, And so I did not dare to expose myself to an action so little safe. (Ibid. ch. 8.) N. B. The infinitive when governed by *mandar*, or *hacer*, is also generally left in the active voice; as, *El mesonero, que no deseaba otra cosa, hizo cocer luego la trucha*, &c. The landlord, who wished for nothing better, ordered the trout *to be dressed* immediately. (Gil Blas, ch. 2.)

Observation.

Verbs often have their regimen in the infinitive with the preposition *para* or *por*;^{*} and although in almost every instance these prepositions are uniformly translated *to* in English, yet they can by no means be indifferently applied in Spanish.

Verbs require *para* before their regimen when it denotes *the effect* or *consequences* resulting from the action contained in the governing verb; as, *muevo los pies para*

* See the author's Synonyms, page 1.

andar, I move my feet *to walk*, or, *in order to walk*; and *por* when the regimen denotes both the cause and effect, that is to say, when we wish to express that the subject of the governing verb was stimulated to the performance of the action by the effect or consequence resulting from it; as, *corro por calentarme los pies*, I run *to warm* my feet, or for the sake of warming my feet. *Dios nos ha dado la lengua para hablar*, God has given us the tongue *to speak*, or, *in order to speak*; *hay muchos que por hablar dicen disparates*, there are many who *to speak*, or, for the sake of speaking, talk nonsense. *Para reparar esta falta determiné vender mi mula*, *To repair* this error I determined to sell my mule. (Gil Blas, ch. 2.) *Señora, el Cielo os ha enviado un libertador; levantaos para seguirme*, Madam, Heaven has sent you a deliverer; rise *to follow* me. (Ibid. ch. 10.) *Y me sentaré á la mesa solo por hacer compañía á vm. comiendo algunos bocados meramente por complacerle, y por mostrar quanto aprecio sus finezas*, And I shall sit at table *only to keep* you company, eating some mouthfuls *merely to please* you, and *to show* how much I value your attentions. (Ibid. ch. 2.) *Me muero por merecer el honor de ser uno de sus compañeros*, I long *to merit* the honour of being one of your companions. (Ibid. ch. 7.)

The verbs *estar* and *quedar* require *por* before the infinitive which they govern, when we mean to express that the action denoted by the said infinitive has not been completed; as, *la carta estaba por escribir*, the letter was not written; *nos quedan dos leguas por andar*, we have yet six miles to go. See Observation, p. 140.

REGIMEN IN THE INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.

RULE 132. When two verbs come together in English, and the latter is governed in the indicative or subjunctive with a conjunction, the Spanish verb will in general admit the same mood; as

Dixome este que pensaba partir ántes de a- The latter told me that he meant to set out

*manecer, y que él tendr-
dria cuidado de dis-
pertarme,*

Gil Blas, ch. 2.

before daybreak, and
that he *would take*
care to awake me.

N. B. The conjunction must always be expressed in Spanish, though in English it may be only understood: *as, me dijo que escribiria hoy*, he told me he would write to-day.

Observation.

When the verb which is governed in the infinitive in English may be changed into another mood, the last construction should generally be adopted in Spanish; as, At the same time he took a light and commanded me to follow him, or, commanded that I should follow him, *Al mismo tiempo tomó una luz y me ordenó que le siguiese*. (Gil Blas, ch. 4.) I know her to be (or, I know that she is) your friend, *sé que ella es su amiga de vm.* In general it may be taken for granted, that when the action, &c. denoted by the verb governed, does not immediately refer to the subject of the governing verb, the regimen ought not to be in the infinitive: thus, we say *quiero estudiar*, I wish to study; and *quiero que estudien*, I wish them to study; in the first example the person who wishes, and the person who is to study, are the same, and therefore the regimen is in the infinitive; but as in the second example the person who ought to study is changed, the infinitive cannot be admitted.

RULE 133. Verbs denoting *fitness or necessity, command or permission, desire or joy, wonder or doubt*, and impersonals used interrogatively or negatively, generally have their regimen in the subjunctive; as

*Conviene que venga
mañana,*

*Es menester que vay-
amos allá,*

*Mandó que rindiesen la
plaza,*

It is proper that he should
come to-morrow

We must go there.

He ordered the place to
be given up.

<i>No hay ninguno que</i>	There is no one to go.
<i>vaya,</i>	
<i>Quiero que aprendas,</i>	I wish thee to learn.
<i>Me alegro que se divier-</i>	I am glad that he amuses
<i>ta,</i>	himself.
<i>Me espanto que no lo se-</i>	I wonder at his not
<i>pa,</i>	knowing it.
<i>Dudo que venga hoy,</i>	I doubt his coming to-
	day.

Note a.—The subjunctive should be used after the following conjunctions or conjunctive expressions; *dado que*, granted that; *con tal que*, provided that; *á ménos que*, unless that; *no sea que*, lest; *antes que*, *sin que*, *sea que*, &c.; as, *dado que me escriba, no le responderé*, granted that he should write to me, I will not answer him; *con tal que restituya el dinero*, provided he restores the money; *á ménos que no me pague*, unless he pay me; *para que fuese allí*, in order that he might go there, &c.

Observation.

It is hardly possible to enumerate the verbs which require their regimen in the subjunctive, because the use of this mood generally depends on the nature of the phrase: regard must therefore be had to what has been already said concerning the indicative and the subjunctive or potential mood.* In addition to this it ought to be observed, that the rules which have been given for the prefixing of certain prepositions before the verbal regimen in the infinitive, will generally apply in other instances; for those verbs which require a preposition before their infinitive will sometimes require it, and generally admit it, when they are governed with a conjunction in another mood; as, *Exhortáron me á que todos los dias encomendase á Dios á mi tio.* (Gil Blas, ch. 1.) See Rule 130. *Tuve particular gusto de que hubiese retrucado con tanto ayre las últimas palabras del mesonero,* &c. (Ibid. ch. 2.) See Rule 131, note *d.* *No me admiro de que sea tan estimado en la corte y entre el pueblo, ni de que muchos Señores le hayan señalado pensiones.* (Ibid. b. ii. ch. 7.) See note *a* to Rule 116.

* See page 195 to 213.

Directions for placing the Verbal Regimen in the Subjunctive.

1. The governing verb being in the *present* or the *future imperfect* of the indicative, the verb governed ought to be in the *present* or *perfect* of the subjunctive; as, *le suplico á vm. que venga aquí mañana*, I entreat you to come here to-morrow; *le diré á mi hermano que no salga hasta las tres*, I shall tell my brother not to go out till three o'clock; *dudo que haya llegado aun*, I doubt his having yet arrived; *celebraré que haya logrado el empleo*, I shall be happy to know that he has obtained the situation.

2. If the governing verb be in the *imperfect*, the *perfect indefinite*, or the *pluperfect* of the indicative, the regimen ought to be in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect* of the subjunctive, with the terminations *ra* or *se*; as, *mi hermana queria que viniéramos todos los días*, my sister wished us to come every day; *el gobernador le permitió que saliese*, the governor permitted him to come out; *temí que hubiese venido la semana pasada*, I was afraid that he would have come last week.

3. If the governing verb be in the *perfect definite* or the *future perfect* of the indicative, the regimen must be in the *present* or the *imperfect* of the subjunctive with the termination *ra* or *se*; as, *el rey ha mandado que el embaxador vuelva inmediatamente*, the king has ordered that the ambassador should return immediately; *ya le habrá dicho su padre que no la vuelva á ver*, his father has no doubt already told him not to see her again; *le habrá dicho que viniese para decírselo*, he (most likely) told him to come in order to tell it him.

These directions are not equally applicable in all cases; regard must be had to the meaning of the

governing verb : thus, for example, verbs of *commanding* and of *promising* can never govern their regimen in the *perfect* or *pluperfect* of the subjunctive ; because an order or a promise must necessarily precede its performance. N.B. If the governing verb implies *promise* or *assurance*, the termination *ria* is the only one that can be used. See page 211, No. 8. N. B.

ON THE GERUND.

RULE 134. The English participle present is construed by the gerund in Spanish ; as

The news being certain,	<i>Siendo ciertas las noticias,</i>
I am writing,	<i>Estoy escribiendo.</i>
Walking, or being walking,	<i>Paseando, or estando paseando.</i>
I met them reading,	<i>Los encontré leyendo.</i>

Note a.—When the present participle expresses some circumstance referring to the objective case of the verbs *to see*, or *to hear*, it is construed with the present infinitive ; as, I hear her *singing*, *la oigo cantar* ; I never saw that play *acting*, or being acted, *nunca vi representar esa comedia*.

Note b.—The participle of the verbs *to go*, or *to come*, being preceded in English by any tense of the auxiliary *to be*, is resolved in Spanish into the tense in which the auxiliary verb is ; as, she *is coming*, *ella viene* ; we *were going*, *ibamos*.

RULE 135. Gerunds admit the same preposition before their regimen as the verbs from which they are derived ; as

<i>Arrepintiendose de sus culpas,</i>	Repenting his crimes.
<i>No atreviendose á salir,</i>	Not daring to go out.
<i>Riñendo con todos,</i>	Quarrelling with all.

RULE 136. The present participle, when used

in English as a verbal noun, is resolved into the present of the infinitive in Spanish ; as

The pleasure of *speaking* *El gusto de hablarle.*
to him,

Without *seeing* her, *Sin verla.*

He went a *walking*, *El se fué á pasear.*

Note a.—If the English participle follow the preposition *by*, we may use either the gerund, or the infinitive preceded by *con* ; as, the memory is increased by *exercising* it, *la memoria se aumenta exercitándola*, or *con exercitarla*.

Note b.—When the participle is used in English as a verbal noun, and there is a substantive of the same import in Spanish, this substantive should be preferred to the infinitive ; as, the fear of God is the *beginning* of wisdom, *el temor de Dios es el principio de la sabiduría* ; his *going* is the cause of my *coming*, *su ida es la causa de mi venida*.

COMPOUND OF THE GERUND.

What has been said in the three foregoing rules, and in the first note of the third rule, is also applicable to the compound of the gerund ; as, having written, *habiendo escrito* ; having repented his crimes, *habiendose arrepentido de sus delitos* ; the pleasure of having spoken to him, *el gusto de haberle hablado* ; by having represented, *habiendo representado*, or *con haber representado*. N. B. Instead of the compound, the simple gerund preceded by the preposition *en* is elegantly used ; as, *en diciendo esto se fué*, or *habiendo dicho esto se fué*, having said this he went away.

Observation.

As the gerund is sometimes liable to occasion much ambiguity in a sentence, it is better in such instances to resolve it into a corresponding tense of the same verb, as, we met her coming from home, *la encontramos viniendo de casa*. In this sentence neither the English participle nor the Spanish gerund denotes sufficiently who was coming from home ; it is therefore preferable to

express it thus, *la encontramos quando venia de casa*, that is, we met her as she was coming from home; or, *quando veníamos de casa*, as we were coming from home.

ON THE PARTICIPLE.

RULE 137. The participle is indeclinable when it is employed to form the compound tenses of any verb; as

Mi padre habia venido, My father had come.
Tu hermana habia escrito, Thy sister had written.

Ellos han comprado la casa, They have bought the house.

N.B. The participle ought to be generally close to the auxiliary *haber*.

RULE 138. When the participle is not preceded by the auxiliary *haber*, it assumes all the properties of a verbal adjective, and is consequently declinable; as

Los hombres serán premiados, The men will be rewarded.

Ella ha estado muy divertida, She has been very much amused.

Las hazañas celebradas del ejército vencido, The extolled exploits of the conquered army.

Ella parece afligida, She seems afflicted.

Note a.—The verb *tener* sometimes governs the participle as its objective case, and then the participle admits of no variation; as, *tengo escrito á mi madre*, I have written to my mother; *tengo hablado sobre el asunto*, I have spoken on the subject: but when there is a noun or pronoun in the sentence governed by *tener*, the participle becomes an adjective and agrees with it; as, *tengo escrito un pliego entero*, I have written a whole sheet; *tengo escritas tres cartas*, I have written three letters. **N.B.** In the choice of participles the regular one should be generally employed; as, *ya la teníamos convencida*, we had already convinced her.

Note b.—The participle is elegantly used as a case absolute, and then it generally precedes, and always agrees with, some noun which

is, or seems to be, independent and unconnected in the sentence; as, *acabada la cena, nos fuimos á pasear*, supper being over, we went a-walking; *Tomada esta resolucion, me levanté, quando me pareció que Leonarda y Domingo podian ya estar dormidos*, This resolution being taken, I arose, when it appeared to me that Leonarda and Domingo might already be asleep. (Gil Blas, ch. 6.) *Hecho este juramento, que estaba bien resuelto á no quebrantar, me fui á buscar algun meson*, This oath being taken, which I was well resolved not to break, I went to look for some inn. (Ibid. ch. 14.)

Peculiar Properties of some Participles.

The following participles are also used as verbal adjectives having an active signification.

<i>Agradecido</i> ,	thanked <i>and</i> thankful or grateful.
<i>Atrevido</i> ,	dared <i>and</i> daring or bold.
<i>Callado</i> ,	unmentioned <i>and</i> silent or reserved.
<i>Cansado</i> ,	tired <i>and</i> tiresome or fatiguing.
<i>Comedido</i> ,	mused <i>and</i> mild or gentle.
<i>Desesperado</i> ,	despaired <i>and</i> desperate or despairing.
<i>Disimulado</i> ,	dissembled <i>and</i> sly or crafty.
<i>Entendido</i> ,	understood <i>and</i> intelligent.
<i>Esforzado</i> ,	encouraged <i>and</i> courageous or resolute.
<i>Fingido</i> ,	feigned <i>and</i> hypocritical.
<i>Leído</i> ,	read <i>and</i> learned.
<i>Medido</i> ,	measured <i>and</i> unassuming.
<i>Mirado</i> ,	looked at <i>and</i> circumspect.
<i>Moderado</i> ,	moderated <i>and</i> moderate.
<i>Ocasionado</i> ,	caused <i>and</i> provoking.
<i>Osado</i> ,	the same as <i>atrevido</i> .
<i>Parado</i> ,	stopped <i>and</i> inactive or idle.
<i>Partido</i> ,	divided <i>and</i> munificent or liberal.
<i>Pausado</i> ,	paused <i>and</i> quiet, tranquil, &c.
<i>Porfiado</i> ,	contended <i>and</i> pertinacious or obstinate.
<i>Preciado</i> ,	valued <i>and</i> valuable or precious.
<i>Presumido</i> ,	presumed <i>and</i> presumptuous or arrogant.
<i>Recatado</i> ,	concealed <i>and</i> cautious or prudent.
<i>Sabido</i> ,	known <i>and</i> knowing or clever.
<i>Sentido</i> ,	felt <i>and</i> sensible or feeling.
<i>Sufrido</i> ,	suffered <i>and</i> patient or forbearing.
<i>Transcendido</i> ,	transcended <i>and</i> acute or keen.
<i>Valido</i> ,	availed <i>and</i> mighty <i>and</i> confident.

Examples.

Yo estaba cansado de oírle, por que es muy cansado en la conversacion, I was tired of hearing him, because he is very tiresome in conversation; *nosotros le habíamos callado la verdad, por que sabíamos que no era hombre callado,* we had concealed the truth from him, because we knew that he was not a reserved man. N. B. To the foregoing participles may be added those of the verbs *cenar*, *comer*, and *hablar*, when preceded by the adverbs *bien* or *mal*; as, *un hombre mal cenado*, a man that has not supped well; *una muger muy bien hablada*, a very well-spoken woman.

N. B. Participles when used as such, admit the same regimen as the verbs to which they belong ; and when they are employed as adjectives they follow the rules which have been given for the government of adjectives ; thus we say, *hemos agradecido los beneficios*, and *somos agradecidos á los beneficios*.

ADVERBS.

On the Manner of forming some Spanish Adverbs.

Most of the adverbs which in English end in *ly*, are formed in Spanish by adding *mente* to adjectives; as, happily, *felizmente*; humbly, *humildemente*. N. B. If the Spanish adjective admit two terminations, the feminine must be selected for the forming of the adverb; as, *santo, santa*, *santamente*, holily; *piadoso, piadosa*, *piadosamente*, piously.

RULE 139. When two or more adjectives are to be formed into adverbs to modify the same verb, the adverbial termination is added to the last adjective only ; as

Habla clara y concisa- He speaks clearly and
mente, concisely.

<i>Cesar escribió clara,</i>	Cæsar wrote clearly,
<i>concisa, y elegante-</i>	concisely, and ele-
<i>mente,</i>	gantly.
<i>Piensa sabiamente y se</i>	He thinks wisely and ex-
<i>explica claramente,</i>	presses himself clearly.

Observation.

No rules can be given to direct learners where to place the adverb, because its situation in the sentence depends greatly on the manner in which it is employed: nevertheless, it may be observed that adverbs of manner, especially those ending in *mente*, are generally placed after the verb, unless the sentence begins for the sake of elegance with the adverb; as, *llegué felizmente á Peñaflo*r, I arrived happily at Peñaflor; *le habia dicho* frequently, I had frequently said to him; *no hemos hecho bien*, we have not done well; inmediatamente *monté en mi mula, y salí de la ciudad*, I immediately mounted my mule, and went out of the city; *mal conoces la caridad de los Españoles*, thou art badly acquainted with the charity of the Spaniards. The adverb *no* is always prefixed to the verb which it modifies; as, *no vendemos*, we do not sell; *no habias comprado*, thou hadst not bought. *Mas* and *menos*, when they do not begin the sentence, should follow the verb which they modify; as, *queria mas*, he wanted more; *tengo ménos*, I have less. *Sí* and *no*, being used as an objective case to some verb, require *que* before them, unless they are preceded by an article; as, you say yes, and I say no, *vm. dice que sí, y yo digo que no*; he answered not a word, *no respondió un sí ni un no*.

Observation on Jamas, Nunca, No, and Muy.

Jamas and *nunca* have both the same import, and may therefore be indifferently used for each other; as, *jamás* or *nunca le habia hablado*, I had never spoken to her: but *jamás* has the peculiarity of being coupled with *nunca*, never, and with *siempre*, ever, in order to give more energy to the expression; as, *nunca jamás lo haré*, never, no never, shall I do so; *que vives y reinas*

por siempre jamas, who livest and reignest for ever and ever.

No is sometimes used redundantly after comparatives, in order to render the contrast more striking; as, *mejor es el trabajo que no la ociosidad*, labour is better than idleness; *mas vale ayunar que no enfermar*, it is better to fast than to be ill. N.B. In both these sentences *no* might have been omitted without impairing the sense.

When a verb is preceded by *no*, another negative word may be placed after, and the two negatives will serve to strengthen each other, contrary to the practice of the English language: we may therefore say, *no tengo nada*, I have nothing; *no he visto á nadie*, I have seen nobody; *no lo haré nunca*, I shall never do it: but if the negative word be prefixed to the verb, *no* must be omitted; as, *nada tengo, á nadie he visto, nunca lo haré, &c.*

Muy is the equivalent to the English *very* or *very much*; as, very humble, *muy humilde*; very early, *muy temprano*; very heartily, *muy de corazon*; very much yours, or, wholly yours, *muy de vm.*; very much at your service, *muy al servicio de vm. &c.* but *muy* can never qualify a verb; as, I like that very much, *eso me gusta muchísimo*; he very much resembles his father, *se parece muchísimo á su padre*.

ON PREPOSITIONS.

In addition to the prepositions inserted at page 76, Part I., and which in point of fact are the only ones that the Spanish Academy esteems as such, we employ several adverbs and adverbial moods or expressions as substitutes for prepositions; and whenever they are so used, the noun or pronoun by which they are followed must be preceded by the preposition *de* or *á*; as, *cerca del palacio*, near the palace; *al rededor del jardín*, round the garden; *junto á la casa*, close to the house. It is not possible to enumerate all these species of words within the limits of a book of this nature; but the

following list will be found to contain a very useful collection for learners.

Words requiring *de* before the following noun.

Acerca de ; as, *acerca de este negocio*, concerning this business.

A cubierto de ; as, *á cubierto de la tempestad*, under shelter from the storm.

Ademas de ; as, *ademas de lo que vm. dixo*, besides what you said.

Al lado de ; as, *sientate al lado de ella*, sit down beside her.

Antes de ; as, *ántes de las nueve*, before nine o'clock.

A pesar de ; as, *á pesar de sus ruegos*, in spite of his entreaties.

Cerca de ; as, *cerca de la una*, near one o'clock.

Debaxo de ; as, *debaxo de la mesa*, under the table.

Delante de ; as, *delante del juez*, before the judge.

Dentro de ; as, *dentro de la casa*, within the house.

Despues de ; as, *despues del sermon*, after the sermon.

Detras de ; as, *detras de la iglesia*, behind the church.

Encima de ; as, *encima del espejo*, above the looking-glass.

Enfrente de ; as, *enfrente de la Bolsa*, opposite the Exchange.

Fuera de ; as, *fuera de las murallas*, without the walls.

Lejos de ; as, *lejos de la ciudad*, far from the city.

Mas acá de ; as, *mas acá del Hospital*, on this side of the Hospital.

Mas allá de ; as, *mas allá del Parque*, beyond the Park.

The following require *á* after them.

Conforme á ; as, *conforme á las leyes del reino*, according to the laws of the realm.

Junto á ; as, *junto á la Torre*, close to the Tower.

Tocante á ; as, *tocante á las reglas se observará*, &c. concerning the rules it will be observed, &c.

Observation.

Antes and *despues* retain the preposition *de* when they are followed by a verb in the infinitive, but take *que* in any other mood ; as, *Antes de comer*, before dinner ; *ántes que comamos*, before we dine ; *despues de cenar*,

after supper ; *despues que vm. haya cenado*, after you have supped ; *enfin despues de haber comido y bebido*, &c. after having eaten and drunk. *Despues que el capitán de bandoleros hizo esta apologia*, After the captain of highwaymen made this apology.

A List of English Prepositions with a corresponding Preposition in Spanish.

Above, *encima de* ; above the door, *encima de la puerta*.

N.B. Above, meaning *beyond*, cannot be rendered by a preposition in Spanish ; as, above two hours, *mas de dos horas*.

About, *cerca de* ; as, about one o'clock, *cerca de la una*.

About, for within, *en* ; as, he is about the house, *está en la casa*, or, *en casa*.

About, for through, *por* ; as, he went singing about the streets, *iba cantando por las calles*.

About, for on, *sobre* ; as, a treatise about the longitude, *tratado sobre la longitud*.

After, *despues de* ; as, after the sentence, *despues de la sentencia*.

After, for according to, *á* or *segun* ; as, after the Spanish fashion, *á la moda Española* ; after his manner of teaching, *segun su modo de enseñar*.

Against, *contra* ; as, against her, *contra ella*.

Against, for fronting, *enfrente de* ; as, we live against the church, *vivimos enfrente de la iglesia*.

Among or between, *entre* ; as, among all, *entre todos* ; between the two, *entre los dos*.

At, *á* ; at the door, *á la puerta* ; seated at table, *sentado á la mesa* ; at nine o'clock, *á las nueve*.

At, for in, *en* ; at church, *en la iglesia* ; at London, *en Londres* ; at home, *en casa*.

At, for on, *en* ; the best dish at table, *el mejor plato en la mesa*.

At, for through, *por* ; as, we went out at the window, *salimos por la ventana*.

Before, as opposed to after, *antes de* ; as, he walks before the king, *viene antes del rey* ; I shall arrive before Christmas, *llegaré antes de Navidad*.

Before, opposed to behind, *delante de* ; as, she was on her knees before the image, *ella estaba de rodillas delante de la imágen*.

Behind, *detrás de* ; as, behind the Exchange, *detrás de la Bolsa*.

Beneath, *debaxo de* ; as, beneath the heavens, *debaxo del cielo*.

Beside, *al lado de* ; as, she was seated beside the queen, *estaba sentada al lado de la reyna*.

Between, or, betwixt. See *Among*.

Beyond, *mas allá de* ; as, beyond the temple, *mas allá del templo*. See N. B. after *Above*.

By, *por* or *de* ; as, he was sent by the captain, *fué enviado por el capitán* ; virtue is beloved by the good, *la virtud es amada por or de los buenos*. See note *a* to Rule 115.

By, for in, *de* ; as, by day, *de dia* ; by night, *de noche*.

By, for close to, *junto á* ; as, the house is by the Tower, *la casa está junto á la Torre*.

For, *para* ; as, this flower is for her, *esta flor es para ella* ; I have bought two horses for my coach, *he comprado dos caballos para mi coche* ; it cannot be denied, that for a man who has never been instructed he explains himself well, *no se puede negar que para un hombre que no ha sido instruido jamas él se explica bien*.

For, meaning for the sake of, *por* ; as, he died for his country, *murió por su patria*.

For, in behalf of, *por* ; he pleaded for his father, *abogó por su padre*.

For, on account of, *por* ; he died for our sins, *murió por nuestros pecados* ; for this reason, *por esta razón*.

For, during, *por* ; as, I shall go there for two months, *iré allá por dos meses*.

For, in the room of, *por* ; I am here for him, *estoy aquí por él*.

For, in exchange for, *por* ; I will give thee my watch for thy sword, *te daré mi muestra por tu espada* ; I shall sell the house for five hundred dollars, *venderé la casa por quinientos pesos*.

For, meaning to fetch, *por* ; he goes for bread, and I come for wine, *va por pan, y yo vengo por vino*.

From, *de* ; I come from Spain, *vengo de España*.

N.B. *From* in computing distances is rendered by *desde* ; as, there are six miles from London to Greenwich, *hay dos leguas desde Londres á Greenwich* ; from his birth until now, *desde su nacimiento hasta ahora*.

In, or, into, *en* or *por* ; as, in the summer, *en el verano* ; in the morning, *por la mañana* ; put it into the closet, *ponlo en el gavinete*.

N.B. *Into* after verbs of motion (except *to enter*) is rendered by *á* ; to go down into the cellar, *baxar á la bodega* ; he entered the church, *entró en la iglesia*. See also Rule 29, note c.

Near, or, nigh, *cerca de* ; near the altar, *cerca del altar*. Of, *de* ; as, the seal of the letter, *el sello de la carta*, a crown of gold, *una corona de oro*.

On, or, upon, *sobre* ;* as, on, or, upon the chair, *sobre la silla* ; we spoke on, or, upon the subject, *hablamos sobre la materia*.

On is also frequently rendered by *en* ; as, the dish is on table, *el plato está en la mesa*.

On, after the verbs *to subsist*, *to feed*, &c. is translated *de* ; as, he feeds on hopes, and she subsists on air, *él se alimenta de esperanzas, y ella se sustenta de ayre*.

N.B. *On* is never translated before the names of the days of the week, or of the month ; as, you came on the twenty-second, and I came on Tuesday, *vm. vino el veinte y dos, y yo vine el Martes*.

Over, *encima de* ;* as, over the window, *encima de la ventana* ; the cloud is over the mountain, *la nube está encima de la montaña*.

Over, through, *por* ; we travelled over the whole country, *viajamos por todo el pais*.

Round, or, around, *al rededor de* ; we walked round the town, *nos paseamos al rededor de la ciudad*.

Through, *por* ; I passed through the Park, *pasé por el Parque*.

Through, denoting the cause, is *de* ; he died through hunger, *murió de hambre*.

* See the author's Synonyms, page 86.

Till, or, until, *hasta* ; he will not come until to-morrow, *no vendrá hasta mañana*.

To, *á* ; as, I delivered it to the owner, *lo entregué al dueño* ; he goes to London, *va á Londres*.

To, after *from*, and having the same regimen, *en* ; as, from door to door, *de puerta en puerta*.

Towards, *hácia* ; towards the east, *hácia el oriente*.

Under, *debaxo** *de* or *baxo* ;* as, under the bridge, *debaxo del puente* ; under this government, *baxo este gobierno*.

With, *con* ; as, with the sword, *con la espada* ; with mildness, *con dulzura*.

Within, *dentro de* ; as, he is within the house, *está dentro de la casa*.

Without, *sin* ; as, he came without him, *vino sin él*.

Without, as opposite to within, *fuera de* ; he was seated without the church, *estaba sentado fuera de la iglesia*.

In the foregoing list no notice has been taken of the prepositions by which the English verbs are sometimes followed, and which seem as it were inseparable from them ; as, *to get at*, *to cast up*, *to look for*, &c. because in general these verbs and prepositions are construed in Spanish by a verb alone ; as, *alcanzar*, *sumar*, *buscar*, &c. Neither has any thing been said respecting English prepositions before the infinitive or participle, because that has been already discussed in speaking of Verbal Regimen and of the Spanish Gerund.

RULE 140. Prepositions govern the objective case ; † as

Me queixo de tí, I complain of thee.

No puede vivir sin mí, He cannot live without me.

Tú quieres ir conmigo, † Thou wishest to go with me, but I do not wish
pero yo no quiero ir contigo, † to go with thee.

Note a.—The preposition *segun* has the peculiarity of being used alone with a verb in its indicative or subjunctive mood ; as, *segun creo*, according to what I believe ; *segun hayan respondido*, according as they may have answered, &c. *Entonces el arriero, segun supe con el tiempo*, &c. Then the carrier, as I was afterwards informed. (Gil Blas, ch. 3.)

* See the author's Synonyms, page 5.

† See Notes *a* and *b* to Rule 48.

ON CONJUNCTIONS.

Having described in the first part of this work the nature, properties, and distribution of Spanish conjunctions, and enumerated in note *a* to Rule 133, those conjunctive expressions which require the subjunctive mood after them, I shall offer here a few observations on some conjunctions, that, on account of the various meanings under which they are used in English, cannot be always resolved into their equivalents in Spanish.

On *But*.

But, it is said, belongs both to the conjunctive as well as to the exceptive class of English conjunctions, its import as a conjunctive being "*add*" or "*moreover*," and as an exceptive "*unless*" or "*without*." Considering *but* in this light only, I should say that its equivalents in Spanish are in the first instance *pero* or *mas*, and in the second *sino* or *menos*; nevertheless as this, however, is not always the case, it will be necessary to examine more minutely the different words for which *but* is often substituted, giving previously two rules for the construing of *but*, either as a conjunctive or exceptive conjunction, according to the imports above mentioned.

RULE 141. The conjunction *but*, not being preceded by a negative, is expressed by *pero* or *mas*; and after a negative it is construed *sino*: as

I am rich, <i>but</i> I am not	<i>Yo soy rico, pero, or,</i>
happy,	<i>mas no soy dichoso.</i>
He is not happy, <i>but</i>	<i>No es dichoso, sino rico.</i>
rich,	
They all went thither,	<i>Todos fueron allá, pero,</i>

but his brother arrived or, *mas su hermano*
the first, *llegó el primero.*
They did not go on Monday, *No fueron el Lunes, sino*
day, *but* on Tuesday, *el Mártes.*

Note a.—It is to be observed, that although *sino* is the most proper to be used after a negative, *pero* or *mas* is preferable when the verb is repeated; as, they did not go on Monday, *but* they went on Tuesday, *no fueron el Lunes*, *pero* or *mas fueron el Mártes.* N. B. *Pero* is sometimes used as a substantive, and then it signifies defect; as, *ella no tiene pero*, she has no blemish.

RULE 142. The exceptive *but* being preceded by an interrogative pronoun, or by a negative, is expressed *sino*; and not following a negative is rendered *ménos*: as

Who said it *but* you? *¿ Quien lo dixo sino vm.?*
She eats nothing *but* fruit,* *Ella no come sino fruta.*
She eats all *but* the rind, *Ella come todo ménos la*
corteza.
They all went thither *Todos fueron allá ménos*
but his brother, *su hermano.*

Note a.—When the word *but* is used as a substitute for some other words, it is generally rendered in Spanish by the words which it represents.—Example:

He was hardly gone out *but* (*when*) the house fell down, *Apenas hubo salido quando se cayó la casa.*

But (*if it were not*) for me, he would die with cold, *si no fuera por mí, él se moriría de frío.*

But that I think (*if I did not think that*) it would vex thee, I would tell it thee, *si yo no pensara que te molestase, te lo diría.*

There is no one *but* is (*that is not*) a sinner, *no hay ninguno que no sea pecador.*

He went no day into the country *but* he returned (*that he returned not*) loaded, *ningun dia fué al campo que no volvió cargado.*

I have *but* (*only*) one servant, *tengo solo un criado.*

I came *but* (*I came not till*) yesterday, *no vine hasta ayer.*

* It is almost needless to observe that many of the foregoing examples admit a different turn in the Spanish as well as in the English: thus we might say, *ella no come mas*, or *no come nada mas*, *que fruta*, she eats no more, or she eats nothing more, than fruit, &c.

That means no more but (*than*) to tell me to go away, *eso no quiere decir mas que decirme que me vaya*.

I am well aware that, in the last, as well as in some others, of the foregoing examples, *but* is very improperly used: nevertheless, the frequency with which such expressions occur in common discourse seems sufficient to sanction their introduction here.

As is *como*: example; black *as* pitch, *negro como la pez*.

As being followed by *so* is expressed *así como*: example; *as* he rewards virtue, *so* he punishes vice, *así como premia la virtud, así castiga el vicio*.

As meaning *when* is *quando*: example; we met her *as* we were going home, *la encontramos quando íbamos á casa*.

N. B. For *as* and *so* used like adverbs, see Rule 26. *Neither* and *nor* are rendered by *ni*: example; he will *neither* sell it *nor* give it, *no quiere ni venderlo ni darlo*. *Neither* at the end of a sentence is translated *tampoco*; *as*, *nor* I *neither*, *ni yo tampoco*. N. B. When *either* comes accompanied by a negative, it is translated like *neither*: example; I will not see them, *nor* she *either*, *yo no quiero verlos, ni ella tampoco*.

Rather. This adverb when used as an adversative conjunction is resolved into *antes* or *antes bien*: example; I owe him nothing, *rather* he owes me something, *yo no le debo nada, antes or antes bien él me debe algo*.*

Whether is *si*: example; tell me *whether* he will come or not, *digame vm. si él vendrá ó no*.

Whether in phrases like the following is expressed *que*: example; *whether* he come or not, I do not care anything, *que venga ó que no venga, no se me da nada*.

ON INTERJECTIONS.

An interjection, as has been already observed, is that part of speech which serves to express the different emotions and affections of the mind. The words which may be considered as interjections in

* See Colloquial Idioms, Exercises, page 112.

the Spanish, are as follow: *ah, ay, ce, chito, chiton, ea, éte, fu, ha, he, ho, hola, ó, pu, ta, tate.*

Of these, *ah, ay, ó*, are expressive of grief, joy, indignation, and admiration, and therefore may be said to correspond with the English hey! ah! O! ho! hah! &c. *Ce, éte, ha, he, hola*, are used to call the attention, and are similar to hem, lo, hip, holla, &c. in English: *hola* is also used to express wonder, and *he* to demand a repetition of something that has been told us from a distance, and which we have not heard distinctly. The latter is sometimes denoted in English by the word *what!*

Chito, chiton are the equivalents of hush, mum. *Ea* serves to encourage: *fu* is the same as pshaw! *pu* is used like foh! and *ta* and *tate* are employed like halt, hold, &c. There are also many ejaculatory expressions, which are considered by some as interjections: such as, *quita!* away! *viva!* huzza! *valgame Dios!* bless me!

RULE 143. Adjectives employed as interjections require *de* before the noun to which they are applied; as

¡ Pobre de mi padre ! Oh! my poor father!
¡ Desdichada de mi madre ! Oh! my unhappy mother!

Note a.—The interjection *ay* when used like the English *woe*, requires *de* before the following noun; as, woe to thee! woe to them who die in their sins, &c. *¡ ay de tí ! ¡ ay de aquellos que mueren en sus pecados, &c.*

Note b.—The interjection *éte* is used with the personal pronouns only, and always joined to the first objective case: as, *étela que viene*, lo she comes! *Éteme aquí ya fuera de Oviedo*, Behold me here, or, Lo here am I, already out of Oviedo. (Gil Blas, ch. 2.)

ON THE FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

FIGURES of Syntax are a name given to certain deviations from the strict observance of the rules of syntax, which are sometimes allowed, in order to enhance the beauty or energy of the expression. These figures are called *Hyperbaton*, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Syllepsis*.

Hyperbaton is the figure by which we are permitted to invert the syntactical arrangement of words: this figure admits of great variety, as may be seen by the following examples: *Gustabanme mucho las disputas*, instead of, *Las disputas me gustaban mucho*. Here, as may be seen, the subject follows in lieu of preceding its own verb. *Llevóme á su casa*, for, *me llevó á su casa*: here the pronominal objective case is placed after the verb, instead of being put before, according to Rule 47. See also note *a* to this rule.

Son tan felices las prontitudes del ingenio, &c. for, *Las prontitudes del ingenio son tan felices—Pasearonla y repasearonla delante del mulatero que con grande atencion la exáminó de pies á cabeza*, in lieu of, *Delante del mulatero que la exáminó con grande atencion*.

Numerous other examples might be given to show the various manner in which the hyperbaton is used. It ought however to be observed, that a substantive is never followed by its article, nor is a preposition ever preceded by its regimen. It is admissible in poetry to place a noun governed

before the noun which governs it ; but never in prose : as,

*De tanta confusion, no las arenas
Del padre tajo oyrán los tristes ecos
Ni del Famoso Betis las olivas.*

Don Quixote, b. ii. ch. 14.

Ellipsis is a figure which permits the suppression of one or more words. It may affect all the parts of speech : as, *no me hartaba de verle* (de) *tocarle y* (de) *retocarle* ; (here the preposition is twice omitted) : *y me dió tantas gracias como yo* (dí) *espolazos á la mula* ; (here the verb is understood) : *sí, este maravilloso secreto, que yo te comunico y* (que) *la naturaleza no pudo ocultar.* (Yo) *ordené que le sangrasen sin misericordia y* (que) *le diesen de beber agua caliente en abundancia.* In the first of the two latter examples the relative is omitted ; and in the second the pronoun and the conjunction are suppressed.

Pleonasm allows the introduction of some redundant words : as, *lo ví por mis ojos*, for, *lo ví* only ; *lo escribí de mi mano*, for only *lo escribí.* *Yo mismo, tú propio*, instead of saying, *yo, tú* only. The double introduction of the objective case used in Spanish is through this figure : as, *El me quiere á mí ; yo te dí el libro á tí ; nosotros le hemos escrito á él*, &c. instead of, *él me quiere ; yo te dí el libro ; nosotros le hemos escrito.*

*Syllepsis** permits a species of false concord, enabling us to make words agree not according to their real import, but according to what we make them represent : thus any title, which by its termination is of the feminine gender, whenever it is applied to a man, will have an adjective, &c. in its masculine termination : as, *vuestra majestad es*

* This figure seems to be a species of the ellipsis.

justo; vuestra alteza sea servido; ¿están vms. buenos caballeros?—See note *b* to Rule 23. In like manner a collective noun in the singular is sometimes coupled with a verb in the plural: as, *entraron en la ciudad una multitud; una tropa salieron al encuentro.* See note *a* to Rule 110.

These are the figures which are admitted in the Spanish language. It is hardly possible to lay down any rules for their application. Observation seems the most effectual means of acquiring the right use of them: and they have been introduced here in order only that learners may not be misled, in the course of their reading, by supposing inaccurate or imperfect any sentence wherein some of the figures are employed.

APPENDIX

A CONCISE AND USEFUL VOCABULARY OF THE MOST NECESSARY WORDS.

Of the Universe in general.

The universe, *el universo*.
the world, *el mundo*.
the elements, *los elementos*.
the sky, *el firmamento*.
a star, *una estrella*.
a planet, *un planeta*.
a comet, *un cometa*.
a constellation, *una constelacion*.
the sun, *el sol*.
the sunbeams, *los rayos del sol*.
the moon, *la luna*.
moonlight, *claro de luna*.
new moon, *luna nueva*.
full moon, *luna llena*.
first quarter, *luna creciente*.
last quarter, *luna menguante*.
an eclipse, *un eclipse*.
a storm, *una borrasca*.
a tempest, *una tempestad*.

the thunder, *los truenos*.
a clap of thunder, *un trueno*.
the lightning, *los relámpagos*.
a flash of lightning, *un relámpago*.
a thunderbolt, *un rayo*.
a fog, *una niebla*.
a mist, *una neblina*.
the rain, *la lluvia*.
the rainbow, *el arco iris*.
a shower, *un aguacero*.
the snow, *la nieve*.
the hail, *el granizo*.
the ice, *el yelo*.
a frost, *una helada*.
a hoar frost, *una escarcha*.
the morning dew, *el rocío*.
the evening dew, *el sereno*.
mankind, *el género humano*.
a creature, *una criatura*.

Terms relating to the Earth.

A globe, <i>un globo.</i>	a shire, <i>un condado.</i>
a sphere, <i>una esfera.</i>	a mountain, <i>una montaña.</i>
a hemisphere, <i>un hemisférico.</i>	a mount, <i>un monte.</i>
the horizon, <i>el horizonte.</i>	a hill, <i>un collado.</i>
a degree, <i>un grado.</i>	an acclivity, <i>una cuesta.</i>
the longitude, <i>la longitud.</i>	a valley, <i>un valle.</i>
the latitude, <i>la latitud.</i>	an abyss, <i>un abismo.</i>
the cardinal points, <i>los vientos cardinales.</i>	a desert, <i>un desierto.</i>
the north, <i>el norte.</i>	a plain, <i>una llanura.</i>
the south, <i>el sur.</i>	a fen, <i>una laguna.</i>
the east, <i>el este.</i>	the shore, <i>la ribera.</i>
the west, <i>el oeste.</i>	the coast, <i>la costa.</i>
a climate, <i>un clima.</i>	a rock, <i>una peña.</i>
a region, <i>una region.</i>	a stone, <i>una piedra.</i>
a continent, <i>un continente.</i>	a bridge, <i>un puente.</i>
an island, <i>una isla.</i>	a causeway, <i>una calzada.</i>
a peninsula, <i>una península.</i>	a ford, <i>un vado.</i>
an isthmus, <i>un istmo.</i>	the highway, <i>el camino real.</i>
a cape, <i>un cabo.</i>	a path, <i>una senda.</i>
an empire, <i>un imperio.</i>	a ditch, <i>un foso.</i>
a kingdom, <i>un reyno.</i>	gravel, <i>cascajo, m.</i>
a republic, <i>una república.</i>	sand, <i>arena, f.</i>
a colony, <i>una colonia.</i>	dust, <i>polvo, m.</i>
a country, <i>un pays.</i>	clay, <i>barro, m.</i>
a province, <i>una provincia.</i>	mire, <i>cieno, m.</i>
	mud, <i>lodo, m.</i>

Terms relating to the Water.

The ocean, <i>el oceano.</i>	the tide, <i>la marea.</i>
a sea, <i>un mar.</i>	high water, <i>pleamar</i>
an arm of the sea, <i>un brazo de mar.</i>	low water, <i>baxamar.</i>
a gulf, <i>un golfo.</i>	the current, <i>la corriente.</i>
a bay, <i>una bahía.</i>	a wave, <i>una onda.</i>
a road (for ships), <i>una rada.</i>	the billows, <i>las olas.</i>
a channel, <i>un canal.</i>	a harbour, <i>un puerto</i>
a strait, <i>un estrecho.</i>	a lake, <i>un lago.</i>
	a river, <i>un rio.</i>
	a brook, <i>un arroyo.</i>

a pond, <i>un estanque.</i>	a well, <i>un pozo.</i>
a spring, <i>un manantial.</i>	a fountain, <i>una fuente</i>

Terms relating to the Fire.

Fire, <i>el fuego.</i>	the ashes, <i>las cenizas.</i>
the blaze, <i>la llama.</i>	the embers, <i>el rescoldo.</i>
a spark, <i>una chispa.</i>	the soot, <i>el hollin.</i>
the smoke, <i>el humo.</i>	a firebrand, <i>un tizon.</i>
live coals, <i>brasas</i> or <i>ascuas.</i>	a rocket, <i>un cohete.</i>
	a bonfire, <i>una hoguera.</i>

Terms relating to the Air.

The air, <i>el ayre.</i>	a vapour, <i>un vapor.</i>
the atmosphere, <i>la atmosfera.</i>	a cloud, <i>una nube.</i>
the wind, <i>el viento.</i>	a whirlwind, <i>un torbellino</i>
a gale, <i>un viento fresco.</i>	a hurricane, <i>un huracan.</i>
	a calm, <i>una calma.</i>

Of Time and its Divisions.

Eternity, <i>la eternidad.</i>	a week, <i>una semana.</i>
time, <i>el tiempo.</i>	a day, <i>un dia.</i>
a date, <i>una fecha.</i>	Monday, <i>Lunes.</i>
a century, <i>un siglo.</i>	Tuesday, <i>Mártes.</i>
a year, <i>an año.</i>	Wednesday, <i>Miércoles.</i>
half-year, <i>medio-año.</i>	Thursday, <i>Juésves.</i>
a quarter, <i>un trimestre.</i>	Friday, <i>Viérnes.</i>
a month, <i>un mes.</i>	Saturday, <i>Sábado.</i>
January, <i>Enero.</i>	Sunday, <i>Domingo.</i>
February, <i>Febrero.</i>	an hour, <i>una hora.</i>
March, <i>Marzo.</i>	half an hour, <i>media-hora.</i>
April, <i>Abril.</i>	a quarter of an hour, <i>un cuarto de hora.</i>
May, <i>Mayo.</i>	one o'clock, <i>la una.</i>
June, <i>Junio.</i>	three o'clock, <i>las tres.</i>
July, <i>Julio.</i>	half after six, <i>las seis y media.</i>
August, <i>Agosto.</i>	a quarter after nine, <i>las nueve y cuarto.</i>
September, <i>Setiembre.</i>	a quarter to eleven, <i>las once ménos cuarto.</i>
October, <i>Octubre.</i>	
November, <i>Noviembre.</i>	
December, <i>Diciembre.</i>	
a fortnight, <i>quince dias.</i>	

a minute, *un minuto*.
 a second, *un segundo*.
 the dawn, *el alba*.
 morning, *mañana*.

noon, *medio-día*.
 afternoon, *tarde*.
 night, *noche*.
 midnight, *media-noche*.

Remarkable Days and Seasons of the Year.

Newyear's Day, <i>Día de Año Nuevo</i> .	Whitsuntide, <i>Pascua de Espíritu Santo</i> .
Twelfth Day, <i>la Epifanía</i> .	the Dog-days, <i>la Canícula</i> .
Twelfth tide, <i>la Pascua de Reyes</i> .	Christmas Day, <i>Día de Navidad</i> .
Shrovetide, <i>el Carnaval</i> .	Christmas time, <i>Pascuas de Navidad</i> .
Shrove Tuesday, <i>Martes de Carnestolendas</i> .	the Seasons, <i>las Estaciones</i> .
Ash Wednesday, <i>Miércoles de Ceniza</i> .	the Spring, <i>la Primavera</i> .
Palm Sunday, <i>Domingo de Ramos</i> .	the Summer, <i>el Verano</i> .
Good Friday, <i>Viernes Santo</i> .	the Autumn, <i>el Otoño</i> .
Easter Sunday, <i>Domingo de Resurrección</i> .	the Winter, <i>el Hibierno</i> .
Easter time, <i>Pascua de Resurrección</i> .	a holiday, <i>un día de fiesta</i> .
	a working-day, <i>un día de trabajo</i> .
	a fast day, <i>un día de ayuno</i> .
	Lent, <i>la Cuaresma</i> .
	the eve, <i>la víspera</i> .

Of the Human Body and its Parts.

The body, <i>el cuerpo</i> .	an eye, <i>un ojo</i> .
a limb, <i>un miembro</i> .	an eyebrow, <i>una ceja</i> .
a bone, <i>un hueso</i> .	an eyelash, <i>una pestaña</i> .
a nerve, <i>un nervio</i> .	an eyelid, <i>un párpado</i> .
a vein, <i>una vena</i> .	the eyeball, <i>la niña del ojo</i> .
an artery, <i>una arteria</i> .	the nose, <i>la nariz</i> .
the blood, <i>la sangre</i> .	the nostrils, <i>las ventanas de la nariz</i> .
the skin, <i>el pellejo</i> .	an ear, <i>una oreja</i> .
the head, <i>la cabeza</i> .	the mouth, <i>la boca</i> .
the brain, <i>el cerebro</i> .	a lip, <i>un labio</i> .
the brains, <i>los sesos</i> .	the tongue, <i>la lengua</i> .
the hair, <i>el pelo</i> .	a front tooth, <i>un diente</i> .
the forehead, <i>la frente</i> .	an eye tooth, <i>un colmillo</i> .
a temple, <i>una sien</i> .	

a back tooth, <i>una muela.</i>	the hand, <i>la mano.</i>
the cheeks, <i>las mejillas.</i>	the wrist, <i>la muñeca.</i>
the jaw, <i>la quixada.</i>	the thumb, <i>el dedo pulgar.</i>
the gums, <i>las encias.</i>	a finger, <i>un dedo.</i>
the chin, <i>la barba.</i>	the nails, <i>las uñas.</i>
the beard, <i>la barba.</i>	the toes, <i>los dedos de los</i> <i>pies.</i>
the neck, <i>el cuello.</i>	a foot, <i>un pie.</i>
the bosom, <i>el seno.</i>	a leg, <i>una pierna.</i>
the breast, <i>el pecho.</i>	the knee, <i>la rodilla.</i>
the stomach, <i>el estómago.</i>	a thigh, <i>un muslo.</i>
the pit of the stomach, <i>la</i> <i>boca del estómago.</i>	the heart, <i>el corazon.</i>
the shoulders, <i>los hombros.</i>	the liver, <i>el hígado.</i>
the back, <i>las espaldas.</i>	the lungs, <i>los pulmones.</i>
an arm, <i>un brazo.</i>	a rib, <i>una costilla.</i>
the elbow, <i>el codo.</i>	the joints, <i>las coyunturas.</i>

Of the Soul and its Faculties.

The soul, <i>el alma, f.</i>	hatred, <i>el odio.</i>
the memory, <i>la memoria.</i>	jealousy, <i>los celos.</i>
the understanding, <i>el en-</i> <i>tendimiento.</i>	joy, <i>el gozo.</i>
the will, <i>la voluntad.</i>	love, <i>el amor.</i>
desire, <i>el deseo.</i>	pride, <i>la soberbia.</i>
grief, <i>la pesadumbre.</i>	vanity, <i>la vanidad.</i>
hope, <i>la esperanza.</i>	anger, <i>la cólera.</i>
	knowledge, <i>el conocimiento.</i>

The Five Senses.

The sight, <i>la vista.</i>	the tasting, <i>el gusto.</i>
the hearing, <i>el oido.</i>	the feeling, <i>el tacto.</i>
the smelling, <i>el olfato.</i>	

Of Wearing Apparel worn by Men.

A suit, <i>un vestido.</i>	boots, <i>botas.</i>
a coat, <i>una casaca.</i>	leather gaiters, <i>botines.</i>
a waistcoat, <i>una chupa.</i>	cloth gaiters, <i>polainas.</i>
breeches, <i>calzones.</i>	stock, <i>corbatin.</i>
stockings, <i>medias.</i>	cravat, <i>corbata.</i>
garters, <i>ligas.</i>	ruffles, <i>los vuelos.</i>
shoes, <i>zapatos.</i>	a pocket, <i>una faltriquera.</i>
buckles, <i>hebillas.</i>	a shirt, <i>una camisa.</i>

- | | |
|---|---|
| a handkerchief, <i>un pañuelo.</i> | a watch, <i>un reloj.</i> |
| a hat, <i>un sombrero.</i> | a snuff-box, <i>una caja de tabaco.</i> |
| a sword, <i>un espadin.</i> | a cane, <i>un baston.</i> |
| gloves, <i>los guantes.</i> | an umbrella, <i>un paraguas.</i> |
| a cocked hat, <i>un sombrero de tres picos.</i> | a purse, <i>una bolsa.</i> |

Of the Wearing Apparel worn by Women.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| The under petticoat, <i>el zagalejo.</i> | lace, <i>encaxe.</i> |
| a white upper petticoat, <i>unas naguas.</i> | pins, <i>alfileres.</i> |
| a black petticoat, <i>una saya.</i> | a pincushion, <i>un acerico.</i> |
| a silk petticoat, <i>un guardapiés.</i> | earrings, <i>los zarcillos.</i> |
| a hoop petticoat, <i>un tontillo.</i> | bracelets, <i>los brazaletes.</i> |
| a plain cap, <i>un gorro.</i> | a ring, <i>un anillo.</i> |
| a dress cap, <i>una escofia.</i> | a guard, <i>una sortija.</i> |
| false hair, <i>pelo postizo.</i> | a fan, <i>un abanico.</i> |
| the stays, <i>la cotilla.</i> | a bonnet, <i>un bonetillo.</i> |
| the lace, <i>el cordon.</i> | a spencer, <i>un jubon.</i> |
| the tag, <i>el herrete.</i> | a shawl, <i>un chal.</i> |
| a gown, <i>una bata.</i> | a mantle, <i>un capotillo.</i> |
| an apron, <i>un delantal.</i> | a tippet, <i>una palatina.</i> |
| | a veil, <i>un velo.</i> |
| | a muff, <i>un manguito.</i> |
| | clogs, <i>los chapines.</i> |

N.B. The rest of women's apparel bears the same name as that of men.

Of Mankind in general.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| A man, <i>un hombre.</i> | a sucking child, <i>un niño de teta.</i> |
| an old man, <i>un viejo*.</i> | the husband, <i>el marido.</i> |
| an elderly man, <i>un anciano.*</i> | the wife, <i>la muger.</i> |
| a woman, <i>una muger.</i> | a widower, <i>un viudo.*</i> |
| a bachelor, <i>un soltero.</i> | a male orphan, <i>un huérfano.*</i> |
| a maid, <i>una donzella.</i> | an heir, <i>un heredero.*</i> |
| a boy, <i>un muchacho.*</i> | the heir at law, <i>el mayorazgo.*</i> |
| a lad, <i>un mozito.*</i> | |
| a male child, <i>un niño.*</i> | |

the great grandfather, <i>el bisabuelo</i> .*	the son-in-law, <i>el yerno</i> .
a great grandson, <i>un bisniet</i> .*	the daughter-in-law, <i>la nuera</i> .
a grandfather, <i>un abuelo</i> .*	the brother-in-law, <i>el cuñado</i> .*
a grandson, <i>un nieto</i> .*	an uncle, <i>un tio</i> .*
a father, <i>un padre</i>	a nephew, <i>un sobrino</i> .*
a mother, <i>una madre</i> .	a brother, <i>un hermano</i> .*
a son, <i>un hijo</i> .*	a cousin, <i>un primo</i> .*
a stepfather, <i>un padrastro</i> .	first cousin, <i>primo</i> * <i>hermano</i> .*
a stepmother, <i>una madrastra</i> .	god-father, <i>padrino</i> .
a father-in-law, <i>un suegro</i> .*	god-mother, <i>madrina</i> .
	god-son, <i>ahijado</i> .*
	a relation, <i>un pariente</i> .*

N. B. The names which are marked thus* change the last letter into an *a* when they are applied to females.

Names of Individuals according to their Rank, Profession, or Employment.

The Pope, <i>el Papa</i> .	a marchioness, <i>una marquesa</i> .
a cardinal, <i>un cardenal</i> .	a lord, <i>un lor</i> .
an archbishop, <i>un arzobispo</i> .	a lady, <i>una señora</i> .
a bishop, <i>un obispo</i> .	a gentleman, <i>un caballero</i> .
a dean, <i>un dean</i> .	a lady, <i>una dama</i> .
a canon, <i>un canónigo</i> .	the mayor, <i>el corregidor</i> .
a vicar, <i>un vicario</i> .	a judge, <i>un juez</i> .
a rector, <i>un cura</i> .	a justice of the peace, <i>un alcalde</i> .
a curate, <i>un teniente de cura</i> .	a counsel, <i>un abogado</i> .
an emperor, <i>un emperador</i> .	a solicitor, <i>un procurador</i> .
an empress, <i>una emperatriz</i> .	a notary, <i>un escribano</i> .
a king, <i>un rey</i> .	a physician, <i>un médico</i> .
a queen, <i>una reyna</i> .	a surgeon, <i>un cirujano</i> .
a prince, <i>un príncipe</i> .	an apothecary, <i>un boticario</i> .
a princess, <i>una princesa</i> .	a chemist, <i>un químico</i> .
an earl, <i>un conde</i> .	a druggist, <i>un droguista</i> .
a countess, <i>una condesa</i> .	a merchant, <i>un comerciante</i> .
a marquis, <i>un marques</i> .	a mercer, <i>un mercader</i> .
	an exchange broker, <i>un corredor</i> .

- a shop-keeper, *un tendero*.
- a clerk, *un escribiente*.
- a tailor, *un sastre*.
- a shoemaker, *un zapatero*.
- a hatter, *un sombrerero*.
- a butcher, *un carnicero*.
- a baker, *un panadero*.
- a grocer, *un especiero*.
- a brewer, *un cervecero*.
- a carpenter, *un carpintero*.
- a mason, *un cantero*.
- a bricklayer, *un albañil*.
- a locksmith, *un cerrajero*.
- a farrier, *un albeitero*.
- a watchmaker, *un relojero*.
- a pastrycook, *un pastelero*.
- a confectioner, *un confitero*.
- a hairdresser, *un peluquero*.
- a glazier, *un vidriero*.
- a painter, *un pintor*.
- a bookseller, *un librero*.
- a printer, *un impresor*.
- an engraver, *un grabador*.
- a cobbler, *un zapatero de viejo*.
- a porter, *un mandadero*.
- a letter-carrier, *un cartero*.
- the crier, *el pregonero*.
- the executioner, *el verdugo*.

Names given to Persons according to their Native Place.

- An European, *un Europeo*.
- an Asiatic, *un Asiático*.
- an African, *un Africano*.
- an American, *un Americano*.
- an Englishman, *un Inglés*.
- a Scotchman, *un Escocés*.
- an Irishman, *un Irlandés*.
- a Spaniard, *un Español*.
- a native of Cadiz, *un Gaditano*.
- a native of Seville, *un Sevillano*.
- a native of Madrid, *un Madrileño*.
- a native of Xerez, *un Xerezano*.
- a native of Port St. Mary, *un Porteño*.
- a native of Rota, *un Roteño*.
- a native of Estremadura, *un Estremeño*.
- a Valentian, *un Valenciano*.
- a Catalonian, *un Catalán*.
- a Biscayan, *un Vizcaíno*.
- a native of la Mancha, *un Manchego*.
- a native of Malaga, *un Malagueño*.
- a native of Granada, *un Granadino*.
- a Castillian, *un Castellano*.
- a native of Asturias, *un Asturiano*.
- a native of Galicia, *un Gallego*.
- a native of Navarre, *un Navarro*.
- a native of Arragon, *un Aragones*.
- an Andalusian, *un Andaluz*.
- a Portuguese, *un Portugués*.
- a Frenchman, *un Francés*.
- a native of Flanders, *un Flamenso*.

- an Italian, *un Italiano*.
 a Neapolitan, *un Napolitano*.
 a Genoese, *un Ginebrino*.
 a native of Geneva, *un Genoves*.
 a Swiss, *un Suizo*.
 a German, *un Aleman*.
 an Austrian, *un Austriaco*.
 a Saxon, *un Saxon*.
 a Bavarian, *un Bávaro*.
 a Dutchman, *un Holandes*.
 a Bohémian, *un Bohemio*.
 a Hungarian, *un Húngaro*.
 a Prussian, *un Prusiano*.
 a Pole, *un Polaco*.
 a Dane, *un Dinamarques*.
 a Swede, *un Sueco*.
 a Muscovite, *un Muscovita*.
 a Russian, *un Ruso*.
 a Greek, *un Griego*.
 a Turk, *un Turco*.
 a Persian, *un Persa*.
 a Chinese, *un Chino*.
 a Carthaginian, *un Cartagines*.
 an Arabian, *un Arabe*.
 an Egyptian, *un Egipcio*.
 an Algerine, *un Argelino*.
 an Indian, *un Indio*.
 a Moor, *un Moro*.
 a Negro, *un Negro*.
 a Creole, *un Criollo*.
 a Mountaineer, *un Montañes*.
 a Highlander, *un Serrano*.

Of a City and its Parts.

- A city, *una ciudad*.
 a town, *una villa*.
 a village, *un lugar*.
 a hamlet, *una aldea*.
 the suburbs, *los arrabales*.
 a street, *una calle*.
 a lane, *un callejon*.
 a square, *una plaza*.
 the kennel, *el caño*.
 the market, *el mercado*.
 the fish-market, *la pescaderia*.
 the flesh-market, *la carniceria*.
 the bread-market, *la panaderia*.
 the slaughterhouse, *el matadero*.
 a building, *un edificio*.
 a palace, *un palacio*.
 a house, *una casa*.
 the townhouse, *la casa consistorial*.
 a parish, *una parroquia*.
 the playhouse, *la casa de comedias*.
 the stage, *el teatro*.
 the scenes, *los bastidores*.
 the pit, *la luneta*.
 a box, *un palco*.
 a monastery, *un monasterio*.
 a convent, *un convento*.
 an university, *una universidad*.
 a college, *un colegio*.
 an academy, *una academia*.
 an hospital, *un hospital*.
 a madhouse, *una casa de locos*.
 a prison, *una cárcel*.

a coffee-house, *un café*.
 a hotel, *una fonda*.
 a cook-shop, *un figon*.
 an inn, *una posada*.
 the Exchange, *la Bolsa*.
 the Customhouse, *la Aduana*.
 the Admiralty, *el Almirantazgo*.
 the wharf, *el muelle*.
 a shop, *una tienda*.
 a church, *una iglesia*.

a chapel of ease, *una ayuda de parroquia*.
 the Post-office, *el Correo*.
 an office, *una oficina*.
 a countinghouse, *un escritorio*.
 a warehouse, *un almacén*.
 a manufactory, *una fábrica*.
 a workshop, *un taller*.
 a boy's-school, *una escuela*.
 a girl's-school, *una escuela de niñas*.

Of a House and its Divisions.

The ground-floor, *el cuarto bajo*.
 a story, *un alto*.
 the first-floor, *el primer piso*.
 the porch, *el portal*.
 the court, *el patio*.
 the stairs, *las escaleras*.
 a step, *un escalón*.
 the galleries, *los corredores*.
 a room, *un cuarto*.
 the dining-room, *el comedor*.
 a parlour, *una sala*.
 the drawing-room, *el estrado*.
 a bed-room, *una alcoba*.
 an ante-chamber, *una anticámara*.

a dressing-room, *un tocador*.
 a closet, *un retrete*.
 the pantry, *la despensa*.
 the kitchen, *la cocina*.
 cupboard, *una alhacena*.
 a garret, *un desván*.
 an observatory, *un mirador*.
 a tiled roof, *un tejado*.
 a window, *una ventana*.
 a balcony, *un balcón*.
 a door, *una puerta*.
 the knocker, *el aldabón*.
 the threshold, *el umbral*.
 the cellar, *la bodega*.
 the stable, *la caballeriza*.
 the coach-house, *la cochera*.
 the garden, *el jardín*.
 the park, *el parque*.

Of Household Furniture.

A bedstead, *una armadura de cama*.
 a feather-bed, *un plumón*.
 a mattress, *un xergón*.

a flock-mattress, *un colchón de lana*.
 a pillow, *una almohada*.
 a sheet, *una sábana*.

a pillow-case, <i>una funda de almohada.</i>	the sideboard, <i>el aparador</i>
the blankets, <i>las mantas.</i>	a mirror, <i>un espejo.</i>
the counterpane, <i>la colcha.</i>	a chandelier, <i>una araña.</i>
a chair, <i>una silla.</i>	a pianoforte, <i>un fortepiano.</i>
a table, <i>una mesa.</i>	a wardrobe, <i>guardaropa.</i>
an easy chair, <i>un sillón.</i>	a cabinet, <i>un gabinete.</i>
a sofa, <i>un canapé.</i>	a screen, <i>un biombo.</i>
the curtains, <i>las cortinas.</i>	a trunk, <i>un baúl.</i>
the carpet, <i>la alfombra.</i>	a box, <i>una caja.</i>
a bookcase, <i>un estante.</i>	a bureau drawer, <i>una gaveta.</i>
a bureau, <i>una papelería.</i>	a table drawer, <i>un cajón.</i>
a writing-desk, <i>un escritorio.</i>	

Of the Table, &c.

The table, <i>la mesa.</i>	a jug, <i>un jarro.</i>
the tablecloth, <i>el mantel.</i>	a table-service, <i>un servicio de mesa.</i>
a napkin, <i>una servilleta.</i>	a tea-service, <i>un servicio de té.</i>
a knife, <i>un cuchillo.</i>	the teapot, <i>la tetera.</i>
a fork, <i>un tenedor.</i>	a coffee-pot, <i>una cafetera.</i>
a spoon, <i>una cuchara.</i>	a chocolate-pot, <i>un chocolatero.</i>
a saltcellar, <i>un salero.</i>	the mill, <i>el molinillo.</i>
a plate, <i>un plato.</i>	a sugar-basin, <i>el azuquero.</i>
a sauce-tureen, <i>una salsera.</i>	the milk-pot, <i>la taza de la leche.</i>
the cruets, <i>las ampolletas.</i>	a cup, <i>una tasa.</i>
the pepper-box, <i>el pimentero.</i>	a saucer, <i>un platillo.</i>
the mustard-pot, <i>el mostazero.</i>	
a glass, <i>un vaso.</i>	
a decanter, <i>una botella.</i>	

Of Meat and Drink.

Flesh, <i>carne.</i>	veal, <i>ternera.</i>
boiled meat, <i>carne cocida.</i>	venison, <i>venado.</i>
roasted meat, <i>carne asada.</i>	lamb, <i>cordero.</i>
fish, <i>pescado.</i>	ham, <i>jamon.</i>
beef, <i>vaca.</i>	game, <i>caza.</i>
mutton, <i>carnero.</i>	a chicken, <i>un pollo.</i>
bacon, <i>tocino.</i>	a fowl, <i>una gallina.</i>

- a turkey, *un pavo*.
 a pigeon, *un pichon*.
 a partridge, *una perdiz*.
 a pheasant, *un faisán*.
 a duck, *un pato*.
 a goose, *un ganso*.
 eggs, *huevos*.
 sauce, *salsa*.
 the vegetables, *las verduras*.
 the pickles, *los escabeches*.
 salt, *sal*.
 pepper, *pimienta*.
 mustard, *mostaza*.
 oil, *azeite*.
 vinegar, *vinagre*.
 pudding, *pudding*.
 the first course, *el primer cubierto*.
 the second course, *el segundo cubierto*.
 bread, *pan*.
 new bread, *pan fresco*.
 stale bread, *pan duro*.
 wine, *vino*.
 red wine, *vino tinto*.
 white wine, *vino blanco*.
 salad, *ensalada*.
 cheese, *queso*.
 butter, *manteca*.
 beer, *cerveza*.
 table-beer, *cerveza floja*.
 water, *agua*.
 a meat-pie, *un pastel*.
 a fish-pie, *una empanada*.
 a mince-pie, *una costrada*.
 a fruit-pie, *una torta*.
 the dessert, *los postres*.
 grapes, *uvas*, f.
 melons, *melones*, m.
 pines, *piñas*, f.
 oranges, *naranjas*, f.
 pears, *peras*, f.
 apples, *manzanas*, f.
 peaches, *melocotones*.
 apricots, *damascos*, m.
 walnuts, *nueces*, f.
 filberts, *avellanas*, f.
 almonds, *almendras*, f.
 raisins, *pasas*, f.
 blanc manger, *manjar blanco*.
 co.
 jellies, *jaleas*.
 tea, *té*.
 coffee, *café*.
 chocolate, *chocolate*.
 cream, *nata*.
 milk, *leche*.
 loaf-sugar, *azúcar de pilón*.
 moist-sugar, *azúcar terciado*.
 toast, *tostada*.
 brandy, *aguardiente*.
 rum, *ron*.
 punch, *ponche*.
 negus, *sangría*.
 orgeat, *orchata*.
 lemonade, *limonada*.

USEFUL FAMILIAR DIALOGUES.

Explanation of the Marks of Reference employed in the following Dialogues.

O means *observation*; R, *rule*; the small italics refer to the notes; figures after R. denote the number of the rule, and after any other letter they refer to the page.

N. B. Where figures are parted by a star, those on the left refer to the page, and those on the right correspond with a similar figure printed in the body of the page.

I. *To accost, inquire after health, and take leave.*

Good morning, gentlemen. Buenos dias, caballeros, R. 21.

A good morning to you. Téngalos, *vm. muy buenos*, R. 46.

Madam, I wish you a good afternoon. *Buenas tardes* tenga *vm.*, *señora*, p. 134.

Good night, sir. *Buenas noches*, *señor*, R. 21.

I wish you a good night. *Buenas* se las *dé Dios á vm.* R. 51, c.

How do you do? ¿*Cómo está vm?*

Very well, at your service. Bueno, *para servir á vm.* R. 39, a.

And you, how do you do? ¿*Y vm., como lo pasa?*

So so, or, But so so. *Así así*, or, *Tal qual*.

How is your mother? ¿*Como está su madre de vm.?* O. 118.

She is not very well. *No está muy buena*, R. 96.

She is rather indisposed. *Está algo indispuesta*, R. 96.

How is all your family? ¿*Como está su familia de vm.?* O. 118.

They are all well except my sister. *Todos buenos ménos mi hermana*.

What ails her? ¿*Que tiene?*

She has a cough.	<i>Tiene tos.</i>
She has a violent cold.	<i>Está muy resfriada, R. 96.</i>
I am exceedingly sorry for it.	<i>Lo siento infinito, R. 51, e.</i>
Does she keep her bed?	<i>¿ Está en cama? R. 103.</i>
No, sir, she is in the parlour.	<i>No, señor, está en la sala, ibid.</i>
She is just gone out.	<i>Acaba de salir, R. 131, a.</i>
I should be happy to see her.	<i>Me alegraría mucho de verla, R. 116, a.</i>
She will return presently.	<i>Vol verá pronto.*</i>
I have no time to see her to-day.	<i>No tengo tiempo de verla hoy, R. 131, d.</i>
I must go to <i>St. James's Square</i> .	<i>Es preciso que vaya á la Plaza de Santiago, R. 17.</i>
Do not go so soon.	<i>No se vaya vm. tan pronto, O. 203.</i>
Stop awhile.	<i>Quédese vm. un rato, p. 101, *1.</i>
Indeed I cannot.	<i>Devéras no puedo.</i>
Are you in great haste?	<i>¿ Está vm. muy depriesa? R. 105.</i>
Yes, sir, I have a great deal to do.	<i>Si, señor, tengo mucho que hacer, R. 108.</i>
I came only to inquire how you all were.	<i>Solo vine para preguntar como estaban vms., O. 234</i>
I thank you for this visit.	<i>Agradezco á vm. esta visita, R. 118.</i>
Gentlemen, your most obedient.	<i>Señores, á la obediencia de vms., R. 1.</i>
Madam, your most humble servant.	<i>Señora, á los pies de vm., ibid.</i>
Your servant, sir.	<i>Servidora de vm. caballero.</i>
Give my respects to your mother.	<i>Dé vm. muchas expresiones de mi parte á su madre, R. 118.</i>
Remember me to your sister.	<i>Muchas memorias á su hermana de vm., p. 119.</i>
Good-by.	<i>Quédese vm. con Dios.</i>

* See the author's Synonyms, page 31.

Good-by to you.
Till we meet again.
Farewell.
Adieu.

Vaya vm. con Dios.
Hasta la vista.
Que vm. lo pase bien.
Adios.

II. To ask a Favour.

- Somebody* knocks at the door. *Alguno llama á la puerta,*
R. 78.
- See *who* knocks. *Ve quien llama,* R. 59.
- Who is there? *¿ Quien está ahí ?* R. 103.
- A friend. *Gente de paz.*
- Sir, it is a gentleman. *Señor, es un caballero,* R. 99.
- Whom does he inquire for? *¿ Por quien pregunta ?* R. 118, c.
- For you. *Por vm.,* R. 72.
- Show him in. *Que pase adelante,* p. 203.
- Your servant, sir. *Servidor de vm ; caballero.*
- Sir, I am yours. *Señor, yo lo soy de vm.,* R. 109.
- I come to solicit a favour. *Vengo á solicitar una gracia,* O. 222.
- You may command me. *Mande vm. quanto guste,* p. 205, *1.
- Do me the favour to send this letter to your brother. *Hágame vm. el favor de mandar esta carta á su hermano de vm.,* R. 131, d.
- I will do it with pleasure. *Lo haré con mucho gusto,* R. 51, e.
- You may rely on being obeyed. *Cuenta vm. con que será obedecido,* R. 23, b.
- Sir, I am very much obliged to you. *Señor, viva vm. muchos años,* R. 21, b.
- You are very welcome, sir. *Para servir á vm. caballero,* O. 234.
- When will your brother return to London? *¿ Quando volverá á Londres su hermano de vm. ?* O. 222.
- Has he been long gone to his villa? *¿ Ha mucho que se fué á su quinta ?* R. 117.

- He has been there three months. *Hace tres meses que está allá, O. 200.*
- He will not come back till the end of November, or the beginning of December. *No volverá hasta fines de Noviembre ó principios de Diciembre, p. 202, *1.*
- I shall come and see him after I know that he is in London. *Vendré á verle *despues que sepa que está en Londres, O. 222.*
- I will send you word immediately after he arrives. *Luego* que llegue se lo mandaré á decir á vm.*
- I shall be much obliged. *Lo estimaré mucho.*

III. Concerning the Time of the Day.

- What o'clock is it? *¿ Qué hora es?*
- Do me the favour to tell me what it is o'clock. *Hágame vm. el favor de decirme qué hora es, R. 131, d.*
- It is very near twelve. *Van á dar las doce, O. 222.*
- It is one o'clock. *Es la una.*
- It has not struck two. *No han dado las dos.*
- It is a quarter after three. *Son las tres y quarto.*
- Half an hour past four. *Las quatro y media.*
- A quarter to six. *Las seis ménos quarto.*
- Twenty minutes after eight. *Las ocho y veinte minutos.*
- Five-and-twenty minutes to nine. *Las nueve ménos veinte y cinco minutos.*
- It struck ten just now. *Acaban de dar las diez R. 131, a.*
- It is about eleven. *Cerca de las once, p. 246.*
- It is striking eleven. *Las once estan dando, R. 104.*
- The clock strikes. *Da el reloj, p. 195, *1.*
- I don't hear it strike. *No le oygo dar.*
- Look at your watch. *Mire vm. su reloj.*
- It goes too fast. *Adelanta.*
- It goes too slow. *Atrasa.*
- It does not go. *No anda.*
- It is down. *Está parado.*
- Wind it up. *Déle vm. cuerda.*

* See the author's Synonyms, page 165.

IV. *Concerning the State of the Weather.*

How is the weather?	¿ <i>Qué tiempo hace?</i> N. B. 193.
<i>It is</i> fair weather.	<i>Hace buen tiempo</i> , ibid.
It is foul weather.	<i>Hace mal tiempo</i> , R. 24.
It is hot.	<i>Hace calor</i> , N. B. 193.
It is very cold.	<i>Hace mucho frio</i> , ibid.
It has snowed.	<i>Ha nevado</i> .
It freezes.	<i>Hiela</i> .
It thaws.	<i>Deshiela</i> .
It rains.	<i>Llueve</i> .
It mizzles.	<i>Llovizna</i> .
The rain poured down in torrents.	<i>Llovió á cántaros</i> .
It thunders.	<i>Truena</i> .
It lightens.	<i>Relampaguea</i> .
The lightning struck the house.	<i>El rayo cayó en la casa</i> .
I saw <i>but</i> one flash.	Solo ví un relámpago, R. 142, a.
I heard two claps.	<i>Oí dos truenos</i> .
There is a sleet falling.	<i>Cae aguanieve</i> .
There is a very thick mist.	<i>Hace una neblina muy espesa</i> .
A fog rises.	<i>Se levanta una niebla</i> .
The wind is high.	<i>Corre mucho viento</i> .
The wind blows hard.	<i>Hace mucho ayre</i> .
The wind blows cold.	<i>Viene el viento muy frio</i> , R. 109.
It begins to grow light.	<i>Amanece</i> .
It begins to grow dark.	<i>Anochece</i> .
It is day.	<i>Es de dia</i> .
It is night.	<i>Es de noche</i> .
The sun rises.	<i>El sol sale</i> .
The sun sets.	<i>El sol se pone</i> .
It is a starlight night.	<i>El cielo está estrellado</i> .
The moon shines.	<i>Hace luna</i> .

V. *At rising in the Morning*

John!	¡ <i>Juan!</i>
Sir.	<i>Señor</i> .

- Draw the curtains and open the window. *Corre las cortinas y abre la ventana, p. 203.*
- Is there a fire? *¿Hay lumbre?*
- Yes, sir, a very good one. *Sí, señor, muy buena, R. 30.*
- Air me a shirt, and bring it to me. *Caléntame una camisa, y tráemela, R. 51, b.*
- Here it is, sir. *Aquí está, señor, R. 103.*
- Give me my gown and slippers. *Dame mi bata y mis chinelas, R. 54.*
- Give me my pantaloons. *Dame mis pantalones.*
- The tailor has not brought them. *El sastre no los ha traído, R. 47.*
- Hand me, then, my kersey-mere small clothes and silk stockings. *Vengan pues mis calzones de casimiro y las medias de seda, R. 17.*
- They have two holes and a stitch down. *Tienen dos puntos y una carrera.*
- Give them to the maid to take them up, and give me a pair of thread stockings and the leather small clothes. *Dáselas á la criada para que los coja, y dame un par de medias de hilo y los calzones de cuero, R. 51, a.*
- Bring me some warm water. *Tráeme un poco de agua caliente, R. 16, c.*
- Shall I help you to dress? *¿Quiere vm. que le ayude á vestir? R. 130.*
- No: whilst I dress myself, sharpen my razors. *No: mientras *que me visto, afila mis navajas.*
- Shall I shave you, sir? *¿Quiere vm. que le afeite, señor? O. 236.*
- No: go and get breakfast ready. *No: ve á aprontar el almuerzo, O. 222.*
- What will you have for breakfast? *¿Que quiere vm. almorzar?*
- Will you have coffee and rolls, or tea and toast? *¿Quiere vm. café con molletes, ó té con tostadas?*
- No: give me chocolate and bread and butter, and a boiled egg. *No: dame chocolate con pan y manteca, y un huevo pasado por agua.*
- Bring me my boots. *Tráeme mis botas*

* See the author's Synonyms, page 140.

- You have not cleaned them well. *No las has limpiado bien, R. 137.*
- Black them again. *Vuelve á darles tinte, O. 222.*
- Go to the stable, and tell the groom to saddle my horse. *Ve á la caballeriza, y dile al mozo que ensille mi caballo, O. 236.*
- Sir, your horse is at the door. *Su caballo de vm. señor, está á la puerta, R. 103.*
- Here are the spurs, but the whip is mislaid. *Aquí* estan las espuelas, pero el látigo se ha extraviado, ibid.*
- Give me a switch then. *Dame pues una varita, R. 46.*
- I shall return at four to dress; and so take care to have every thing ready. *Yo volveré á las quatro á vestirme, conque cuidado que lo tengas todo pronto, O. 222.*

VI. *At Dinner.*

- Dinner is on the table. *La comida está en la mesa, p. 249.*
- Gentlemen, if you please, let us go into the dining-room. *Caballeros, si vms. gustan, vamos al comedor.*
- The proposal pleases me very much. *Muchísimo me agrada la propuesta, p. 245.*
- Walk in. *Pase vm. adelante.*
- I will follow you. *Voy á seguir á vm., O. 222.*
- No, sir; after you. *No, señor; despues de vm., p. 246.*
- Gentlemen, whilst you spend the time in compliments the dinner gets cold. *Señores, mientras que vms. gastan el tiempo en cumplimientos se enfria la comida, R. 126.*
- Madam, do me the favour to take the first place. *Señora, hágame vm. el favor de tomar el primer asiento, R. 131, d.*
- Mr. James, be pleased to take the next seat to the lady. *Señor Don Diego, sírvase vm. de sentarse junto á la Señora, ibid. b.*
- Who likes soup? *¿ Quien quiere sopa? R. 71.*

* See the author's Synonyms, page 123.

- Madam, will you allow me to send you a slice of the salmon ? *¿ Señora, gusta vm. que le mande una tajada del salmon ? R. 1, b.*
- Do you like shrimp-sauce or anchovy. *¿ Le gusta á vm. la salsa de camarones ó la de anchovas ? O. 217.*
- Boy, take the soup and fish away. *Muchacho, quita la sopa y el pescado. R. 13.*
- Gome, gentlemen, let us take a glass together. *Vamos, señores, echemos un trago juntos, p. 203.*
- Will you not take a glass of wine with us ? *¿ No quiere vm. tomar un vaso de vino con nosotros ? R. 48.*
- No, sir, I shall content myself with a glass of beer for the present. *No, señor, por ahora me contentaré con un vaso de cerveza, R. 24.*
- Bring us the decanters and glasses, and give the gentleman a glass of porter. *Tráenos las botellas y las copitas, y dale al señor un vaso de cerveza fuerte, R. 13.*
- I like small beer better. *Mas me gusta la cerveza floxa.*
- Gentlemen, your healths. *Señores, á la salud de vms., O. 118.*
- I thank you, sir. *Buen provecho le haga á vm., R. 24.*
- Give us new bread, this bread is stale. *Danos pan tierno, este pan es duro.*
- Cut some slices of home-made bread. *Corta unas rebanadas de pan casero, R. 16, a.*
- Mr. Peter, will you do me the favour to carve that fowl ? *Señor Don Pedro, ¿ quiere vm. hacerme el favor de trinchar esa gallina ? R. 131, d.*
- You are a better carver than I. *Vm. es mejor trinchante que yo, R. 27.*
- Madam, I am going to send you the breast. *Señora, voy á mandarle á vm. las pechugas, O. 222.*
- Do you like the wing or the leg ? *¿ Le gusta á vm. el alon ó la pierna ? R. 51, c.*
- Is there any one who likes the liver and gizzard ? *¿ Hay á quien le guste el hígado y la molleja ? O. 217.*

- Which do you prefer, boiled or roast? *¿ Qual le gusta á vm. mas, el cocido ó el asado?*
- I will cut you a slice of the sir-loin. *Le cortaré á vm. una tajada del lomo de vaca, R. 1, b.*
- No, I thank you, I like this hash better. *No, viva vm. mil años, me gusta á mi mas bien este guisado, R. 51, c.*
- Do me the favour to help yourself. *Hágame vm. el favor de servirse á sí mismo, R. 51, d.*
- Eat some potatoes, greens, or pickles. *Coma vm. patatas, berzas, ó escabeches.*
- The stuffing of this fowl is very insipid. *El relleno de esta gallina está muy zozzo, R. 98.*
- Put pepper and salt to it. *Echele vm. sal y pimienta, R. 51, e.*
- What dish is *that* you have before you? *¿ Que plato es ese que tiene vm. delante? O. 126.*
- I have two, and I will tell you *what* they are. *Tengo dos, y le diré á vm. lo que son, R. 67.*
- The one is minced veal, and the other is stewed mutton with forced-meat balls. *El uno es un gigote de ternera, y el otro un estofado de carnero con albóndigas.*
- Bring me the melted butter. *Tráeme la salsa de manteca.*
- I am sorry I have no game to offer you. *Siento mucho que no tengo ninguna caza que presentarles á vms., p. 245.*
- I prefer a good pullet to all the partridges and hares in the world. *Yo prefiero una buena polla á todas las perdices y liebres del mundo, R. 120.*
- I am going to cut you a small slice of the neat's tongue. *Voy á cortarle á vm. una tajadita de la lengua de vaca, p. 29.*
- No, sir, no more. *No, señor, no mas.*
- I have eaten sufficiently. *He comido bastante.*
- That lady has scarcely eaten any thing. *Esa señora no ha comido casi nada.*
- I beg your pardon; you have helped me to every thing there was on table. *Perdone vm. ; vm. me ha servido de quanto habia en la mesa.*

- I hope, gentlemen, you will not suffer me to eat alone.
- Come, colonel, what shall I help you to?
- Hand me over a small slice of ham, only to keep you company.
- Will you have fat or lean? I like *both* very well.
- Madam, will you allow me to help you to some apple-pie or to some plum-pie?
- Do you like crust?
- Yes, sir, but do not give me too much juice.
- That is enough.
- I will thank you to send me a small piece of cheese.
- Cut yourself some bread.
- What! do you like crumb better than crust?
- I have not dressed the salad, in order that every one may dress it to his taste.
- Boy, bring the cruets which are on the sideboard.
- Uncork that bottle.
- I have lost *my* corkscrew.
- Take *mine*.
- This is *Scotch* beer, and I should like you to taste it.
- Espero, señores, que no me dexarán vms. comer solo.*
- ¿Vamos, señor coronel, de que quiere vm. que le sirva? p. *176.
- Venga una tajadita de jamon, solo por† hacer compañía á vm., O. 234.*
- ¿Quiere vm. magro ó gordo? Ambos me gustan bien, R. 88.
- ¿Gusta vm. señora, que la sirva del pastel de manzanas ó del de ciruelas?
- ¿Le gusta á vm. la costra? Si, señor, pero no me dé vm. mucho zumo.
- Basta.*
- Estimaré me mande vm. un pedazito de queso.*
- Córtese vm. pan.*
- ¿Que! ¿le gusta á vm. el migajon mas que la corteza? O. 217.
- No he aderezado la ensalada para que cada uno la aderece á su gusto, R. 133, a.*
- Muchacho, trae las ampollitas que estan en el aparador, p. 249.*
- Destapa esa limeta, O. 126.*
- He perdido mi tirabuzon, R. 54.*
- Toma el mio, R. 56.*
- Esta es cerveza de Escocia, y quiero que la prueben vms., R. 18, c.*

† See the author's Synonyms, page 1.

We will give you our opinion.	Le <i>dirémos</i> á vm. <i>nuestro parecer</i> , R. 51, c.
Well, what do you think?	<i>Pues, ¿que tal?</i>
It is very good, but very heady.	<i>Es muy buena, pero fortísima</i> , R. 30, a.
Boy, rinse <i>those</i> glasses.	<i>Muchacho, lava esos vasos</i> , O. 126.
Set the wine on the table, and bring <i>us</i> the dessert.	<i>Pon el vino en la mesa, y tráenos los postres</i> , R. 46.

VII. *At retiring to Rest.*

John, is my bed made?	¿ <i>Juan, está hecha mi cama?</i> R. 98.
The maid has just made it.	<i>Acaba de hacerla la criada</i> , R. 131, a.
Then tell her to warm it.	<i>Pues dile que la caliente.</i>
Light a candle.	<i>Enciende una vela.</i>
Open my drawer, and take out a clean night-cap.	<i>Abre mi gaveta, y saca un gorro limpio.</i>
Has the washerwoman brought my clean linen?	¿ <i>Ha traído la lavandera mi ropa limpia?</i>
Yes, sir, there is nothing wanting.	<i>Si, señor, no falta nada.</i>
Then pay her the bill when she comes <i>for</i> the foul linen.	<i>Pues págale la cuenta quando venga por la ropa sucia</i> , p. 249.
Help me to pull off my coat.	<i>Ayúdame á quitar la casaca</i> , R. 130.
Now you may go away, and I will ring the bell when I want you.	<i>Ahora puedes irte, que yo tocaré la campanilla quando te haya menester.</i>
Draw the bed-curtains.	<i>Corre las cortinas de la cama.</i>
Awake me to-morrow as soon as it is daylight.	<i>Despiertame mañana luego* que sea de día</i>
I must rise very early.	<i>Es menester† que me levante muy temprano</i> , O. 193.
Put out the candle, and go to bed.	<i>Apaga la vela, y vete á acostar</i> , O. 222.

* See the author's Synonyms, page 165.

† See the author's Synonyms, page 115.

- I have not put the date to them. *Aun* no les he puesto la fecha, R. 51.*
- What day of the month is to-day? *A como estamos hoy?*
- The twenty-fifth. *A veinte y cinco, R. 72.*
- Whilst I fold up this letter make me a packet of the other four. *Mientras† cierro esta carta hágame vm. un pliego de las otras quatro; R. 86.*
- Seal them, and then I will write the direction. *Séllelas vm. y luego‡ les pondre el sobrescrito.*
- Will you have me put sealing wax or wafers to them? *¿ Quiere vm. que les ponga lacre ú obleas? R. 133.*
- Seal the packet with red wax, and the letter with black. *Selle vm. el pliego con lacre encarnado, y la carta con negro.*
- Are you in mourning? *¿ Está vm. de luto? R. 105.*
- No, sir, but this is a letter of condolence. *No, señor, pero es carta de pésame.*
- Will you have me seal them with the arms or with the cipher? *¿ Quiere vm. que las selle con las armas ó con la cifra?*
- It is immaterial. *No importa.*
- If you like, I will send them by my servant. *Si vm. gusta, las mandaré con mi criado.*
- I shall be much obliged, and tell him to pay for them. *Lo estimaré mucho, y dígame vm. que las pague, R. 51, e.*
- Take these letters to the post, and do not forget to pay the postage. *Lleva estas cartas al correo, y no se te olvide de pagar el porte, R. 123.*

IX. To hire a Lodging.

- Will you come with me to hire a lodging? *¿ Quiere vm. venir conmigo á alquilar un alojamiento? R. 48, a.*
- I will accompany you with much pleasure. *Le acompañaré á vm. con mucho gusto.*
- In what quarter of the town do you wish to lodge? *¿ En que barrio quiere vm. alojarse?*

* See the author's Synonyms, page 12.

† See the author's Synonyms, page 140.

‡ See the author's Synonyms, page 165.

- Near the Admiralty. Cerca del *Almirantazgo*, p 246.
- Then let us go this way. *Vamos pues por aquí*, p *176.
- What is the name of this street? ¿ *Como se llama esta calle* ? O. 126.
- Broad Street. *La calle ancha.*
- Here is a bill. *Aquí hay cartel.*
- Knock at that door. *Llame vm. á esa puerta.*
- Who is there? ¿ *Quien está ahí* ?† R. 103.
- A friend. *Gente de paz.*
- I wish to speak to the master or mistress of the house. Quiero hablar con el amo ó el ama de esta casa, O. 236.
- Have you any rooms to let? ¿ *Tiene vm. quartos de alquiler* ?
- Yes, sir. Will you have the first floor or the ground floor? *Si, señor. ¿ Quiere vm. el quarto principal ó el quarto baxo* ?
- Neither. I want apartments on the second floor. *Ni uno ni otro. Quiero una vivienda en el quarto segundo.*
- Be pleased to come up, and I will show you the rooms I have. *Sírvase vm. de subir, y le mostraré á vm. los quartos que tengo*, R. 131, b.
- How many do you want? ¿ *Quantos quiere vm.* ?
- I want a parlour and bedroom with a closet for myself and a garret for my servant. *Necesito sala y alcoba con un retrete para mí, y un desvan para mi criado.*
- Must they be furnished? ¿ *Es menester que sean alhajados* ? O. 193.
- No, I have furniture. *No, tengo muebles*, R. 107.
- These apartments suit me very well. *Me quadran bien estos aposentos*, R. 121.
- How much do you ask for them? ¿ *Quanto pide vm. por ellos* ? p. 249.
- How long will you take them for? ¿ *Por quanto tiempo quiere vm. alquilarlos* ?

For a fortnight or three weeks. *Por dos ó tres semanas.*

It is not worth my while to let them for less than one month. *No me vale la pena el alquilarlos por ménos de un mes. R. 27, b.*

And how much am I to pay a month? *¿Y quanto he de pagar al mes? R. 108.*

At the rate of forty dollars a year. *A razon de quarenta duros al año.*

I think that is too much. *Me parece demasiado.*

I cannot let them for less. *No puedo alquilarlos por ménos.*

Let us see the garret. *¿Veamos el desvan?*

Here it is, and very roomy. *Aquí está, y bastante capaz, R. 103.*

Can I board with you? *¿Puedo yo comer aquí* con vm.?*

As you please. *Como vm. guste, p. 205 *1.*

And how much do you ask for board and lodging together? *¿Y quanto quiere vm. por quarto y comida juntos? R. 22.*

Thirty dollars a month. *Treinta pesos al mes.*

Well, I shall begin on Monday next. *Pues, empezaré el Lunes que viene, p. 249.*

When you please. *Quando vm. gustare.*

X. To hire a Chaise, Horse, or Boat.

I want a travelling coach. *Necesito un coche de camino.*

How many mules do you want? *¿Quantas mulas quiere vm.?*

Six. *Seis.*

Very well, whither are you going? *Muy bien está, ¿adonde† va vm.?*

I am going to Seville, and it must be at my door this afternoon. *Voy á Sevilla, y es menester que esté á mi puerta esta tarde, R. 117.*

At what o'clock? *¿A que hora? R. 72.*

At six o'clock precisely. *A las seis en punto, R. 72.*

Where do you live? *¿Donde† vive vm.?*

Opposite the Park. *Enfrente del Parque.*

* See the author's Synonyms, page 122.

† See the author's Synonyms, page 11.

- You shall be attended to, sir. *Será vm. servido.*
 Do not you want horses? *¿ No le faltan á vm. cabal-
 los? O. p. 217.*
 I have no objection to take one, if you have some good ones. *No tengo reparo en tomar uno, si los tiene vm. buenos.*
There are no better. No los hay mejores, p. 191.
 Well, saddle me one, and I will take it away with me. *Pues, ensílleme vm. uno, y me le llevaré conmigo.*
 Put no housings on him. *No le ponga vm. gualdrapa.*
 Girt him tight. *Apriétele vm. las cinchas.*
 Put him on a martingale and the bridle. *Póngale vm. una gamarra y el freno.*
 I do not like these stirrups, they are too small. *No me gustan los estribos, son muy pequeños.*
 These are larger. *Estos son mayores.*
 I want to hire a vessel. *Quiero fletar un barco.*
 Here is the master. *Aquí* está el patron.*
 Whither do you wish to go? *¿ Adonde quiere vm. ir?*
 To Cadiz. How much do you want for the hire? *A Cadiz, ¿quanto quiere vm. por el flete? p. 249.*
 You shall give me forty rials. *Me dará vm. quarenta reales.*
 Very well, but I must go instantly. *En hora buena, pero es menester que vaya inmediatamente, O. 193.*
 We will set sail immediately you come on board. *Luego† que venga vm. abordo nos harémos á la vela, R. 133, a.*
 Where is your vessel? *¿ Donde está su barco de vm.? O. 118.*
 Out yonder. *Allí* fuera.*
 I must take a boat in order to go there. *Es preciso‡ que tome una lancha para ir allá, O. 193.*
 Here is a waterman. *Ahí* tiene vm. un barquero.*

XI. *On setting out on a Journey.*

Sir, I come to take my *Señor, vengo á despedirme*

* See the author's Synonyms, page 122.

† See the author's Synonyms, page 165.

‡ See the author's Synonyms, page 115.

leave of you, because I am going to Madrid.	de vm. <i>porque me voy a Madrid</i> , R. 125
When do you set out?	¿ <i>Quando parte vm.</i> ?
To-morrow morning.	<i>Mañana por la mañana.</i>
Are you going in a coach or in a chaise?	¿ <i>Va vm. en coche ó en calesa</i> ? R. 134, b.
No, sir, I go on horseback.	<i>No, señor, voy á caballo.</i>
I regret exceedingly your leaving us so soon.	<i>Siento mucho que nos dexé vm. tan pronto.</i>
Sir, you favour me.	<i>Estimo el favor de vm.</i>
We must take a glass together before you go.	<i>Es menester* que echemos un trago juntos ántes que vm. se vaya</i> , R. 133, a.
Come, here is wishing you a good journey.	<i>Vaya á su buen viage.</i>
Many thanks.	<i>Muchas gracias.</i>
Is this the road to Madrid?	¿ <i>Es este el camino de Madrid</i> ? R. 17, a.
Go straight on till you come to the first public-house on the road.	<i>Vaya vm. en derechura hasta que llegue á la primera venta.</i>
How many miles are there from this place to Madrid?	¿ <i>Quantas leguas hay desde aquí á Madrid</i> ? N.B. 249.
Thirty miles.	<i>Diez leguas.</i>
Do you think I can travel so much to-day?	¿ <i>Le parece á vm. que pueda caminar tanto hoy</i> ? R. 133.
You have plenty of time to get in before sunset.	<i>Tiene vm. bastante tiempo para llegar ántes que el sol se ponga.</i>
Is the road good?	¿ <i>Hay buen camino</i> ?
Very good.	<i>Muy bueno.</i>
Which way am I to take?	¿ <i>Que camino he de tomar</i> ? R. 108.
When you come to the cross roads turn to the right.	<i>Quando llegue vm. á la encrucixada tome vm. á la derecha.</i>
Must I ascend the hill?	¿ <i>Es preciso* subir el monte</i> ?
Leave it on your left.	<i>Déxele vm. á la izquierda.</i>

* See the author's Synonyms, page 115.

May one ford the river ?	<i>Se puede vadear el rio ?</i>
They ferry it over.	<i>Se pasa con barca.</i>
Good by, sir.	<i>Adios, señor.</i>
I wish you a good journey.	<i>Dios le dé á vm. buen viage.</i>

XII. On arriving at an Inn.

Are you the ostler ?	<i>¿ Eres el mozo de caballos ?</i>
Yes, sir, what is your pleasure ?	<i>Si, señor, ¿ que gusta vm. ?</i>
Take my horse and rub him down well, give him a good feed, but do not give him drink.	<i>Toma mi caballo y estriegale bien, dale un buen pienso, pero no le des de beber.</i> <i>O. 203.</i>
Are you the landlord ?	<i>¿ Es vm. el mesonero ?</i>
Yes, sir, at your service.	<i>Si, señor, para servir á vm.,</i> <i>O. 234.</i>
I wish to lodge here to-night. Have you good rooms ?	<i>Quiero hospedarme aquí* esta noche. ¿ Tiene vm. buenos quartos ?</i>
You can see them, and choose <i>that which</i> you like best.	<i>Puede vm. verlos, y escoger el que le parezca mejor,</i> <i>R. 76, b.</i>
There is no occasion; give me a good bed, and let the sheets be clean and well aired.	<i>No hay para que; deme vm. una cama buena, y que las sábanas sean limpias y esten enxutas.</i>
Let me have some supper.	<i>Deme vm. algo de cenar.</i>
What will you have dressed ?	<i>¿ Que quiere vm. que le aderece ?</i>
A couple of pigeons.	<i>Un par de pichones.</i>
Send in the boy to take off my boots.	<i>Mande vm. al mozo para que me quite las botas,</i> <i>R. 133, a.</i>
Bring in the supper as soon as it is ready, because I wish to go early to bed	<i>Trae la cena luego† que esté pronta, por que quiero acostarme temprano.</i>
What am I indebted to you ?	<i>¿ Quanto le debo á vm. ?</i> <i>R. 118.</i>

* See the author's Synonyms, page 123.

† See the author's Synonyms, page 165.

The expenses come up to fifty rials.	<i>El gasto sube á cincuenta reales.</i>
Here they are.	<i>Ahí los tiene vm.</i>
Count them.	<i>Cuentelos vm.</i>
They are very right.	<i>Estan cabales.</i>

XIII. *On consulting a Physician.*

I have sent for you, doctor, because I feel myself very ill.	<i>He mandado por vm. señor doctor, porque me siento muy malo, p. 249.</i>
Indeed you do not look well.	<i>A la verdad no tiene vm. buen semblante.</i>
I have an inflammation in my throat, a pain in my side, and my head aches a great deal.	<i>Tengo inflamacion de garganta, dolor de costado, y me duele mucho la cabeza, O. 118.</i>
Do you cough?	<i>¿ Tose vm. ?</i>
Yes, sir, in the night.	<i>Si, señor, por la noche.</i>
How long have you been ill?	<i>¿ Quanto tiempo ha que está vm. malo ? O. 200.</i>
Since the day before yesterday.	<i>Desde ántes de ayer.</i>
Tell me in what manner this illness came on you.	<i>Dígame vm. de que modo le sobrevino esta indisposicion, R. 121.</i>
At first I felt some shiverings, then a fever came on which lasted all night.	<i>Al principio me sentí con escalofríos, y luego me entró una calentura que me duró toda la noche.</i>
Have you taken any thing?	<i>¿ Ha tomado vm. algo ? p. 199, *1.</i>
Some wine whey only.	<i>Un poco de suero de leche solamente.</i>
Have you any appetite?	<i>¿ Tiene vm. apetito ?</i>
On the contrary I feel a loathing against food.	<i>Al contrario tengo mucho hástio á la comida.</i>
Did you sup well the night before you were taken ill?	<i>¿ Cenó vm. bien la noche ántes de caer malo ? O. 247.</i>
I felt great appetite and	<i>Me sentí con ganas, y comí</i>

- ate rather more than usual. *un poco mas de lo regular.*
- Give me your arm, that I may feel your pulse. *Déme vm. el brazo para tomarle el pulso, O. 234.*
- Do me the favour to put out your tongue. *Hagame el favor de sacar la lengua, R. 131, d.*
- What do you think of my illness? *¿ Que le parece á vm. de mi enfermedad?*
- Do you think it dangerous? *¿ Cree vm. que sea de peligro? R. 133.*
- No, sir, there is no danger at present. But you must take good care of yourself. *No, señor, no hay riesgo por ahora. Pero es preciso* que vm. se cuide bien.*
- There is no doubt but you have overheated yourself. *No hay duda de que se le haya recalentado á vm. la sangre.*
- You have likewise caught a cold, and consequently the perspiration is obstructed. *Tambien le ha cogido á vm. un resfriado, y por consiguiente está obstruida la transpiracion.*
- In addition to this, your stomach is overloaded. *Ademas de esto, vm. se ha empachado.*
- Do you think it will be necessary to bleed me? *¿ Cree vm. que sea preciso* sangrarme?*
- By no means. *De ningun modo.*
- But a blister would relieve you. *Pero un verigatorio le aliviaria á vm.*
- I had rather put on leeches. *Mas bien quiero echarme sanguijuelas.*
- They would not do you so much good. *No le harian á vm. tanto provecho, p. 211, *6.*
- What am I to drink? for I am dying with thirst. *¿ Qué he de beber? porque me muero de sed, R. 116.*
- Drink plentifully of mint or balm tea, or barley water. *Beba vm. en abundancia té de yervabuena ó de torongil, ó agua de cebada.*
- I am going to prescribe for you. *Voy á recetarle á vm.*

* See the author's Synonyms, page 115.

- Send for these medicines. *Mande vm. por estos medicamentos, p. 249.*
- And take them according to the directions. *Y tómelos segun las direcciones.*
- I will mention it to the nurse. *Se lo diré á la enfermera, R. 51, c.*
- Retire early to bed. *Recójase vm. temprano.*
- Put your feet in warm water. *Dése vm. un baño de pies.*
- Keep in bed, and keep yourself warm. *Quédese vm. en cama, y abriguese bien.*
- Are my medicines brought? *¿ Han traído mis medicamentos?*
- Here they are. *Aquí estan.*
- Read the labels. *Lea vm. los rótulos*
- The emetic to be taken immediately. *Se tomará el vomitivo inmediatamente.*
- Two pills to be taken at bedtime, and the draught in the morning. *Se tomarán dos píldoras al tiempo de recogerse, y la bebida por la mañana.*
- Two table spoonfuls of the emulsion to be taken when the cough is troublesome. *Se tomarán dos cucharadas de la emulsion siempre que la tos moleste, p. 205, *1.*
- The other label says, the gargle only. *El otro rótulo dice solamente la gárgara.*
- XIV. *On speaking to a Tailor.*
- Sir, I want to get a suit of black made. *Señor maestro, quiero hacerme un vestido negro.*
- What will you have it made of? *¿ De que le quiere vm.?*
- The coat of French cloth, the waistcoat of silk, and the small-clothes of kerseymer. *La casaca de paño de Francia, la chupa de seda, y los calzones de casimiro, R. 18, c.*
- Here are some patterns. *Aquí tiene vm. muestras.*
- How many yards do I want for the coat and waistcoat? *¿ Cuantas varas necesito para casaca y chupa?*
- Two yards and a half for the coat, and a yard and a half for the waistcoat. *Dos varas y media para la casaca, vara y media para la chupa, p. 102, *9.*

- What will you have the coat lined with? *¿ De qué se ha de aforrar la casaca ?*
 With the same. *De lo mismo.*
 Make me a suit to fit well. *Hágame vm. un vestido que me venga bien.*
 I shall give you satisfaction. *Quedará vm. contento.*
 When will you bring it me? *¿ Quando me le traerá vm. ?*
R. 51, e.
 As soon as possible, sir. *Señor, quanto antes.*
 Will you be pleased to try on your suit? *¿ Quiere vm. probarse el vestido ?*
 That suit becomes you well. *Ese vestido le cae* á vm. bien.*
 I like this suit very well. *Me gusta mucho este vestido.*
 Make me a blue cloth coat with gilt buttons, a pair of pantaloons of the same colour, and three pair of nankeen trowsers. *Hágame vm. una casaca de paño azul con botones dorados, un par de pantalones del mismo color, y tres pares de calzones de marinero de mahon, R.17.*

XV. *On speaking to a Shoemaker.*

- Make me a pair of shoes. *Hágame vm. un par de zapatos.*
 When do you want them? *¿ Para quando los quiere vm. ?*
 On Sunday without fail. *Para el Domingo sin falta.*
 The last were good for nothing. *Los últimos no valian nada.*
 They did not last a fortnight. *No me duráron quince dias.*
 This shoe hurts me. *Este zapato me lastima.*
 Your foot is not quite home yet. *Vm. no ha entrado el pié todavía.*
 This shoe does not fit me. *No me viene bien este zapato.*
 It fits too close. *Está muy ajustado.*
 It presses on my instep. *Me aprieta un poco en el empeíne, O. 118.*

* See Colloquial Idioms, Exercises, p. 107.

- It will widen in a few days. *Se ensanchará á pocos dias.*
 Well, make me another pair like this, and a pair of boots, and bring me the boots as soon as they are finished. *Bien, hágame vm. otro par como este, y un par de botas, y tráygamelas botas luego que esten acabadas.*
 I will bring them to you next week. *Las traeré á vm. la semana que viene.*

XVI. On some of the most frequent Topics of Conversation.

- Do you know any thing new? *¿ Sabe vm. algo de nuevo ?*
R. 81, a.
 What news is there ? *¿ Que noticias hay ?*
 Have you read the Gazette? *¿ Ha leído vm. la Gazeta ?*
It is reported that the Turks have defeated the Russians. *Se dice que los Turcos han derrotado á los Rusos, p. 145.*
 Say *the contrary*, for it is the Russians who have defeated the Turks. *Diga vm. lo contrario, porque son los Rusos los que han derrotado á los Turcos, p. 36, and R. 25.*
 I have heard so, but I believe not. *He oído decir que sí, pero creo que no, O. 244.*
 There have been many killed on both sides. *De una parte y otra ha habido mucha gente muerta.*
 It has not been a general engagement, but of one detachment against another. *No ha sido funcion general, sino de un destacamento con otro.*
 Do you know the number of wounded ? *¿ Sabe vm. el numero de heridos ?*
It is not yet known. *Aun no se sabe, p. 145.*
 The enemy has retired very severely handled. *Los enemigos se han retirado muy maltratados.*
 They have lost all their artillery. *Han perdido toda la artilleria.*
 Whom do you know it from ? *¿ De quien lo sabe vm. ?*
R. 69.
 I have heard it related by persons of great veracity. *Lo he oído contar á personas fidedignas.*

- What says the Spanish Gazette? *¿Que dice la Gazeta de España?*
- It brings the intelligence of the siege of Alicant by the French. *Trae el sitio de Alicante por los Franceses, R. 25.*
- The besieged have made a sally. *Han hecho una salida los sitiados, R. 45, b.*
- They have demolished the works of the besiegers. *Han demolido las obras de los sitiadores.*
- They have spiked the cannon. *Han clavado la artilleria.*
- The King's Regiment has done wonders. *El Regimiento del Rey ha hecho prodigios, R. 17.*
- If the place be taken by assault, they will give no quarter. *Si la plaza se toma por asalto, no darán quartel.*
- The governor will never capitulate, if the garrison be to remain prisoners of war. *Nunca capitulará el gobernador, si la guarnicion ha de quedar prisionera de guerra.*
- Let us talk of something else. *Hablemos de otra cosa.*
- Do you know, gentlemen, that the governor's daughter is going to be married? *¿ Saben vms. señores, como la hija del gobernador se casa?*
- To whom? *¿ Con quien?*
- To the son of the mayor. *Con el hijo del corregidor, R. 72.*
- Ah! that is a good match. *¡ Hola! es buen casamiento.*
- Her sister is just married. *Su hermana acaba de casarse, R. 131, a.*
- And who is the bridegroom? *¿ Y quien es el novio?*
- A very rich merchant. *Un comerciante muy rico.*
- How much has been the portion? *¿ Quanto lleva de dote?*
- Thirty thousand pounds. *Treinta mil libras.*
- It is a large sum. *Es un dineral.*
- The husband deserves it, he is a very worthy man. *Lo merece el marido, es muy hombre de bien, R. 30. c.*

- And the girl is very well brought up. *Pues la muchacha tambien está muy bien criada.*
- She will make an excellent family woman. *Ella será muy muger de su casa, R. 30, c.*
- Her mother did never indulge her. *La madre no le consentia nada, p. 197, *2.*
- Her daughter will thank her for it some day. *Su hija se lo agradecerá algun dia, R. 51, a.*
- You know, no doubt, that the king's physician is dead. *Ya sabrán vms. como ha muerto el médico del rey, O. 202.*
- That is the reason I have seen the nephew in mourning. *Por eso he visto al sobrino de luto.*
- It is natural to suppose that he has left him something, because the uncle was very fond of him. *Es regular que le haya dexado algo, porque el tio le queria mucho, R. 45, c.*
- They say that he has left him very well off. *Dicen que le dexa muy bien acomodado.*
- The boy has talents. *El muchacho tiene talento*
- The minister patronises him greatly. *Le ampara mucho el ministro.*
- He has had the good fortune of taking his fancy,* and thus has obtained† a very good situation. *Ha tenido la dicha de caerle en gracia,* y así ha logrado† un empleo muy bueno.*
- That is more than the uncle could ever obtain,‡ although§ one of the princes interested himself much for him. *Eso es mas de lo que jamas pudo conseguir‡ el tio, no obstante‡ que uno de los príncipes se empeño mucho por él.*
- I do not wonder at it, that prince and the minister are not very great friends; and I am of opinion, that although‡ H. R. H. had *No lo extraño, ese príncipe y el ministro no son muy amigos; y yo soy de parecer que aunque‡ S. A. R. se hubiese arrodillado,*

* See Colloquial Idioms, Exercises, page 112.

† See the author's Synonyms, page 172.

‡ See the author's Synonyms, page 162.

- knelt, he would not have *no hubiera alcanzado* su*
*obtained** his petition. *súplica.*
- Here comes the *fortunate* *Aquí viene el afortunado*
 Don Anthony. *Don Antonio, R. 21, a.*
- We congratulate you, sir. *Señor, le damos á vm. la*
enhora buena.
- On what, gentlemen? *¿ Y de qué, caballeros?*
- It is said that you have *Dicen que ha sacado vm.*
 drawn something in the *algo en la última loteria.*
 last lottery.
- I have gained a trifle. *He ganado una friolera.*
- How much? *¿ Quanto?*
- About two hundred pounds. *Unas docientas libras.*
- I *take* a small share in each *Yo echo mi cedula en ca-*
 lottery, but I never get *da loteria, pero nunca sa-*
 any thing. *co nada, p. 195, *2.*

* See the author's Synonyms, page 172.

DOCUMENTOS DE COMERCIO.

CARTAS DE COMERCIO.

Cadiz, 24 Enero, 1827.

A los Señores Preswick, Hermanos, y Compañía,
en Londres.

Muy Señores nuestros,

CONTESTAMOS á la muy apreciable de vms. con fha del 18 del corriente, y viendo que segun su parecer los generos de ahí que ofrecen aquí un despacho pronto y ventajoso son las lencerias, estimarémolos que nos manden vms. por la primera embarcacion que salga para esta, 20 piezas de cotonia, 40 dichas de batista, y 30 dichas de muselina, todas de la mejor calidad y á precios equitativos.

Quedamos reconocidos á sus atentas expresiones de las quales nos valdrémolos en las occurrencias.

Celebramos mucho que se nos presente esta ocasion de ofrecernos á la obediencia de vms. quienes podrán ordenarnos todo lo que fuere de su agrado.

B. L. M. de vms.

S. S. S.

LOPEZ é Hijo.

Londres, 2 de Febrero, 1827.

A los Señores Lopez é Hijo, en Cadiz.

Muy Señores nuestros,

SEGUN las órdenes de vms. en su muy apreciable del 24 del pasado, les incluimos factura y conocimiento de tres cajas de lencerias, que de su cuenta y riesgo hemos embarcado en el navio nombrado El Neptuno, al mando

COMMERCIAL DOCUMENTS.

COMMERCIAL LETTERS

Cadiz, January 24th, 1827.

Messrs. Preswick, Brothers, and Company, London.

Gentlemen,

WE acknowledge the receipt of your favour of the 19th instant; and observing that, according to your opinion, there is no article in your market which promises so advantageous and speedy a sale here as linen, you will be pleased to send us, by the first vessel which sails for this place, 20 pieces of dimity, 40 ditto of cambric, 30 ditto of muslin; the whole of the best quality and at reasonable prices.

We beg to express our thanks for your attentive offers, of which we shall avail ourselves on every occasion.

Happy in having this opportunity of tendering you our services, we request you to command them with freedom. We are, gentlemen,

your most obedient servants,

LOPEZ and Son.

London, February 2d, 1827.

Messrs. Lopez and Son, Cadiz.

Gentlemen,

AGREEABLY to the orders contained in your esteemed favour of the 24th ultimo, we enclose the invoice and bill of lading of three chests of linen, which

del Capitan Romero, quien mediante tener casi toda la carga abordo saldrá muy pronto para esa.

Nos lisonjamos que las lencerias serán de su gusto, siendo géneros todos escogidos y ventajosos así en la calidad como en el precio.

Esperando recibir de un correo á otro sus estimadas, suspendemos ampliar nuestras noticias sobre el estado de este mercado.

B. L. M. de vms.

S. S. S.

PRESWICK, HERMANOS, y Compañía.

FACTURA.

FACTURA de tres cajas de lenceria, que con la marca y los numeros márgen van embarcadas en el navio nombrado *El Neptuno*, su Capitan Manuel Romero, por los Señores Preswick, Hermanos, y Compañía, y á cuenta y riesgo de los Señores Lopez é Hijo. A saber,

		Libras.	
P. H.	} No 1. 20 <i>Piezas de Cotonia, á 3 lib.</i>	60	
C.		— 2. 40 <i>Dichas de Batista, á 5</i>	200
No. 1. é 3.		— 3. 30 <i>Dichas de Muselina, á 4</i>	120
		<hr/> 380	
<i>Derechos y gastos</i>		18 . 4 . 6	
		<hr/> 398 . 4 . 6	
<i>Comision, á 2 lib. por ciento</i>		7 . 19 . 3	
		<hr/> £406 . 3 . 9	

we have shipped on your account and risk, on board The Neptune, Captain Romero, who will very shortly sail for your port, having already nearly the whole of his cargo on board.

We flatter ourselves that the linen will give you satisfaction, being choice goods and advantageously selected both in quality and in price.

Being in daily expectation of your favours, we shall defer giving further advice respecting the state of this market.

We are, gentlemen,
your obedient servants,
PRESWICK, BROTHERS, and Company.

INVOICE.

INVOICE of three chests of linen, marked and numbered as per margin, shipped by Messrs. Preswick, Brothers, and Company, on board The Neptune, Emanuel Romero master, for the account and risk of Messrs. Lopez and Son. To wit,

<i>P. H.</i> <i>C.</i> No. 1 to 3.	} No. 1. 20 Pieces of Dimity, at 3 <i>l.</i> — 2. 40 Ditto of Cambric, at 5 <i>l.</i> — 3. 30 Ditto of Muslin, at 4 <i>l.</i>	£.		
		60	£.	<i>s. d.</i>
		200		
		120		
		380		
Duties and charges.....			18	4 . 6
			398	4 . 6
Commission at 2 <i>l.</i> per cent.			7	19 . 3
			£406	3 . 9

CONOCIMIENTO.

Yo Manuel Romero, *maestre que soy del navio, que Dios salve, nombrado El Neptuno, de porte de docientas toneladas, que al presente está surto y anclado en el puerto de Londres, para, con la buena ventura, seguir este presente viage al puerto de Cadiz, conozco haber recibido, y tengo cargado dentro del dicho mi navio debaxo de cubierta, de vos*

P. H. *los Señores Preswick, Hermanos, y Compañía, tres caxas de lencerías, enjutas y bien*

C. *acondicionadas, y marcadas de la marca de*

No. 1 á 3. *fuera, con las cuales prometo, y me obligo, llevandome Dios, en buen salvamento con el dicho mi navio, al dicho puerto, de acudir por vos y en vuestro nombre á los Señores Lopez é Hijo, pagandome de flete, á razon de dos libras sterlinas por cada caxa, y sus averías acostumbradas, y, para lo qual assi tener y guardar, obligo á mi persona y bienes, y el dicho mi navio fletes, y aparejos, y lo mejor parado de él. En fé de lo qual, os di tres conocimientos de un tenor, firmados de mi nombre por mí, ó por mi Escrivano, el uno cumplido, los otros no valgan. Fecha en Londres, á 1º de Febrero, 1827.*

MANUEL ROMERO.

BILL OF LADING.

SHIPPED, by the grace of God, in good order and well-conditioned, by *Messrs. Preswick, Brothers, and Company*, in and upon the good ship called *The Neptune*, whereof is master, under God, for this present voyage, *Manuel Romero*, and now riding at anchor in the *port of London*, and by God's grace bound for *Cadiz*, that is to say, *three chests of linen*, being marked and numbered as in the margin, and are to be delivered in the like good order and well-conditioned, at the aforesaid port of *Cadiz*, (the act of God, the king's enemies, fire, and all and every other dangers and accidents of the seas, rivers, and navigation, of whatever nature and kind soever, excepted,) unto *Messrs. Lopez and Son*, or to *their* assigns, they paying freight for the said goods *after the rate of two pounds sterling for each chest*, with *primage and average* accustomed. In witness whereof, I the said master (or purser) of the said ship have affirmed to *three* bills of lading, all of this tenour and date; the one of which *three* bills being accomplished, the other *two* to stand void. And so God send the good ship to her desired port in safety. *Amen.*
Dated in *London, February 1st, 1827.*

P. H.

C.

No. 1 to 3.

MANUEL ROMERO

LETRA DE CAMBIO.

Londres, 9 Febrero, 1827.

Por Lib. 406 . 3 . 9

A treinta dias de vista, mandarán vms. pagar por esta primera (no habiendolo hecho por la segunda y tercera) de cambio quatrocientas y seis libras sterlinas tres chelines y nueve peniques, á la orden de los Señores Brickdale y Compañía, valor recibido, que cargarán vms. á cuenta como por aviso.

S. S. S.

PRESWICK, HERMANOS, y Compañía.

**A los Sñres Lopez é Hijo,
en Cadiz.**

Londres, 9 de Febrero, 1827.

**A los Señores Lopez é Hijo,
en Cadiz.**

Muy Señores nuestros,

HEMOS librado contra vms. hoy una letra de cambio (á treinta dias de vista), por lib. 406 . 3 . 9, á la orden de los Señores Brickdale y Compañía, la que estimarémos que vms. honren y carguen á cuenta, como por aviso.

S. S. S.

Q. S. M. B.

PRESWICK, HERMANOS, y Compañía.

BILL OF EXCHANGE.

London, February 9, 1827

For £406. 3s. 9d.

AT thirty days sight, pay this our first of exchange, (second and third of the same tenour and date unpaid,) to the order of Messrs. Brickdale and Company, four hundred and six pounds three shillings and ninepence, value received, and place to account as per advice.

PRESWICK, BROTHERS, and Company.

Messrs. Lopez and Son,
Cadiz.

London, February 9, 1827.

Messrs. Lopez and Son,
Cadiz.

Gentlemen,

WE have this day drawn on you, at thirty days sight, for the sum of £406. 3s. 9d. to the order of Messrs. Brickdale and Company; which we beg you to honour, and place to account as per advice.

Your obedient Servants,

PRESWICK, BROTHERS, and Company.

FORM OF A SPANISH PROTEST.

EN la Ciudad de Cadiz, á quatro del mes de Abril, de mil ochocientos veinte y siete, Ante mí, Gil Perez, Escribano Público del Numero de esta Ciudad, y los Testigos abaxo nombrados, pareció Don Ambrosio Lamela, Vecino y Comerciante de dicha ciudad, á quien doy fê, conozco, y quien para efecto de protesto me exhibió una Letra de Cambio cuyo tenor es el siguiente: “Londres, Febrero 1º, 1827, p^r. p^a. 2300. á dos usos, mandará vm. pagar por esta primera de Cambio á la órden de Don Juan Sangredo, Dos mil y trescientos pesos, en oro ó plata, al curso conocido aquí hoy, que sentará vm. en cuenta como por aviso de Pedro Sedillo. Al Señor Don Manuel Peña, en Cadiz. Endoso, Páguese á la órden de Don Ambrosio Lamela, Cadiz, 26 de Marzo, 1823, Juan Sangredo.” Y despues, de copiada, me pidió la presentase original á Don Manuel Peña, á cuyo cargo está librada, requiriendole, que mediante cumplirse su plazo en el dia de hoy, con los dias de cortesia que son de estilo, la pague luego al punto, y en su defecto, se la proteste con todos sus Cambios, Recambios, Intereses, Costos, y Gastos, para repetirlos y cobrarlos del susodicho Don Pedro Sedillo, como Librador, ó del dicho Don Juan Sangredo, como Endosador, y de quien mas haya lugar, y que todo se lo diese por testimonio. En virtud de lo qual, yo, el referido Escribano Público, pasé á la casa, morada del mencionado Don Manuel Peña, y habiendo preguntado en ella por él, se me respondió, por un sugeto que, manifestó llamarse Don Antonio Bolsones, y ser caxero de Don Manuel Peña, que este se hallaba ausente en la ciudad de Sevilla. Y habiendo hecho á Don Antonio Bolsones el requirimiento, y protestas arriba explicadas, y enteradole de sus efectos, para que lo noticiase

TRANSLATION OF THE PROTEST.

IN the City of Cadiz, on the fourth day of the month of April, One thousand eight hundred and twenty-seven, Before me, Gil Perez, Notary Public, Member of the Society of Notaries of this City, and the undermentioned witnesses, appeared Don Ambrose Lamela, Resident and Merchant in this City, whom I certify to know, and who exhibited to me a Bill of Exchange in order to have the same protested, the tenour whereof is as follows: "London, 1st February, 1827. For 2300 dollars, at two usances, you will be pleased to pay this first of Exchange, to the order of Don John Sangredo, Two thousand three hundred dollars, in gold or silver, at the exchange known here this day, which you will place to account as per advice of Peter Sedillo. To Don Emanuel Peña, Cadiz. Indorsement—Pay to the Order of Don Ambrose Lamela, Cadiz, 26th of March, 1823, John Sangredo." And which being first copied, he requested me to present the original to Don Emanuel Peña, on whom the same is drawn, to require of him immediate payment thereof, its term as well as the customary days of grace being this day elapsed, and in default thereof, to protest the same against him for all its Exchanges, Re-exchanges, Interests, Costs, and Charges, in order to reclaim and recover the same from the aforesaid Don Peter Sedillo as the Drawer, from Don John Sangredo as the Indorser, or from whomsoever else it might concern, and to grant him a copy thereof, by virtue of which I, the aforesaid Notary Public, did repair to the dwelling-house of the aforementioned Don Emanuel Peña, and having there inquired for him, I was answered by a person, who represented himself to be Don Anthony Bolsones, and cash-keeper of Don Emanuel Peña, that the latter was absent in the city of Seville; and having made the above-mentioned demand of, and signified the protest to Don Anthony Bolsones, and acquainted him fully with the consequences thereof,

al citado Don Manuel Peña, dixo que no se hallaba con órden ni providencia para hacer el pago de dicha letra. Esto dió por respuesta, y mediante ella, yo el referido escribano, y á pedimento del mencionado Don Ambrosio Lamela, he protestado, como por el presente solemnemente protesto, una, dos, tres, y mas veces en derecho necesarias, tanto contra el Sacador y contra el Endosador de la susodicha Letra de Cambio, como contra todos los demas que convenga amás de la cantidad principal de su importe, por todos los Cambios, Recambios, Costos, Gastos, Daños, Menoscabos, Perjuicios, é Intereses, que en qualquiera manera se hayan seguido, ó causado, y en adelante se siguieren, ó causaren, por falta del pagamento de la referida Letra de Cambio. Hecho y Protestado en Cadiz, á quatro del mes de Abril, de mil ochocientos veinte y siete. Lo firmó Don Ambrosio Lamela, siendo Testigos Don Juan Manuel Romero, y Don Luis Gomez, Ante mí, Gil Perez. Concuerta con su original en mi Registro, á que me remito, y para entregar á Don Ambrosio Lamela, y á su pedimento, mandé sacar esta copia que signo y firmo en Cadiz, en el dia de su fecha.

GIL PEREZ.

Los que abajo firmamos Escribanos Públicos, de esta Ciudad, certificamos en quanto podemos, que Gil Perez, de quien va dada, signada, y firmada, la precedente copia, como se titula, es Escribano Público, del Número de esta Ciudad, fiel, legal, y de entera confianza, y á sus semejantes siempre se ha dado, y da, entera fe y credito en juicios y fuera de ellos, y para que conste damos la presente en esta dicha Ciudad de Cadiz, fecha ut supra, Andres Corzuelos, Fabricio Nuñez, Fernando Perez de la Fuente, Escribanos Públicos.

in order that he might communicate the same to the aforesaid Don Manuel Peña, he answered that he was without orders or effects to make the payment of the said Bill. This he gave for an answer ; and on account thereof, and at the request of the above-mentioned Don Ambrose Lamela, I the aforesaid Notary have protested, as by these Presents I do solemnly protest once, twice, thrice, and as often as by law is requisite, as well against the Drawer and Indorser of the said Bill of Exchange as against all others whom it may concern, in addition to the principal amount of its value, for all Exchanges, Re-exchanges, Costs, Charges, Damages, Deficiencies, Loss, and Interests, which in any manner whatsoever have accrued or been occasioned, or that may hereafter accrue or be occasioned, for want of payment of the aforesaid Bill of Exchange. Done and Protested in Cadiz, on the Fourth day of April, One thousand eight hundred and twenty-seven. This Don Ambrose Lamela signed, the witnesses being Don John Emanuel Romero and Don Lewis Gomez. Before me, Gil Perez. Conformable to its original in my Register, to which I refer myself, and in order to deliver to Don Ambrose Lamela, and at his request, I caused this copy to be extracted, which I sign and subscribe in Cadiz, on the day of the date thereof.

GIL PEREZ.

We, the underwritten Notaries Public of this City, do certify as far as we are able, that Gil Perez, by whom the foregoing copy is granted, signed, and subscribed, is, as he styles himself, a Notary Public, Member of the Society of Notaries of this City, faithful, legal, and of entire confidence, and that to all his similar acts full faith and credit ever have been and are given in judgment and thereout. In witness whereof we have granted these Presents in this said City of Cadiz, dated *ut supra*, Andrew Corzuelos, Fabrice Nuñez, Ferdinand Perez de la Fuente, Notaries Public.

THE ENGLISH FORM OF THE PRECEDING PROTEST.

On this Day, the Fourth of April, One thousand eight hundred and twenty-seven, at the request of Don Ambrosio Lamela, bearer of the First Bill of Exchange, whereof a true copy is on the other side written, I, Gil Perez of Cadiz, Notary Public, by Royal Authority duly admitted and sworn, exhibited the said First Bill of Exchange to Don Antonio Bolsones, Clerk of Don Emanuel Peña of this City, upon whom the same is drawn, and demanded payment of the same, (the time limited for payment since the presentation thereof by me the said Notary having elapsed,) whereunto the said Don Antonio Bolsones answered, that Don Emanuel Peña was absent in the City of Seville, and that he the aforesaid Don Antonio was without orders or effects to pay the said Bill. Wherefore, I the said Notary, at the request aforesaid, have Protested, and by these Presents do solemnly Protest, as well against the Drawer of the said First Bill, as all others whom it may concern, for Exchange, Re-exchange, and all Costs, Charges, Damages, and Interests, Suffered and to be Suffered, for want of payment of the said First Bill. Thus done and Protested in Cadiz, in the presence of Don Juan Manuel Romero and Don Lewis Gomez.

Quod Attestor,

GIL PEREZ

OF VERSIFICATION.

HAVING in a former place explained the nature of the prosodial accent, and its service in pointing out, for the current pronunciation, the emphatic syllable in every word of more than one syllable, I have now merely to notice its peculiar service in Spanish poetry, syllabic emphasis being the chief standard by which the Spanish metrical feet are regulated.

It has been already observed, that every Spanish word of more than one syllable contains one accented or emphatic syllable ; but, in order more fully to understand the principle upon which Spanish verse is constructed, a few observations seem necessary.

First, Monosyllables cannot be said, strictly speaking, to have, *per se*, any syllabic emphasis. But in association in verse with other syllables, they may, according to the nature of the line, be either emphatic or unemphatic ; some of them, however, seem more inclined to be emphatic than others, and *vice versâ* ; and some are altogether *tractable* or *pliant*.

Secondly, Besides the common prosodial accent, it is often necessary to use another not equally strong, sometimes called the poetic accent, in order to preserve the measure, especially with polysyllables : thus, in pronouncing the word *fortunadamente*, which has the predominant accent on the third syllable, we are compelled to lay an inferior degree of stress on the first and fifth, forming thereby three trochees, and in the word *afortunadamente*, which is accented on the fourth, we lay the inferior stress on the second and sixth, and by these means produce a line or rather word of three iambuses, hypermeter.

Thirdly, It may be observed, that, through the natural drift of the rhythm, the prose accent is sometimes compelled to bend to the poetical ; syllables naturally emphatic being passed over rather remissly, and unem-

phatic syllables receiving greater stress than their real nature strictly authorizes.

And, *Lastly*, Although Spanish verse be regulated by emphasis, a certain balance of quantities essentially contributes to its general harmony. Where gravity and solemnity are intended in the measure, it will be found that long or important syllables preponderate, and where the movement is intended to be quick and lively, there will be found to be a surplus of short or unimportant syllables.

Of the Division of Verse according to the Feet.

Verses are divided into *Iambic*, *Trochaic*, and *Anapestic*,—so named from the prevailing foot in each of them. The *iambic* consists of two syllables, the latter of which is emphatic; as, *temór, feliz, te-mór, fe-liz*. The *trochaic* has its first emphatic and second unemphatic; as, *témo, hábil, tè-mo, há-bil*. The *anapestic* has two unemphatic syllables followed by one emphatic; as, *caridád, corazón, ca-ri-dád, co-ra-zón*.

Other feet might be mentioned, but they do not often occur. Iambics and trochaics are said to be in *common* time, anapestics in *triple* time; the two former indeed may be considered as kindred measures, both belonging to the even cadence. Feet of three syllables are seldom introduced in the even cadence, or cadence in common time.

In the iambic measure, the syllabic emphasis is generally on the even syllables; in the trochaic, on the uneven or odd syllables; and in the anapestic, on every third syllable.

The unemphatic syllables will be distinguished by the mark of a short quantity (˘), and the emphatic by that of a long quantity (ˉ).

The shortest *iambic* measure is an iambus hypermeter, or with double rhyme:

Sě muē|ve,
Lă nū|ve,
Măs lē|ve,
Que ũn ā|ve.

Spanish *heroics* are in Iambic measure, consisting of five feet, and, being generally in double rhymes, contain eleven syllables ;

Păstō|rēs quē | dōrmīs| ēn lā | măjā|da.

A Trochee is often introduced as the first foot in Iambic verse ; and Lope de Vega frequently places a trochee in other parts of the line ; but it never can correctly form the last foot ;

Grăvēs | mīrā|dōs ŷ | mīrār | sūā|ves

Y quān|to ēl mār | ēl aŷ|re ēl suē|lo ěnciēr|ra

Si mē | quiērēs | ōfrēz|co ā tū | bēllē|za.

The shortest *Trochaic* measure consists of a trochee, and half a foot, with double rhyme ;

Clārōs | rī|os.

Zēlōs | frī|os.

In *Trochaic* measure an iambus sometimes is introduced ;

Nī mē | dēxa ēl|llān|to

Dēcīr | cōmō | quē|do.

Trochaic verses never exceed five feet, and seldom contain so many : the following is an example of three feet with double rhymes :

Hōmbrē | quē sīn|āscō | sōr|ba.

Anapestic verses are of different dimensions ; but do not exceed four feet. The first syllable of the first foot is generally omitted :

Lōs ā|nīmōs ār|dēn ēn Dīōs | ābrāsā|dos.

Of Rhyme.

Rhymes may be either in couplets, the first and second line rhyming together, or they are alternate, the first and third, and the second and fourth, respectively rhyming. There are, too, other varieties, especially in irregular compositions. In rhymed verses the boundary of the line is easily observed in recitation. Where there is no rhyme, it must be distinguished chiefly by the final pause, which, when it does not coincide with the sentential, is a pause merely of suspension, there being no depression in the tone of the voice.

The Spaniards have two sorts of rhyme, the *consonante* or full rhyme; and the *asonante* or imperfect rhyme. The *consonante* requires a similarity of letters, from the last accent in both lines;

*Pues defended el reyno rostros bélllos
Que yo pondré la planta en vuestros cuélllos.*

The *asonante* allows greater latitude, requiring a similarity of vowels only, while the consonants may be different; thus, *ligéro* forms an *asonante* with *cubierto*; *amores* with *noches*; *melones* with *azotes*, &c.

The same word may be also used at the end of both lines, without infringing on the laws of rhyme, if it be taken in different meanings, thus, *sagrado*, sacred, may rhyme with *sagrado*, an asylum, &c.

Of the Division of Verse according to the Rhyme.

Spanish verses are arranged into three different classes, called *Agudos*, *Llanos*, and *Esdrúxolos*.

Agudos or single rhymes have the accent on the last syllable; as,

*Mas aunque muera por tí
No te lo daré á entendér:
Por que no me quiero vér,
Como te viste por mí.*

Llanos or double rhymes are accented on the penultimate; as,

*No mas, Ninfa cruel, ya estas vengáda,
No pruebes tu furor en un rendído,
La culpa á costa mia está pagáda,
Ablanda ya ese pecho endurecido,
Y resucita un alma sepultáda,
En la tiniebla escura de tu olvido,
Que no cabe en tu ser valor y suerte,
Que un pastor como yo pueda ofenderte.*

Most of the Spanish verses belong to this class.

Esdrúxolos or triple rhymes have the accent on the antepenultimate; as,

*Silvano mio, una aficion rarísima,
Una beldad, que ciega luego en viéndola,
Un seso y discrecion excelentísima,*

*Con una dulce habla que en oyéndola,
 Las duras peñas mueve enterneciéndolas.
 ¿ Que sentiria un amador perdiéndola?*

There are also a few compositions in blank verse, of which the following lines from Boscan may serve as a specimen :—

*Canta con voz suave y dolorosa,
 O musa, los amores lastimeros,
 Que en suave dolor fueron criados :
 Canta tambien la triste mar en medio,
 Ya Sesto de una parte, y de otra Abyde,
 Y amor acá y allá yendo, y viniendo,
 Y aquella diligente lumbrecilla
 Testigo fiel, y dulce mensagera
 De dos fieles y dulces amadores.
 O mereciente luz de ser estrella,
 Luciente y principal en las estrellas,
 Que fueron desde acá al cielo enviadas,
 Y alcanzaron allá notables nombres.
 Pero comienza ya de cantar, Musa,
 El proceso y el fin de estos amantes :
 El mirar, el hablar, el entenderse,
 El ir del uno, el esperar del otro,
 El desear y el acudir conforme,
 La lumbré muerta, y á Leandro muerto.*

But the most curious of all the Spanish poetical compositions, are certain species of verse, wherein the *consonante* falls about the middle of the next line, of which the following is a specimen, taken from Garcilazo :

*Pastores que dormis en la majáda,
 En la cerráda noche á sueño suélto,
 Mirad resuélto el ayre tenebróso
 En luminóso, alegre, y claro día,
 La sombra fría huye, el orizónte
 Del alto monte blanco y encarnádo
 Con el dorádo rayo resplundéce :
 Ya no parece estrella en todo el cielo,
 El duro yélo su rigor quebránta :
 La tierna plánta aljofares derráma,
 Bala el cordéro, y el novillo brama.*

Probably these lines may formerly have been arranged differently.

Of Scanning.

To scan a verse is to divide it into its constituent feet.

The principal difficulty attending the measuring of Spanish verses is experienced in words containing a combination of two vowels: this difficulty may, however, be diminished by attending to the following remarks.

When the prosodial accent does not fall on either of the two vowels, they are reckoned a diphthong:

Dichō|sōs vōsō|trōs ā quiēn | lōs cuiđā|dos.

When two vowels come together, and the prosodial accent falls on the second, they are then also generally counted a diphthong: but if the accent is on the first, each vowel is generally reckoned.

Lōs ā|nīmōs ār|dēn ěn Diōs | ābrāsā|dos.

Māri|ā Vīr|gēn bē|llā mā|drē ěspō|sa.

If the first of two adjoining vowels is *a* or *e*, they are generally counted separately:

Que ěn vī|da ōs quēmā|is ěn fuē|go āmōrō|so.

N. B. *U* being the first, and preceded by *g* or *q*, is never counted unless marked with the diæresis: see the last example.

Ue is also generally reckoned a diphthong in derivatives from a primitive, the first syllable of which contains one vowel; as, *ruego* from *rogar*; *suelto* from *soltar*; *muero* from *morir*; *nuevo* from *novedad*, &c.

Dē Sān|tōs Vārō|nēs āl mūn|dō yā muēr|tos.

When one word ends with a vowel, and the following begins also with a vowel, the first vowel is elided:

Entrō | cōn ē|lla āquēl | quē tān|tōs dā|ños.

If the accent falls on the final vowel of a word, it is in general not elided:

Entrō | ěn ūn | jārdīn | hērī|dō dē | āmōr.

When the first word ends in a vowel, and the second begins with an *h*, the elision is optional:

Nī āl | tērrōr | de hōrrēn|dā guē|rra.

Su āmōr, | puēs nō | sē hān | hāblā|do,

Y vēr|sē hān | pōdī|do āpē|nas.

A vowel, in general, is not elided when it is followed by *y*, used as a consonant:

Do ěstān|dō lōs cuēr|pōs cāy|dōs ě yēr|tos.

When *y* is preceded by a vowel, it is counted separately, if the accent falls on it. See the third foot in the last example, and

Y quān|to ěl mār | ěl āy|re ěl suē|lo ěnciē|rra.

The Spanish and Portuguese epic, or heroic, verse, differs not from the English and Italian. But the dramatic verse of the Spanish poets, whose dramatic works are abundant, is greatly different. It is the *truncated*, four-footed iambic verse, *i. e.* an *acephalous* or headless iambic, which is in reality what is termed a three-footed *trochaic*, called by the Spaniards *Versos de-pié quebrado* or *of a broken foot*, a favourite lyric measure of the Italian poets, but never used by them for dramatic dialogue :

Puēs|si āmār|gā lā | vērdād,
Quiē|ro ěchār|lā dē | lā bō|ca ;
Y | si āl āl|mā sū | hiēl tō|ca,
Es|cōndēr|la ěs nē|cēdād.

The Spanish poets use it also commonly as a lyric measure, generally in stanzas of four verses, with imperfect or *asonante* rhymes ; of which Bishop Percy has the following specimen towards the end of his *Relics of Ancient English Poetry* :

Rī|ō vēr|dě, rī|ō vēr|de,
Quān|tō cuēr|po ěn tī | sē bā|ñā ;
Dē | Crīstīā|nōs ŷ | dē Mō|ros,
Muēr|tōs pōr | lā dū|ra ěspā|da.

The imperfection of the rhymes common among the Spanish poets should apparently be attributed neither to negligence nor unskilfulness in the poet, nor to a defect in the language : indeed, so far perhaps from implying imperfection, it may rather imply perfection, as it indicates that the Spanish lyrical poetry wants less assistance from the adventitious ornament of rhyme than other modern European languages.

ON DERIVATION.

THE Spanish is a language which owes its origin to the Latin, with some mixture, however, of other languages, left either by the first settlers in the country, or by subsequent invaders. That the Latin has principally contributed to its formation is manifest from the analogy between both languages, which is so close that it has enabled some Spanish authors to compose, in verse as well as prose, works which may justly be styled *bilinguales*.

As the knowledge of a language which claims so close an affinity to the Latin may be a *desideratum* with the classical scholar; and since, therefore, whatever may tend to accelerate its acquisition to him, will not prove wholly unacceptable, the following remarks are submitted to his consideration.

In attempting to trace Spanish derivations to the Latin origin, such words will be first noticed as have their terminations still preserved in its primitive form, next, the changes which the Latin vowels are apt to undergo; and lastly, the consonants which are esteemed equivalent and commutable. But as several of these deviations have been indispensably requisite, conformably to the pronunciation of the Spanish language, the following preliminary remarks seem to be not altogether unnecessary.

First, *t* is always exchanged for *c* or *z* when the sound of either is equivalent; as, *gratia*, *gracia*; *ratio*, *razon*.

Secondly, *ch* before *a* or *o* is exchanged for *c*, and before *e* or *i* for *qu*; as, *charus*, *caro*; *chorus*, *coro*; *cherubim*, *querubin*; *chirurgicus*, *quirurgico*.

Thirdly, Latin words beginning with *s* followed by another consonant have the *s* preceded by *e*; but the *s* only is suppressed when it precedes a soft *c*; as, *spiritus*, *espíritu*; *scientia*, *ciencia*.

Fourthly, No other consonants than *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *x*, *z*, can end a Spanish word.

Fifthly, No word can end with a double consonant.

Sixthly, No consonants are duplicated except *c*, *l*, *n*, *r*.

Of Words preserving the Latin termination.

Spanish substantives and adjectives are frequently Latin ablatives in the singular, and in the plural Latin accusatives : as, *missa, misa, misas* ; *modus, modo, modos* ; *ars, arte, artes* ; *caro, carne, carnes* ; *spiritus, espíritu, espíritus* ; *species, especie, especies* ; *molestus, molesto, molesta, molestos, molestas* ; *prudens, prudente, prudentes*.

N.B. If the noun is neuter, the Spanish plural takes the general inflection, or terminating consonant, of the declension to which the neuter noun belongs ; as, *templum, templo, templos* ; *auxilium, auxilio, auxilios* ; *crimine, crimen, crímenes*.

Exceptions.

Nouns of the fourth declension change the *u* into *o* in both numbers ; as, *manu, mano, manos* ; except *spiritu* and *tribu*.

Adjectives of two terminations exchange the *i* for *e* in the singular ; as, *tristi, triste, tristes* ; *levi, leve, leves*.

Adjectives in *bilis* drop the first *i* in both numbers ; as, *amabili, amable, amables* ; *terribili, terrible, terribles*.

The last *e* or *i* of an ablative is often suppressed in the singular, when preceded by a single consonant which can end a word ; as, *sale, sal, sales* ; *pane, pan, panes* ; *amore, amor, amores* ; *vili, vil, viles* ; *docili, dócil, dóciles*. If the remaining final consonant is *r*, it is sometimes exchanged for *l*, especially when the accent does not fall on the last syllable ; as, *arbore, árbol, árboles* ; *carcere, cárcel, cárceles* ; *marmore, mármol, mármoles*.

If, after the suppression of the final *e*, the consonant is inadmissible as final, it is necessarily changed ; hence *ce* is exchanged for *z* ; as, *pace, paz, paces* ; *cervice, cerviz, cervices* ; *ge* for *y*, in both numbers ; as, *rege, rey, reyes* ; *lege, ley, leyes* ; and *te*, when it is preceded by *ta* or *tu*, into *d*, in both numbers ; as, *potestate, potestad, potestades* ; *virtute, virtud, virtudes* ; and if the antepenultimate syllable of a noun ends in a vowel, the penultimate *t* is often likewise exchanged for *d* ; as, *pietate, piedad, piedades* ; *caritate, caridad, caridades* ; *humilitate, humildad, humildades*.

Latin infinitives,* particularly those of the first conjugation, often become Spanish infinitives, by only dropping the last vowel ; as, *amare*, *amar* ; *dare*, *dar* ; *stare*, *estar* ; *ponere*, *poner* ; *dormire*, *dormir*.

Of the occasional Changes of the Vowels

The following are the changes in the vowels most frequently observable :

Of *a* for *e* ; as, *tracto*, *trecho* ; *lac*, *leche*.

Of *au* for *o* ; as, *auro*, *oro* ; *tauro*, *toro* ; *mauro*, *moro*.

Of *e* for *a*, for *i*, or for *ie* ; as, *fremere*, *bramar* ; *equalis*, *igual* ; *scribere*, *escribir* ; *terra*, *tierra* ; *dente*, *diente* ; *meto*, *miedo*.

Of *i* for *e* ; as, *infirmo*, *enfermo* ; *timor*, *temor* ; *illa*, *ella*.

Of *o* for *e*, or for *ue* ; as, *fronte*, *frente* ; *forte*, *fuerte* ; *nostro*, *nuestro* ; *absolvo*, *absuelvo*.

N. B. When an initial *o* is thus changed, the word must be preceded by an *h* ; as, *os*, *hueso* ; *ovo*, *huevo*.

Of *u* for *o* ; as, *musca*, *mosca* ; *unda*, *onda* ; *dicto*, *dicho* ; *lecto*, *lecho*.

When one of the vowels of a diphthong is retained, it is generally the second ; as, *ætate*, *edad* ; *tædio*, *tedio* ; *æterno*, *eterno* ; *cælo*, *cielo*.

Of the Convertibility of Consonants.

With respect to the changes which consonants undergo in derivation, the following general remarks are not undeserving of notice :

(1.) *b*, *v*, *f*, *p*, are considered as equivalent ; as, *nabo*, *napo* ; *abierto*, *aperto* ; *abril*, *april* ; *bramido*, *fremitu* ; *vibora*, *vipera* ; *robar*, *rapere* ; *sabor*, *sapere* ; *saber*, *sapere* ; *soplar*, *sufflare* ; *trebol*, *trifolio*.

(2.) *c*, *ch*, *g*, *j*, *q*, *y*, are considered equivalent and commutable. *Amigo*, *amico* ; *arcilla*, *argilla* ; *lago*,

* The other parts of a verb may be seen in the Table of regular inflections at page 142 ; or in the Paradigms of the irregular verbs.

laco; *fuego*, foco; *agua*, aqua; *echar*, ejicere; *techa*, tegula; *techo*, tecto; *arquillo*, arculo; *calidad*, qualitate; *cocer*, coquere; *cotidiano*, quotidiano; *queso*, caseo; *gritar*, quiritare; *monge*, monacho; *pregon*, preconio; *jaula*, caula; *ayudar*, adjuvare; *ayunar*, jejunare; *ya*, jam; *yacer*, jacere; *yelo*, gelu; *yema*, gemma; *yo*, ego; *yugo*, jugo; *majada*, magalia; *lenteja*, lenticulo.

(3.) *d*, *t*, *z*, are considered equivalent and commutable: *Agudo*, acuto; *bondad*, bonitate; *mudar*, mutare; *medir*, metire; *red*, rete; *salud*, salute; *cabeza*, capite; *pozo*, puteo; *razon*, ratione; *juzgar*, judicare.

(4.) *l* is converted into *j* and *g*. *Consejo*, consilio; *abeja*, apicula; *majar*, malleare; *ojo*, oculo; *oreja*, auricula; *muger*, mulier.

(5.) *c*, *f*, *p*, are converted into *l* when they precede that letter; as, *llamar*, clamare; *llave*, clave; *llama*, flamma; *llaga*, plaga; *llanto*, plancto; *llorar*, plorare; *lluvia*, pluvia.

(6.) *f* is converted into *h*; as, *haba*, faba; *hacer*, facere; *hado*, fato; *heno*, fœno; *herir*, ferire; *hiel*, fel; *higo*, fico; *huir*, fugere; *hurto*, furto.

(7.) *m* is converted into *n*; as, *lñfa*, lymphæ; *tan tam*.

(8.) *gn*, *nn*, *mn*, are converted into *ñ*; as, *leño*, ligno; *año*, anno; *otoño*, autumnno; *sueño*, somno.

It may likewise be added, that in derivation words are sometimes found lengthened, and at other times abridged; as, *esperanza*, spes; *corazon*, cor; *aptamente*, aptè; *optimamente*, optimè; *comer*, comedere; *tos*, tussis; *oir*, audire; *velar*, vigilare; *ya*, jam; *mas*, magis.

Many other peculiarities of the language might have been noticed; but these are the most important to any one who is solicitous to gain a knowledge of the Spanish.

The following abstract is annexed to exhibit the intimate relationship and resemblance subsisting between the Latin and the Spanish, as well as several other modern languages.

LUKE, CHAP. XV.

LATIN.

11 *Homo quidam [unus] habuit duos filios:*

12 *Et dixit adolescentior [minor] ex illis patri, Pater, da mihi portionem substantiæ quæ me contingit. Et divisit illis substantiam.*

13 *Et non post multos dies, congregatis [conjunctis] omnibus, adolescentior filius peregrè profectus est in regionem longinquam, et ibi dissipavit substantiam suam vivendo luxuriosè.*

14 *Et postquam omnia [totum] consumpisset, facta est [super-venit] fames valida [grandis] in regione illâ, et ipse cepit egere [esse indigens].*

15 *Et abiit et adhæsit uni civium regionis illius; et misit [mandavit] illum in villam suam ut pasceret porcos.*

16 *Et cupiebat [desiderabat] implere ventrem suum de siliquis quas porci manducabant [comedebant]; et nemo illi dabat.*

17 *In se autem reversus, dixit, Quanti mercenarii in domo [casa] patris mei abundant panibus, ego autem hic fame pereo!*

SPANISH.

11 Un hombre hubo dos hijos:

12 Y el menor de ellos dixo á su padre, Padre, dame la porcion de substancia que me toca [touches E.]: y dividió á ellos la substancia.

13 Y no despues de muchos dias, juntandolo todo, el hijo menor peregrinó á una region lejana, y allí dissipó su substancia viviendo luxuriosamente.

14 Y despues que lo hubo consumido todo, sobrevino una hambre grande en aquella region, y él empezó á estar indigente.

15 Y fué y recurrió [se adhirió] á uno de los ciudadanos de aquella region; y le mandó á su villa para que apacentase puer-cos.

16 Y deseaba llenar su vientre de las garrobas que los puer-cos comian; y nadie le daba.

17 Y vuelto en sí, dixo, ¡Quantos mercenarios en casa de mi padre abundan en pan, mas yo aquí pere-zco de hambre!

PORTUGUESE.

11 Hum homem tinha dous filhos:

12 E disse o mais moço delles a seu pay, Dáme a parte da fazenda que me pertence; e elle lhes repartio a fazenda.

13 E depois de não muitos dias, ajuntando o filho mais moço tudo, partiõse a huã terra muy longe, e ali desperdiçou sua fazenda, vivendo disolutamente.

14 E des que ja teve tudo desperdiçado, veyo huã grande fome naquella terra, e começou a padecer necessidade.

15 E foi e achegouse a hum dos cidadãos daquella terra; o qual o mandou a sua quinta para que apacentasse os porcos.

16 E desejava encher seu ventre das mondaduras que comião os porcos; mas ninguem lhas dava.

17 E tornado em si, disse, Quantos jornaleiros de meu pay tem abundancia de pam, e eu aqui pereço de fome!

ITALIAN.

11 Un uomo avea due figliuoli:

12 Ed il più giovane disse al padre, Padre dammi, la parte dell' avere la quale mi tocca. Il padre dunque spartì loro le facoltà.

13 E pochi giorni appresso, il figliuolo più giovane, raccolta ogni cosa, se ne andò in viaggio in paese lontano; ed ivi dissipò le sue facoltà, vivendo dissolutamente.

14 E, dopo ch'egli ebbe speso ogni cosa, una gran carestia venne in quel paese; talche egli cominciò ad aver bisogno.

15 Ed andato, si mise con uno de' terzani di quella contrada; il quale lo mandò a' suoi campi, a pasturare i porci.

16 Ed egli desiderava d'empersi il corpo delle silique, che i porci mangiavano: ma niuno gliene dava.

17 E ritornato a se medesimo, disse, Quanti mercenaj di mio padre hanno del pane largamente, ed io mi muojo di fame!

FRENCH.

11 Un homme avoit deux fils:

12 Et le plus jeune dit à son père, Mon père, donne-moi la part du bien qui m'appartient: et il leur partagea ses biens.

13 Et peu de jours après, quand le plus jeune fils eut tout ramassé, il s'en alla dehors en un pays éloigné; et là il dissipa son bien en vivant prodigalement.

14 Et après qu'il eut tout dépensé, une grande famine survint en ce pays-là: et il commença d'être dans la disette.

15 Alors il s'en alla et se mit avec un des habitans du pays; qui l'envoya dans ses possessions pour paître les pourceaux.

16 Et il désiroit de remplir son ventre des carouges que les pourceaux mangeoient; mais personne ne lui en donnoit.

17 Or, étant rentré en lui-même, il dit, Combien y a-t-il de mercenaires dans la maison de mon père, qui ont du pain en abondance, et moi je meurs de faim!

ENGLISH.

11 A certain man had two sons:

12 And the younger of them said to his father, Father, give me the portion of goods that falleth to me. And he divided unto them his living.

13 And not many days after, the younger son gathered all together, and took his journey into a far country, and there wasted his substance with riotous living.

14 And when he had spent all, there arose a mighty famine in that land; and he began to be in want.

15 And he went and joined himself to a citizen of that country; and he sent him into his fields to feed swine.

16 And he would fain have filled his belly with the husks that the swine did eat; and no man gave unto him.

17 And when he came to himself, he said, How many hired servants of my father have bread enough and to spare, and I perish with hunger!

LATIN.

18 *Surgam [me le-
vabo] et ibo ad Patrem
meum, et dicam ei, Pa-
ter, peccavi in [contra]
cælum et coram [ante]
te,*

19 *Et jam non sum
dignus vocari [clamari]
filius tuus: fac me sic-
ut unum de mercena-
riis tuis.*

20 *Et surgens [se le-
vans] venit ad patrem
suum. Cum autem ad-
huc longè esset, vidit il-
lum pater ipsius, et mi-
sericordiâ motus est, et
accurrens cecidit super
collum ejus, et oscula-
tus est [basiavit] eum.*

21 *Dixitque ei filius,
Pater, peccavi in Cæ-
lum et coram te; jam
non sum dignus vocari
filius tuus.*

22 *Dixit autem pa-
ter ad servos suos, Cito
proferite stolam [vesti-
mentum] primam [opti-
mam] et induite [ves-
tite] illum, et date [po-
nite] annulum in ma-
num ejus, et calcea-
menta in pedes ejus:*

23 *Et adducite [con-
ducite] vitulum sagi-
natum, et occidite
[mactate]; et mandu-
cemus [comedamus] et
epulemur:*

24 *Quia hic filius
meus mortuus fuerat,
et revixit; perierat, et
inventus est. Et cepe-
runt epulari.*

SPANISH.

18 Me levantaré é
iré á mi padre, y le
diré, Padre, pequé
contra el Cielo y ante
tí,

19 Y ya no soy dig-
no de ser llamado hi-
jo tuyo: hazme como
á uno de tus mercena-
rios.

20 Y levantandose
vino á su padre. Como
aun estuviese lejos, le
vió su padre, y movi-
do de la misericordia,
corriendo á él cayó
sobre su cuello, y le
besó.

21 Y el hijo le dixo,
Padre, pequé contra
el Cielo y ante tí; ya
no soy digno de ser
llamado hijo tuyo.

22 Mas el padre
dixo á sus siervos, Sa-
cad el optimo vestido,
y vestidle, y poned
anillo en su mano, y
calzado en sus pies:

23 Y conducid la
vitela gorda, y matad-
la; y comamos y rega-
lemonos [regale E.]:

24 Porque este hijo
mio estaba muerto, y
revivió; se habia per-
dido, y es hallado. Y
comenzaron á rega-
larse.

PORTUGUESE.

18 Levantarme hei
e irme hei a meu pay,
e dirlhe hei, Pay,
contra o Ceo e perante
ti pequei,

19 Ja não sou digno
de ser chamado teu fil-
ho: fazeme como a hum
de teus jornaleiros.

20 E levantandose
hia a seu pay. E como
ainda estivesse de lon-
ge, vio-o seu pay, e
moveu-se de intima
compaixão, e correndo
para elle derribou-se
sobre seu pescoço, e
beijou-o.

21 E o filho lhe dis-
se, Pay, contra o Ceo
e perante ti pequei;
ja não sou digno de ser
chamado teu filho.

22 Mas o pay disse
a seus servos, Tirai o
principal vestido, e
vesti-o; e ponde anel
em sua mão, e çapatos
em seus pés.

23 E trazei o be-
zerro gordo, e mataio;
e comamos, e alegre-
monos:

24 Porque este meu
filho morto era, e re-
viveo; tinha se perdi-
do, e he achado. E co-
meçaraõ-se a alegrar.

. A few trivial alterations have been made in the old Spanish translation, the more to assimilate the two languages.

ITALIAN.

18 Io mi leverò e me ne andrò a mio padre, e gli dirò, Padre, io ho peccato contra il Cielo e davanti a te,

19 E non sono più degno d'esser chiamato tuo figliuolo: fammi com' uno de' tuoi mercenaj.

20 Egli dunque levatosi, vennè a suo padre. Ed, essendo egli ancora lontano, suo padre lo vide, e ne fu mosso a gran pietà; e, corso, gli si gettò al collo, e lo baciò.

21 Ed il figliuolo gli disse, Padre, io ho peccato contra il Cielo e davanti a te; e non sono più degno d'esser chiamato tuo figliuolo.

22 Ed il padre disse a' suoi servitori, Recate fuori la principal veste, e vestitelo; e mettetegli un anello in dite, e delle scarpe ne' piedi:

23 E conducete il vitello ingrassato, ed ammazzatelo; e mangiamo, e rallegramoci.

24 Perchè questo mio figliuolo era morto, ed è tornato a vita; era perduto, ed è stato ritrovato. E si misero a rallegrarsi.

FRENCH.

18 Je me leverai et m'en irai vers mon père, et je lui dirai, Mon père, j'ai péché contre le Ciel et devant toi,

19 Et je ne suis plus digne d'être appelé ton fils: fais-moi comme à l'un de tes mercenaires.

20 Il se leva donc et vint vers son père. Et comme il étoit encore loin, son père le vit, et fut touché de compassion, et courant à lui, se jeta à son cou, et le baisa.

21 Mais le fils lui dit, Mon père, j'ai péché contre le Ciel et devant toi: et je ne suis plus digne d'être appelé ton fils.

22 Et le père dit à ses serviteurs, Apportez la plus belle robe, et l'en revêtez, et mettez lui un anneau au doigt, et des souliers à ses pieds:

23 Et amenez-moi le veau gras, et le tuez; et fasons bonne chère en le mangeant:

24 Car mon fils que voici étoit mort, mais il revit; il étoit perdu, mais il est retrouvé. Et ils commencèrent à faire bonne chère.

ENGLISH.

18 I will arise and go to my father, and will say unto him, Father, I have sinned against Heaven and before thee,

19 And am no more worthy to be called thy son: make me as one of thy hired servants.

20 And he arose and came to his father. But when he was yet a great way off, his father saw him, and had compassion, and ran, and fell on his neck, and kissed him.

21 And the son said unto him, Father, I have sinned against Heaven and in thy sight; and am no more worthy to be called thy son.

22 But the father said unto his servants, Bring forth the best robe, and put it on him; and put a ring on his hand, and shoes on his feet:

23 And bring hither the fatted calf, and kill it; and let us eat and be merry:

24 For this my son was dead, and is alive again; he was lost, and is found. And they began to be merry.

THE END.

"Justice compels us to say, that this is the most complete Spanish Grammar extant for the use of Englishmen. It fully performs the promises in the title-page."—*British Neptune*, Aug. 1812.

"We think this Grammar decidedly preferable, in its arrangement, to the one commonly used; nor is its arrangement only superior, its contents are likewise more valuable and more suited to the wants of a learner."—*Universal Magazine*, May 1812.

"So far as a cursory inspection may be supposed to enable us, we think favourably of this performance."—*Literary Panorama*, June 1812.

"The author has paid more than ordinary attention to the subject of pronunciation. The rules are laid down with brevity and distinctness, and sufficiently illustrated by examples; and in short we think that this work of Mr. M'Henry will be a useful guide to those who wish to form an acquaintance with the language of Spain."—*Critical Review*, July 1812.

"The author is eminently qualified for the task which he has undertaken, and which he has performed with equal ability and success. He has certainly produced the most generally useful Grammar of the Spanish language which we have seen. His rules are plain and easily intelligible; his method is simple and perspicuous; and his explanations are such as greatly to facilitate the acquisition of the Spanish tongue to those who have not the means of procuring the assistance of a master."—*Antijacobin Review*, May 1812.

"Considerable pains are taken in this Grammar in stating the rules by which the construction of Spanish sentences is governed; and we think that some of the author's elucidations, particularly those in which he discriminates between the use of the verbs *Ser* and *Estar*, p. 135, and of the tenses of the subjunctive, p. 240, will prove satisfactory and useful."—*Monthly Review*, July 1815.

The Author, having been frequently solicited by strangers to direct them in the choice of an English Spanish Dictionary, has no hesitation to declare, that Neuman's Dictionary is, decidedly, entitled to the preference.

APPROVED SCHOOL BOOKS,

Works on Foreign Languages,

&c. &c.

PUBLISHED BY

SHERWOOD, GILBERT, & PIPER,

23, PATERNOSTER ROW.

SHERWOOD, GILBERT, & PIPER, beg to invite the attention of Parents, and especially of all persons concerned in Education, to the following valuable SCHOOL BOOKS, which are in daily use in most of the best conducted Seminaries; and they hope that their acknowledged merit will be a recommendation to their more general adoption.

BELL'S NEW ART OF READING AND SPEAKING.

PRACTICAL ELOCUTIONIST.—ELEGANT EXTRACTS from the most esteemed Modern Writers and Orators, arranged according to a New System of improved Punctuation, adapted to the nature of the Voice; Emphatic Words and Sentences made prominent to the Eye and Understanding of the Student; the Principles of Elocution and Theory of Inflection simplified, and divested of all unnecessary complexity. The whole calculated to form accomplished Readers and Speakers.

By ALEXANDER BELL, Professor of Elocution.

Bound and lettered, 5s. 6d.

The Extracts are Practical Lessons of the Arts of Reading and Speaking. In all preceding works on Elocution, the Student is merely *told* what is necessary to excellence in these arts; this work renders the attainment of excellence easy and certain.—The examples selected are from the works of Sir Walter Scott, Dr. Chalmers, Goldsmith, Dodsley, Junius, Edwards, Canning, H. More, Howison, Sterne, Morgan, Sherlock, General Foy, Tickner, Addison, Dr. Adam Smith, Hervey, Paley, Leigh Hunt, Tillotson, Austin, Blair, Washington Irving, &c. &c.

By the same Author,

STAMMERING and other IMPEDIMENTS of SPEECH. The means to effect a complete and permanent removal of all Vocal Obstructions. 12mo. 7s. 6d. bound and lettered.

WILLIAMS'S EPITOME OF KNOWLEDGE.

PRECEPTOR'S ASSISTANT, or SCHOOL EXAMINER; being MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS in GENERAL HISTORY, LITERATURE, and SCIENCE. A New and Enlarged Edition, price 5s. bound and gilt, embellished with beautiful steel-plates and woodcuts.

This unrivalled work forms an **ENCYCLOPÆDIAN EPITOME OF KNOWLEDGE** in GENERAL LITERATURE, SCIENCE, and HISTORY, and is admirably adapted to stimulate curiosity, expand and form the minds of youth, and supply that information which can only be obtained by extensive and multifarious reading; in truth, the various and interesting facts and principles which it contains are not only capable of furnishing youth with a respectable portion of every species of general knowledge, and of inculcating habits of observation and reflection in the juvenile mind, but also of increasing the knowledge and attainments of the old, and of supplying them with an inexhaustible fund of information on General Science and Polite Literature.

WILLIAMS'S PARENT'S CATECHISM of USEFUL and GENERAL KNOWLEDGE. New and improved Edition, price 2s. bound.

†† This interesting volume is admirably calculated to furnish learners with that kind of useful and general knowledge which can be gleaned only from various reading and conversation, and the absence of which seems to imply a deficiency or imperfection in the established systems of School Education.

"The Rev. David Williams's excellent works on education, entitled the 'Preceptor's Assistant' and the 'Parent's Catechism,' the first mentioned of which may be justly styled the *Sun and Polar Star of School Books*, are productions of great and uncommon merit, and are admirably adapted to the purposes of education."

Gentleman's Magazine.

BALDWIN'S MIRROR OF POPULAR KNOWLEDGE.

MIRROR of POPULAR KNOWLEDGE: containing TEN THOUSAND POINTS of USEFUL and NECESSARY INFORMATION, adapted to the capacity of Youth. To which are added, SCIENTIFIC RECREATIONS, or the WHY and BECAUSE of SCIENCE. With an Epitome of English History. By the Rev. PERCY BALDWIN, M.A. Price 2s. 6d.

"The taking a taste of every sort of knowledge is necessary to form the mind, and is the only way to give the understanding its due improvement, to the full extent of its capacity."—*Bacon.*

Latin.

SPEAKING LATIN VOCABULARY, by the REV. DAVID WILLIAMS, M.A.; containing the Latin of the English Words which occur in the usual parlance of social life, and relating to its common necessities and occupations, classified and arranged, for the purpose of aiding the memory of the learner.

The method in which the Greek and Latin Languages are usually taught (said the late Dr. Parr) is bad. According to the present mode, the *memory*, and not the *judgment*, is too much exercised, and thus the learner's *mind* becomes a mere word book. If, in teaching languages, professors would condescend to teach—not from books, but, from the best of all teachers, the natural habits of the human mind,—they would soon discover the *true method in which language ought to be taught*—in a word, in the same way in which a child acquires his mother tongue; by obtaining, first of all, the names of the commonest and simplest objects, and their connexions, and proceeding gradually to their combination into phrases and sentences.—On this plan the SPEAKING LATIN VOCABULARY is constructed. Price 1s. 6d.

HAIGH'S LATIN DICTIONARY.

NEW SCHOOL DICTIONARY, LATIN and ENGLISH; designed for the JUNIOR FORMS, and comprising upwards of SIXTEEN THOUSAND WORDS OF PURE LATINITY; intended to furnish young people with all the assistance they require from a dictionary, till they are capable of deriving benefit from the authorities set down in Ainsworth; with a *compendium of Ancient Classical Biography, the Roman Calendar, and its explanation.* By THOMAS HAIGH, A.M. New and improved Edition, neatly printed in a pocket size, price 4s. bound.

"The study of Latin, like many other subjects, is overloaded by the accumulated details of school books, and children are terrified by the very means used to aid them. But for such a stock of it as society demands of well-educated men, certain selections and popular authors may be used, according to the discretion of the tutor; while, for a Dictionary, the light one of *Haigh* is preferable to either Entick or Ainsworth for the junior classes, and would carry a youth through Terence, Cæsar, Nepos, Sallust, Virgil, Horace, Ovid, Phædrus, Juvenal, Florus, Eutropius, *Scriptores Romani*, and *Electa ex Ovidio et Tibullo*. What more than these fourteen books can be wanted for the general purposes of a liberal education?"—*Phillips on Education.*

"This is just such a Latin Dictionary as we have long wished to meet with; it contains every thing that is necessary for the junior classes. It must have a very extensive circulation, and we are sure it will be very acceptable to those for whose use it is intended."—*Educational Review.*

Latin School Books—CONTINUED.

ALSO, BY MR. HAIGH.

CONJUGATA LATINA; a Collection of the purest and most usual Latin Words, distinguished into classes, according to their frequency, and arranged according to their Derivations; by the use of which a greater stock of Words will be acquired by the pupil in six months than is generally obtained in half as many years. Price 3s. 6d. bound.

HAIGH'S THEORY and PRACTICE of LATIN INFLECTION; being Examples, in the form of Copy-Books, for Declining Nouns and Verbs, the Words being arranged Systematically, and changed at each case of a Noun, and each Person of a verb, to exhibit, when written, a *COPIA VERBORUM*, under their respective Modifications of Ending. In Two Parts, price 3s. 6d. each.

KEY to the THEORY and PRACTICE of LATIN INFLECTION, with the Nouns and Verbs declined throughout; indispensable to Young Teachers, and particularly useful to all Tutors till they become familiar with the system. Price 5s.

FIRST STEPS to LATIN CONSTRUING and COMPOSITION; containing "*LATIN GRAMMAR EXERCISES*" adapted to the Eton or any other Latin Grammar, and Introductory Lessons to *EUTROPIUS*, *PHÆDRUS*, and *NEPOS*; classified so as to assist the Learner in rendering Latin into English. Price 2s. bound. By a *GRADUATE* of the *UNIVERSITY of CAMBRIDGE*.

SYNTAXEOS SYNOPSIS; or, a New Latin *Delectus*, combined with Practical Exercises arranged under the proper Rules of Syntax, and adapted to the Eton Grammar. By J. HARVEY. Price 2s. 6d. bound.

FIRST LESSONS in LATIN READING and GRAMMAR, with Exercises and Composition, on a new and easy plan. In Two Parts, with a Dictionary to each. Fourth Edition. Price of Part I. 2s. bound; of Part II. 3s. bound. By THOS. MACGOWAN, one of the Masters of the Academy, Hope Street, Liverpool.

IMPROVED LATIN GRAMMAR, (also by Mr. MACGOWAN,) extracted from Latin Readings, with additions for the use of the higher classes. Second Edition, 2s. bound.

MODUS EXAMINANDI; or, Questions in Parsing for the Latin Language; and on the Greek Verb. Price 6d.; or 5s. per dozen.

SUPPLEMENT to the ETON LATIN GRAMMAR; designed to supply the Deficiencies of that Work; and which, in its present state, the Learner can obtain only from the Oral and Casual Instruction of the Master, or must pick up by Chance and Copious Reading. By the Author of "*FIRST STEPS to LATIN CONSTRUING and COMPOSITION*." Price 9d.

French.

MR. BELLENGER'S USEFUL ELEMENTARY WORKS.

MODERN FRENCH CONVERSATION; containing Elementary Phrases, and New Easy Dialogues, in French and English, upon the most familiar subjects. By W. A. BELLENGER. *Thirteenth Edition*, with considerable Additions and Improvements, price 2s. 6d. bound.

NEW CONVERSATIONS, ELEMENTARY PHRASES, and EASY DIALOGUES, in the French, English, and German Languages, on the most familiar subjects; forming a Hand-book for Travellers in France and Germany, and a Manual for Schools. By W. A. BELLENGER. New Edit. with numerous Additions, 18mo. price 4s. cloth.

"These works contain, in a small compass, Dialogues, in Question and Answer, on every subject connected with the daily occurrences of social life. They are not only the most useful and the best elementary books extant for school business, but as pocket manuals for travellers they are invaluable, as the information they contain is as necessary as to eat, drink, and sleep. The Author has gone out of the old beaten track, and has hit upon such Dialogues as were really wanted, which are well conceived and ably executed. All persons travelling on the Continent would do well to have these books with them."—*Literary Gazette*.

ONE HUNDRED FABLES, selected and imitated from LA FONTAINE. By Mr. BELLENGER. Intended for all persons about to learn the FRENCH LANGUAGE; with a DICTIONARY, in which all the words are grammatically explained. Second Edition, carefully corrected, price 2s. 6d.

BELLENGER'S FRENCH WORD and PHRASE BOOK; containing a Select Vocabulary, and a new set of Elementary Dialogues, in French and English; being an Introduction to French Conversation: for the use of Beginners. Price 1s.

. To have in one small volume those French words which are first wanted, with such short phrases as may be termed the Elements of Speech, and which children always learn first in their Mother Tongue, has been the object in presenting this book to the public; but the utility of it is not confined to children alone,—it extends to every class of persons desirous of attaining knowledge of the French language.

BELLENGER'S DICTIONARY of the IDIOMS of the FRENCH and ENGLISH LANGUAGES, in Two Parts. Part I. *French and English*; Part II. *English and French*. Second Edition, considerably improved. The French part by the ABBE M'QUIN; the English by THOS. HAIGH, A.M. Price 8s. bound.

M. DESLYONS'S FRENCH TUTOR, AND DIALOGUES.

FRENCH TUTOR; or, PRACTICAL EXPOSITION of the best French Grammarians, being a Key to the easy Acquirement of the Necessary Rules to Write and Speak the FRENCH LANGUAGE: containing Familiar Exercises and Questions on every Rule, to serve for Examination and Repetition. *THIRD EDITION*, improved. By MONSIEUR DESLYONS. Price 4s.

This work also contains an Examination upon all the Rules for the constant repetition of them, and to enable Principals of Seminaries to examine the progress of their Pupils, and Parents that of their Children.

DESLYONS' FRENCH DIALOGUES, Practical and Familiar; constructed so as to enable all persons at once to practice conversing in the French Language. New Edition; to which are added, FAMILIAR LETTERS in FRENCH and ENGLISH, adapted to the capacities of Youth. Price 2s. 6d.

Italian.

MR. CERUTTI'S INTRODUCTORY WORKS.

EASY INTRODUCTION to the **RUDIMENTS** of the **ITALIAN** LANGUAGE, designed as an Elementary Guide or First Book, for the especial use of Governesses and Private Families; being an Abridgment of the **NEW THEORETICAL ITALIAN GRAMMAR**. By **ANGELO CERUTTI**. Price 5s. 6d.

CERUTTI'S THEORETICAL ITALIAN GRAMMAR; or, a Course of Lessons in the Italian Language; with a new set of Exercises, all of them extracted from Italian Classic Authors, giving this Grammar a superiority over any other similar work. Second Edition, considerably improved, price 10s. 6d.

The following opinion of this work is extracted from the *Times* :—

“ We have been induced, on account of the reputation of the Author, to cast an eye over the *Italian Grammar* of Mr. Angelo Cerutti, a Second Edition of which has just been published; and we find it much superior to the elementary books usually employed in teaching the Continental languages. Those who have had the labour of wading through Veneroni, and other books of that kind, where a confused mass of ill-digested observations and examples fatigue infinitely more than they instruct, and where rules are profusely given, without any explanation of the grounds on which they have been framed, or the causes of the numerous exceptions from them, will readily appreciate the value of a Grammar in which principle and practice are successfully united, and which renders this work a safe guide to the Student who may be ambitious of acquiring a correct and classical Italian style.”

KEY to the **EXERCISES**, contained in the **NEW ITALIAN GRAMMAR**. By **ANGELO CERUTTI**. Price 5s.

Spanish.

MR. M'HENRY'S ELEMENTARY BOOKS.

NEW and **IMPROVED SPANISH GRAMMAR**, designed for every Class of Learners, but especially for such as are their own Instructors; containing,

1. A **VOCABULARY** of all **WORDS** and **PHRASES**, Spanish and English, used in **DOMESTIC LIFE**.
2. **USEFUL** and **FAMILIAR CONVERSATIONS**, Spanish and English, in **EASY DIALOGUES**, relative to Travellers and Travelling.
3. **FORMS** and **PRECEDENTS** of **COMMERCIAL LETTERS**, and other **DOCUMENTS**.

The whole complete in one volume, price 8s. bound.

EXERCISES on the **ETYMOLOGY**, **SYNTAX**, **IDIOMS**, &c. of the **SPANISH LANGUAGE**. Fifth Edition, price 4s. bound.

KEY to the same. By the Author. Price 4s. 6d. bound.

SYNONYMES of the **SPANISH LANGUAGE** explained; intended as an Appendix to all English-Spanish Dictionaries. 12mo. 5s. 6d.; or printed in 8vo. to bind up with Spanish Dictionaries, price 7s. 6d.

“ Mr. M'Henry is a native of Spain, and is advantageously known to the public as author of one of the most complete, and unquestionably the most modern, Spanish grammars extant; and his instructive volume of Exercises is admirably adapted to the Grammar, and cannot fail of being peculiarly useful to those persons who direct their inquiries to the accurate distinctions of words apparently, but not really, synonym.”

REV. D. WILLIAMS ON ARITHMETIC AND GEOGRAPHY.

PRACTICAL and SCIENTIFIC ARITHMETIC, adapted to the real Occurrences of Life and Business, and illustrated with a variety of Methods of Calculations, both mentally and by inspection. By the Rev. DAVID WILLIAMS, M.A. 3s. bound.

WILLIAMS'S ENTERTAINING GUIDE to ARITHMETIC. 2s. bound.

WILLIAMS'S GEOGRAPHICAL MIRROR. with a comparative View of Ancient and Modern Geography, and an interesting and popular selection of Notices respecting the Manners, Customs, Curiosities, &c. of the various Nations of the World. Price 3s. 6d.

LESSONS on WORDS and OBJECTS; with EASY and AMUSING EXPERIMENTS, for the Parlour and School. By JOHN SMITH. Second Edition, 2s. 6d.

INTRODUCTION to MERCHANTS' ACCOUNTS; or, Commercial Book-keeping by Double Entry: with Principles of forming a set of Books by Single Entry. For the Use of Schools and Counting-houses. By W. TATE. 4s. bound.

SMITH'S (Thos.) LESSONS on ARITHMETIC, in Principle and its Practice; for the Instruction of Youth of both Sexes; and more especially for that of Young Merchants, Tradesmen, Mechanics, and Farmers. Price 3s. 6d.

"He who takes up this arithmetical work with the expectation of seeing only what he has seen before, will be surprised and gratified at the novelty it contains."—*Athenaeum*.

"It is not possible for any one to peruse it without feeling his mind enlarged, and his thinking powers called into action."—*London's Gardener's Magazine*.

AS A PRIZE FOR PROFICIENCY IN WRITING.

PENMAN'S REPOSITORY; containing several correct Alphabets, a valuable selection of Flourishes, and a variety of new Designs. By the late WILLIAM MILNS, Member of St. Mary Hall, Oxford, and Master of the City Commercial School, London. Price 10s. 6d.

. Nothing contributes so much to establish freedom and expedition in writing as frequent practice in striking simple, bold flourishes, capital letters, &c. Those, therefore, who wish to acquire this excellence, will meet with a greater variety of examples in this work than in any other of the kind. The want of correct alphabets in the black hands having long been complained of, the most minute attention has been paid to them in this work; and, as no expense has been spared in the engraving, it is presumed they will prove a standard for such as wish to acquire precise ideas of their characters. The admirers of the fanciful parts of penmanship will here find themselves amply gratified; a greater variety of curious flourishes, as birds, beasts, fishes, &c. being introduced, than can be found in any other publication; but, at the same time, so unconnected with the rest, as by no means to interfere with the more useful parts.

MILITARY MENTOR; being a Series of Letters written by a GENERAL OFFICER to HIS SON, on his entering the Army, comprising 30 of elegant Instructions, calculated to unite the characters and accomplishments of the Gentleman and the Soldier. 2 vols. 5th edition, price 12s. bds.

REV. J. GOLDSMITH'S GRAMMAR OF BRITISH HISTORY.

GRAMMAR of BRITISH HISTORY, displaying, separately, ENGLAND and WALES, and SCOTLAND and IRELAND, from remote antiquity to this age; with Anecdotes of the Progress of Society and Manners. By the Rev. J. GOLDSMITH. With Maps and Engravings, price 3s. 6d.—Also,

QUESTIONS to the same, price 1s.; and a

KEY to the same, price 9d.

BOOTH ON ENGLISH COMPOSITION.

PRINCIPLES of ENGLISH COMPOSITION, illustrated by Examples; with Critical Remarks. By DAVID BOOTH, Author of the "The Analytical Dictionary." Price 6s. cloth.

MISS PHILLIPS ON THE GLOBES.

FAMILIAR LESSONS and PROBLEMS on BOTH GLOBES, with numerous Examples and Exercises, for the Use of Teachers and Schools. By Miss PHILLIPS. Printed as a Quarto Copy-Book. Price 3s. 6d.

The form and method of this Book will recommend it to the preference of all Teachers, as a Key both to Geography and Astronomy. The object of the Authoress has been to facilitate this study as a branch of general liberal Education.

KEY to the PROBLEMS in the above, price 9d.

MRS. BROOKE'S DIALOGUE.

DIIALOGUE between a LADY and her PUPILS, describing a Journey through England and Wales, with a detail of the Arts and Manufactures of each City and Town; and descriptions of Natural History. Third Edition, considerably enlarged. By the Rev. JOHN EVANS, A.M. 12mo. price 5s. bound.

CHAMBERS'S GEOGRAPHICAL AND BIOGRAPHICAL WORKS.

GEOGRAPHICAL QUESTIONS and EXERCISES, blended with Historical and Biographical information; and an Appendix, containing Questions on Astronomy. Fifth Edition, 2s. bound.

QUESTIONS and EXERCISES on Mrs. TRIMMER'S INTRODUCTION to the KNOWLEDGE of NATURE. Price 6d.

THE GEOGRAPHICAL and BIOGRAPHICAL COMPENDIUM: containing concise Memoirs of Illustrious Persons, a Gazetteer of Remarkable Places, and forming not only a useful Class Book for Juvenile Students, but a Key to the Author's Geographical Questions and Exercises. 2s. bound.

"In the useful and instructive, we find the author of the works before us following in the track of those whose labours have smoothed the paths of science."—*Lit. Gaz.*

FAWCETT'S SHORT-HAND.

STENOGRAPHY REMODELLED: a Treatise developing an entirely new system of Short-Hand Writing on the basis of Grammar and the Analogy of Language. By J. FAWCETT. 12mo. 5s. cloth.

Works of Art.

MR. VARLEY'S WORKS ON DRAWING AND COLOURS.

1. **PRACTICAL TREATISE** on the ART of DRAWING in PERSPECTIVE; adapted for the study of those who draw from Nature; by which the usual Errors may be avoided. By JOHN VARLEY. Illustrated with numerous Examples. Price 7s.
2. **VARLEY'S TREATISE** on the PRINCIPLES of LANDSCAPE DESIGN; with General Observations and Instructions to Young Artists. Illustrated with Sixteen highly-finished Views, viz.

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Principles of Light and Shade.—Two Views. 2. Principles of Objects Reflected in Water.—Two Views. 3. Epic and Pastoral.—Two Views. 4. River Scene, and Ouse Bride, York.—Two Views. 5. Sunshine and Twilight.—Two Views. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. Principles of Skies: Fine Weather; Stormy Weather.—Two Views. 7. Marine: Holy Island; Coast near Bamborough Northumberland.—Two Views. 8. General Landscape and Mountainous Landscape.—Two Views.
---	--

Folio, price 5s. each Number; or complete, price £2, neatly half-bound.

Mr. J. SMITH (Art of Drawing) says, "The celebrated water-colour painter, J. Varley, is the only one who has ever attempted to write on the theory of effect systematically, and his works I most strongly recommend to those students who are well advanced."

3. **VARLEY'S STUDIES** for DRAWING TREES; consisting of the Rudiments of Foliage. The OAK, the WEEPING WILLOW, the CHESNUT, and the ELM, represented in Five Quarto Plates. Price 5s.
4. **VARLEY'S SPECIMENS** of NINETEEN PERMANENT COLOURS. Price 5s.

MR. SMITH ON DRAWING AND PERSPECTIVE.

5. **YOUNG ARTIST'S ASSISTANT** in the ART of DRAWING in WATER COLOURS, exemplified in a course of Twenty-nine Progressive Lessons, viz.

Animals, Fruit,	Flowers, Still-Life,	Portrait, Miniature,	Landscape, Perspective,	Architecture, and Sculpture;
--------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------	----------------------------	---------------------------------

calculated to afford those who are unacquainted with the Art, the means of acquiring a competent Knowledge without the Aid of a Master; with full instructions for Mixing Colours and Preparing the various Tints; being the only work of the kind in which the Principles of Effect are explained in a clear, methodical, and at the same time familiar Style. By THOMAS SMITH. The whole illustrated with Sixty Coloured Designs and Woodcuts. Price 15s. neatly bound.

6. **EIGHT EASY LESSONS** on the ART of DRAWING in PERSPECTIVE; illustrated with numerous Cuts, and adapted as an ELEMENTARY GUIDE for the Use of STUDENTS. By THOMAS SMITH. Price 1s. 6d.

THE JESUITS' PERSPECTIVE, BY CHAMBERS.

7. **PRACTICAL PERSPECTIVE**; or, an Easy Method of representing NATURAL OBJECTS according to the RULES of ART, applied and exemplified in all the variety of cases, as LANDSCAPES, GARDENS, BUILDINGS, and FIGURES; a work highly necessary for PAINTERS, ENGRAVERS, ARCHITECTS, EMBROIDERERS, STATUARIES, JEWELLERS, TAPESTRY WORKERS, and all persons concerned in Designing. Translated from the French, by E. CHAMBERS, F.R.S. In One Volume, 4to. with 150 Copper Plates, price £1. 11s. 6d.

†† This work has been highly esteemed by Artisans as a text-book, and always recommended as indispensable to a pupil. Very few copies remain on hand.

UNIVERSAL, COMMERCIAL, and POLITE LETTER-WRITER; or, a complete and interesting Course of Familiar and Useful Correspondence. In Four Parts:—

- 1st. **EDUCATION**.—Epistolary Rules; Observations on Style, Grammar, &c.; Instructions for Addressing Persons of all Ranks; Forms of Complimentary Cards; Juvenile Correspondence, &c. in a Series of Original Letters, from Parents, Teachers, Pupils, &c.
- 2nd. **BUSINESS**.—Useful Forms in Law, Forms of Bonds, Indentures, Deeds, Letters of Attorney, Wills, Petitions, &c.: in a Series of Letters from Merchants, Tradesmen, Creditors, Debtors, &c.
- 3rd. **MISCELLANEOUS**.—Public Correspondence on various Topics, partly original and partly selected.
- 4th. **FAMILIAR SUBJECTS**, Love, Courtship, Marriage, &c.

Adapted to the use of both Sexes. By the Rev. JOSEPH POTTS, M.A. 2s. 6d. bound.

REV. W. D. CONYBEARE'S LECTURES.

ELEMENTARY COURSE of THEOLOGICAL LECTURES, in Three Parts.—Part I. On the evidences of Religion, natural and revealed.—II. On the Criticism and Interpretation of the Bible.—III. On the peculiar Doctrines of Christianity. Delivered in Bristol College, by the Rev. W. D. CONYBEARE, F.R.S., Corresponding Member of the Institute of France, &c. &c. A New Edition, considerably improved, price 8s. cloth, lettered.

"We are glad to see the waxing popularity of this volume: it speaks well for the public. Such a work every man of any education should read, for every man may understand, and almost every man can afford to obtain it."—*Gentleman's Magazine*.

"Mr. Conybeare has collected much valuable information in a small compass, and his work will be found of service to Biblical students."—*Christian Observer*.

"The critical Lectures of the Rev. W. D. Conybeare, delivered at the British College, as *Manuals for Theological Students*, are beyond praise."—*Monthly Review*.

"It is a work of profound learning, in union with sound orthodoxy, unaffected candour and liberality, and a truly catholic spirit."—*Eclectic Review*.

NEWTON'S ASTRONOMY.

FAMILIAR INTRODUCTION to the Sciences of ASTRONOMY and the USE of the GLOBES. Illustrated by fifty-four explanatory Diagrams, with a Description of the Orrery and Armillary Sphere. By W. NEWTON, Author of the new and improved Globes, and Maps of the Stars. 3s. 6d. bd.

TAYLOR'S GEOMETRY.

USEFUL GEOMETRY, practically exemplified by a Series of Diagrams, with clear and concise Directions; shewing the Construction, Division, Inscribing, Circumscribing, and Proportions of PLANE FIGURES: calculated to assist the Young Beginner, and every one who uses the Rule, the Square, and the Compasses. With Notes, and a VOCABULARY, explaining, in familiar words, the meaning of Technical Terms. By CHARLES TAYLOR. Price 5s.

"In a prefatory address to the reader, Mr. Taylor has set forth his pretensions in compiling it with remarkable simplicity and modesty; and our sense of justice in aiding his views towards preparing the intellectual soil for the cultivation of that sublime science—mathematical truth, is not exceeded by the gratification we experience in performing such a duty."—*Repertory of Patent Inventions*, May 1833.

GRANT'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

GRAMMAR of the ENGLISH LANGUAGE: containing a complete Summary of its Rules, with an Elucidation of the general Principles of elegant and correct Diction, accompanied with critical and explanatory Notes, Questions for Examination, and appropriate Exercises. By JOHN GRANT, A.M. Price 6s. bound.

. This Grammar is used as a Text-Book in London University College.

MACGOWAN'S PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR, with copious Exercises; being an effectual Introduction to accurate Composition. Second Edition, price 2s. bound.

FENELON'S MANUAL OF PIETY, ETC. BY MRS. MANT.

Elegantly printed, in a neat Pocket Volume, and embellished with a new Portrait, price 2s. in boards, or 3s. bound and gilt, forming a very suitable Present for Young Persons, or as a Reward-Book in Schools,

MANUAL of PIETY; containing **PIOUS THOUGHTS** concerning the **KNOWLEDGE and LOVE of GOD**; **DIRECTIONS** for a **HOLY LIFE**, and the **ATTAINING CHRISTIAN PERFECTION**; and **PIOUS REFLECTIONS** of **EVERY DAY** in the **MONTH**. Translated from the French of **FENELON**, Archbishop of Cambrai, by **Mrs. MANT**.

. For the accommodation of the Public, the above little Books are sold separately, price 1s. each, in boards; or 2s. in imitation of morocco.

FENELON'S PIOUS REFLECTIONS for **EVERY DAY** in the **MONTH**. Translated by **Mrs. MANT**. Sixteenth Edition. To which is added, a Sketch of the Life of the Author; and a Father's Advice to his Son.

A very neat Edition of the Pious Reflections, with appropriate Poetical Illustrations to each Day, printed on large post paper, 2s. 6d. bound and gilt.

FENELON'S PIOUS THOUGHTS concerning the **KNOWLEDGE and LOVE of GOD**, and other Holy Exercises. To which are added, **DIRECTIONS** for a **HOLY LIFE**, and the **ATTAINING CHRISTIAN PERFECTION**.

. These much-esteemed little Manuals of the Archbishop of Cambrai have been very favourably received by the Public; and the Publishers being desirous of extending their circulation to the fullest possible extent, take leave to recommend them as suitable Books for Presents or Distribution to the Clergy and Heads of Families, at 10s. 6d. per Dozen, in boards.

†† *Be particular in asking for, or ordering, the Editions translated by Mrs. MANT, and published by SHERWOOD & CO.*

HART'S HYMNS---GENUINE EDITION.

New and beautiful Miniature Edition, price 1s. 6d. or neatly bound in roan, 2s.

HYMNS, composed on **VARIOUS SUBJECTS**, with the Author's Experience, the Supplement, and Appendix. By the **Rev. J. HART**, late Minister of the Gospel in Jewin Street.

. The attention of the public is particularly called to this new and beautiful Edition of **Mr. HART's Hymns**, and the Publishers beg to inform those Congregations who use his Collection, that this is the only Edition in which the pages are printed according to the Author's Original Arrangement; a circumstance of great importance—in giving out the Hymns, for public worship. As this Edition is printed under the authority of the Author's Assignment, the public will please to notice that all other Editions—except **SHERWOOD'S**—are spurious.

TABLET OF MEMORY---FIFTEENTH EDITION.

THE NEW TABLET of MEMORY; or, **MIRROR of CHRONOLOGY, HISTORY, STATISTICS, ARTS, and SCIENCE**: comprehending every Memorable Fact and Item of Information in those Departments of Knowledge, from the Earliest Period to the Year 1838, classified under distinct Heads, and arranged alphabetically, with their Dates; with a full and exact Chronology of Eminent Men, Countries and Conditions. Fifteenth Edition, greatly enlarged and corrected, continued to 1838, price 6s. bound in cloth and lettered.

Smith-and-Bolier Helps to Education,

EDITED BY THE PROPRIETOR,

JOHN SMITH, LECTURER, LIVERPOOL.

THE SYSTEM COPY-BOOKS; a New Series, in Six Numbers; complete in every lesson in Writing, with 175 Copy-heads, and careful instructions throughout. Price 6d. each Number; or 3s. the set.

- No. 1.—Strokes, Hangers, Pothooks, and Links;
- No. 2.—Single Letters in their gradational order;
- No. 3.—Junctions of Letters, and a set of Capitals;
- No. 4.—Regular Exercises in Words, Large Hand;
- No. 5.—Regular Exercises in Words, Round Hand;
- No. 6.—Regular Exercises in Words, Small Hand.

THE PATENT DURABLE WRITING LEAF, for educational uses of the pen, in spelling, composition, translations, &c. 1s. 6d. single; 3s. double.

THE PATENT DELIBLE INK POWDER, for CHILDREN'S INK, principally adapted to the Patent Durable Leaf above named, but also important for general purposes in a family. Price 6d. per packet; School packets, 2s. 6d.

THE ROYAL WHITE SLATE, for ciphering, mapping, sketching, drawing, &c. The freshness and purity of its surface is constantly renewable. Price 2s. 6d. to 5s.

THE ROYAL POCKET TABLET, for Memoranda. This is a novel and elegant specimen of art. Price 2s. 6d. to 5s.

THE ARITHMETICAL SCALES. The scales are in four sets (one for each rule, namely, addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division), so as to serve for one, two, three, or four pupils at a time. Price of the whole, complete, in four mahogany boxes, £1. 10s.

THE PLAYFUL TEACHER, or **YOUNG SCHOLAR'S LETTER-BOX**. Ample directions are given, suggesting games at spelling, calculations, literary dominos, &c. for the family circle, or preparatory school-room. 10s.

THE PARSING HARMONICON, an agreeable Toy. With directions for use. Price 5s.

SMITH'S KEY to PLEASANT EXERCISES in READING, PARSING, and MENTAL ARITHMETIC. (This little work includes the celebrated Imaginary Grammatical Picture, and also the Anatomy of Numbers.) Price 2s. 6d.

SMITH'S LESSONS on WORDS and OBJECTS, with EASY and AMUSING EXPERIMENTS, for the Parlour or the School. By the Author of the above. Price 2s. 6d.

SMITH'S ANATOMY of NUMBERS: a series of Early Lessons in Arithmetic, on a new Plan. By the Author of the above. Price 6d.

PALMER'S FAMILY PRAYERS.

COLLECTION of FAMILY PRAYERS from the Devotional WRITINGS of BAXTER, WILLISON, WATTS, HENRY, BENNET, DODDRIDGE, and others, with various occasional Forms. Selected and revised by the late Rev. S. PALMER, of Hackney. Second Edition. Price 3s. 6d. bound.

WILLIAMS'S BIBLE EXERCISES; or, **SUNDAY RECTIONS**. Price 1s. 6d.—KEY to ditto, 2s.

MASON ON THE LORD'S SUPPER.

"Feed on the Lord Jesus Christ, in thy heart, by faith with thanksgiving."

THE CHRISTIAN COMMUNICANT; or, a suitable Companion to the LORD'S SUPPER: containing MEDITATIONS on every part of the Liturgy used by the Church of England at that DIVINE ORDINANCE. By W. MASON, Esq. With a recommendatory Preface, by the late Rev. WM. ROMAINE, M.A. A new Edition, printed with large letter, revised and corrected by the Rev. H. C. MASON, A.M. Price 3s. 6d. gilt and lettered.

By the same Author.

PARLOUR PREACHER: a Pack of Cards for all who are determined to win Christ. Price 1s.

Also,

BELIEVER'S POCKET COMPANION; or, One Thing needful to make Poor Sinners rich, and Miserable Sinners happy. Price 1s. 6d. bound.

UNIFORM WITH "THE MILLION OF FACTS."

"I have often regretted that we have not such a Dictionary of the Chemical, Mechanical, and Useful Arts, practised in civilized society, as would enable a willing savage, or a barbarous people, at once to profit by all our discoveries."—FRANKLIN.

ARTS of LIFE and CIVILIZATION; with Accounts of all the USEFUL PRODUCTS of NATURE and INDUSTRY, and Practical Details of Processes in Manufactures, Chemistry, Pharmacy, Building, Mechanics, and other Social Sciences, alphabetically arranged, according to the best Authorities and latest Discoveries. In 1400 columns of Nonpareil type, forming a very thick volume in duodecimo. By SIR RICHARD PHILLIPS. Price 14s. bound.

It is a work of Processes, and of Practical Details relative to whatever men do in Society; and it applies, in a satisfactory manner, to every pursuit of Profit, Industry, and Production—from the Workshop to the Laboratory—from the Kitchen to the Boudoir—and from the Farm to the Ornamental Garden. On all these subjects it is a perfect Library of indispensable and constant Reference.

WILLIAM TELL; or, SWITZERLAND DELIVERED. From the French of the CHEVALIER DE FLORIAN, by W. HEWETSON: with a Life of the Author, by Jauffret. Price 3s. half-bound.

LIFE of SIR RICHARD WHITTINGTON, KNT. Four Times Lord Mayor of London, in the Reigns of Edward III. Richard II. and Henry V. Compiled from Authentic Documents, containing many important particulars never before published respecting that illustrious man. By the Author of "MEMOIRS of GEORGE BARNWELL." Second Edition. Price 3s.

MEMOIRS of GEORGE BARNWELL, the unhappy subject of LILLO'S CELEBRATED TRAGEDY: derived from the most Authentic Source, and intended for the Instruction of the Rising Generation. By a DESCENDANT of the BARNWELL FAMILY. Price 3s.

LIFE and ADVENTURES of ROBINSON CRUSOE. By DANIEL DE FOE. The Three Vols. complete in One, illustrated with 12 Plates, price 5s half-bound.

ELEGANT MINIATURE EDITION.

BLAIR'S GRAVE, GRAY'S ELEGY, and PORTEUS on DEATH. The whole complete in one small volume, accompanied with the Lives of their respective Authors, and embellished with an elegant Frontispiece. Price 1s. boards.

Berkeley

14 DAY

14 DAY USE

163

RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

LOAN DEPT.

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

REC'D LD

LIBRARY USE

APR 19 '64 - 10 PM

JUN 21 1961

OCT 17 1966 7 2

LIBRARY USE

JUN 22 1960

RECEIVED

12 Oct 6 1 JC

OCT 18 '60 - 10 AM

REC'D LD

LOAN DEPT.

OCT 12 1961

15 May '62 JP

REC'D LD

MAY 24 1962

19 Apr '64 RW

Digitized by Google

LD 21A-50m-12,'60
(B6221s10)476B

General Library
University of California
Berkeley

